**Document number 248**

**Text number 0**

Affirmative action in the US tends to focus on issues such as education and employment, with particular attention to racial minorities, Native Americans and women, who have been historically marginalised groups in America. Reports have shown that minorities and women have been discriminated against in schools and businesses for years, and this discrimination has given whites and men an unfair advantage in education and employment. The impetus for positive action is to address the harms of past and present discrimination. There is also a desire to ensure that public institutions such as universities, hospitals and police forces are more representative of the populations they serve.

**Question 0**

Besides employment, what is another important issue on which positive action focuses?

**Question 1**

Affirmative action seeks to ask institutions to give extra attention to which group of people, apart from Indians and women?

**Question 2**

Studies showed that discrimination in both business and education brought benefits to which group of people?

**Question 3**

Affirmative action is not only about removing disadvantages, but also about ensuring that more people are in the industry.

**Question 4**

Apart from employment, what is the other minor issue on which affirmative action focuses?

**Question 5**

Affirmative action seeks to ask institutions to give extra attention to which group of people besides Indians and men?

**Question 6**

Research showed that discrimination in both business and education harmed which group of people?

**Question 7**

Affirmative action aims to remove disadvantages, but also to ensure that more people are in the industry.

**Text number 1**

Affirmative action is a controversial subject. Some policies adopted as affirmative action, such as racial or gender quotas in college admissions, have been criticized as a form of reverse discrimination, and such affirmative action has been found unconstitutional in the majority opinion in Gratz v. Bollinger. The Supreme Court upheld affirmative action as a practice in its 2003 decision in Grutter v. Bollinger. Affirmative action policies were developed to remedy decades of discrimination dating back to the Reconstruction era by giving disadvantaged minorities opportunities. Many believe that the diversity of contemporary American society suggests that affirmative action policies have succeeded and are no longer needed. Opponents of affirmative action argue that these policies are outdated and lead to reverse discrimination, favoring one group over another based on racial preference rather than merit.

**Question 0**

What is another example, apart from racial quotes, of positive action for university admissions?

**Question 1**

The setting of quotas for admission or recruitment has been criticised and described as what kind of discrimination?

**Question 2**

In which case was it found that some of the ways in which affirmative action was implemented were unconstitutional?

**Question 3**

What period does discrimination policy date back to?

**Question 4**

What do critics say should be the most important factor in hiring for positive action?

**Question 5**

What's another example, besides racial citations, of non-affirmative action in college admissions?

**Question 6**

The lack of quotas for access or employment has been criticised and said to be discriminatory.

**Question 7**

In which case was it found that a particular implementation of affirmative action was constitutional?

**Question 8**

From which period does discrimination policy not date?

**Question 9**

What do the critics of affirmative action think should not be the most important factor in hiring?

**Text number 2**

The idea of affirmative action was born during the Reconstruction period (1865-1877), when the former slave population lacked the skills and resources needed for a sustainable life. In 1865, General William Tecumseh Sherman proposed that Georgia's lands and goods be divided and allotted to families of color, which became the "40 acres and mule" policy. The proposal was never widely adopted due to strong political opposition. Nearly a century later (1950s-1960s), the civil rights movement saw the re-emergence of policies to help different social classes. Civil rights guarantees came through the interpretation of the equal protection clause of the 14th Amendment. The decisions became known as affirmative action, where mandatory as well as voluntary programs strengthened the civil rights of people of color. In addition, these affirmative action programs protected people of color from the current effects of past discrimination. In 1961, President John F. Kennedy first used the term "affirmative action" in Executive Order 10925 to ensure that public contractors "take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are hired and employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, religion, color, or national origin." This executive order implemented the government's intent to create equal opportunity for all qualified people. This executive order was amended and eventually replaced by Lyndon B. Johnson's Executive Order 11246, which prohibited discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, and national origin in organizations receiving federal contracts and subcontracts. In 1967, the order was amended to include sex. The Reagan administration opposed the affirmative action requirements of Executive Order 11246, but these proposed changes met with bipartisan opposition in Congress.

**Question 0**

When did the reconstruction period end?

**Question 1**

Who suggested that the land be divided and shared among families of color?

**Question 2**

What was the name given to the policy of dividing the land between coloured families?

**Question 3**

Which part of the Constitution formed the basis for the policies developed during the civil rights movement?

**Question 4**

Who first used the term "positive action"?

**Question 5**

When did the era of deconstruction end?

**Question 6**

When did the deconstruction period start?

**Question 7**

Who proposed that the land be divided and shared among white families?

**Question 8**

Who was the last person to use the term "positive action"?

**Text number 3**

The term "affirmative action" first appeared in the National Labor Relations Act of 1935, better known as the Wagner Act.15 Proposed and championed by New York Senator Robert F. Wagner, the Wagner Act responded to President Roosevelt's goal of providing economic security for workers and other low-income groups. During this period, it was not uncommon for employers to blacklist or fire unionized workers. The Wagner Act allowed workers to unionize without fear of discrimination and empowered the National Labor Relations Board to review potential cases of employee discrimination. In cases of discrimination, employees had to be restored to their proper position in the company through "affirmative action." While the Wagner Act protected employees and unions, it did not protect minorities, who, with the exception of the Congress of Industrial Organizations, were often excluded from the ranks of unions.11 This original coining of the term thus has little to do with affirmative action policy as it is seen today, but it helped lay the groundwork for any policy designed to compensate or remedy unfair treatment of individuals.

**Question 0**

In which document does the term "positive action" first appear?

**Question 1**

Who was the author of the National Labor Relations Act?

**Question 2**

Who do employers routinely blacklist?

**Question 3**

Who was able to review complaints about possible discrimination against workers?

**Question 4**

What group of people were not protected by Wagner's law?

**Question 5**

In which document does the term "nonaffirmative action" first appear?

**Question 6**

Who was the author of the National Non-Labor Relations Act?

**Question 7**

Who did employers routinely hire?

**Question 8**

Who could not review complaints of possible discrimination against workers?

**Question 9**

What group of people were protected by Wagner's law?

**Text number 4**

FDR's New Deal programs often included equal opportunity clauses stating that "discrimination shall not be practiced on the basis of race, color, or religion":11 but the real pioneer of affirmative action was then Secretary of the Interior Harold L. Ickes. Ickes banned discrimination in the hiring of Public Works Administration-funded projects and oversaw the quota system devised by Robert C. Weaver and Clark Foreman, which required contractors to hire a percentage of black workers,12 but also the equal pay for women proposed by Harry Hopkins.14DR's greatest contribution to affirmative action, however, was his Executive Order 8802, which prohibited discrimination in the defense industry or government.:22 The executive order promoted the idea that if taxpayer funds were accepted through a government contract, all taxpayers should have equal opportunity to work through a contractor.:23-4 To implement this idea, Roosevelt established the Fair Employment Practices Committee (FEPC), which had the authority to investigate the hiring practices of government contractors.:22

**Question 0**

Who was the real supporter of affirmative action?

**Question 1**

What was Harold L. Ickes' position of power?

**Question 2**

The first introduction of the quota system required contractors to do what?

**Question 3**

Which law prevented any discrimination in the defence industry and government?

**Question 4**

What does FEPC stand for?

**Question 5**

Who was the real supporter of the unapproved action?

**Question 6**

In what position of power was Clark L. Ickes?

**Question 7**

The first introduction of the quota system stipulated that contractors could not do what?

**Question 8**

Which law did not prevent discrimination in the defence industry and government?

**Question 9**

What does FPPC mean?

**Text number 5**

After the case of Sergeant Isaac Woodard, President Harry S. Truman, himself a World War I veteran, issued Executive Order 9808, establishing the President's Commission on Civil Rights to investigate the violence and recommend appropriate federal legislation. Upon hearing of the case, Truman turned to NAACP leader Walter Francis White and declared, "Oh, my God! I had no idea it was this horrible. We have to do something." In 1947, the committee published its findings, To Secure These Rights. The book was widely read, influential, and considered utopian for its time: "In our country, people are equal, but they are free to be different. It is from these differences between our peoples that America's great human and national strength springs." The report addressed and demonstrated racial discrimination in basic freedoms, education, public accommodations, personal safety and employment opportunities. The Committee was concerned about the state of race relations, citing, among other things, the evacuation of Japanese Americans during the war, "which was done without trial or any kind of hearing... The basis of our whole system of justice is the belief that guilt is a matter of personal and not of heredity or association". The recommendations were radical, calling for federal policies and laws to end racial discrimination and bring about equality: "We cannot tolerate any restrictions on an individual based on irrelevant factors such as race, colour, religion or the social status into which he was born." To Secure These Rights set for the next generation a liberal legislative agenda that Lyndon B. Johnson eventually signed into law.:35-36.

**Question 0**

Which group was created in response to Executive Order 9808?

**Question 1**

Why was executive order 9808 issued?

**Question 2**

In what year was the "Safeguarding these rights" publication published?

**Question 3**

Which committee was particularly concerned about the issues raised in its report?

**Question 4**

Who in the generation following the "To Secure These Rights" findings signed the Affirmative Action legislation into law?

**Question 5**

Which group was created in response to Executive Order 9108?

**Question 6**

Why was executive order 988 issued?

**Question 7**

In what year were the results of the "Don't protect these rights" survey published?

**Question 8**

What did not bother the committee at all, as its report states?

**Text number 6**

To Secure These Rights also called for the desegregation of the armed forces. "Prejudice is an ugly and undemocratic phenomenon in any field, but in the armed forces, where all men's lives are at stake, it is particularly odious." The argument was one of fairness: "When an individual enters the service of the country, he inevitably gives up some of the rights and privileges which belong to American citizenship." In return, the government "undertakes to protect his integrity as an individual". However, this was not possible in a segregated military, as "any discrimination which ... prevents members of minority groups from performing full military service in defense of their country is to them a humiliating sign of inferiority." The report called for an end to "all discrimination and segregation based on race, colour, religion or national origin ... in all branches of the armed forces":38-39.

**Question 0**

The "safeguarding these rights" initiative sought to remove the distinction between which institution?

**Question 1**

Which risk related to serving was particularly highlighted by the findings?

**Question 2**

What do the findings suggest happens to an individual when he or she enters military service?

**Question 3**

What was considered discrimination that prevented minorities from serving their country to the best of their ability?

**Question 4**

Which institution was not desegregated in the findings made "to safeguard these rights"?

**Question 5**

Which risk related to serving was not particularly highlighted by the findings?

**Question 6**

What do the findings suggest happens to an individual when they leave military service?

**Question 7**

Discrimination that prevented minorities from serving their country to the best of their ability was not considered what?

**Text number 7**

In June, Truman became the first president to address the NAACP. His speech was a major departure from traditional race relations in the United States. In front of 10,000 people at the Lincoln Memorial, the President left no doubt about his views on civil rights. His speech said America had "reached a turning point in our country's long history of striving to guarantee freedom and equality for all our citizens... Every man must be guaranteed equal opportunity." He proposed what black citizens had been demanding - the consolidation of federal power through the states. "We must make the federal government a friendly, vigilant defender of the rights and equality of all Americans. And again, I mean all Americans. "40

**Question 0**

Who was the first president to address the NAACP?

**Question 1**

How many people were present for Truman's speech?

**Question 2**

Where was Truman's historic speech given?

**Question 3**

In his speech, Truman said that every man should be guaranteed what?

**Question 4**

Whose power did Truman want to increase in each state?

**Question 5**

Who was the first president to address the NICP?

**Question 6**

How many people left Truman's speech?

**Question 7**

Where did Truman's historic speech end?

**Question 8**

In his speech, Truman stated that not every man should be guaranteed what?

**Question 9**

Whose power did Truman want to reduce in each state?

**Text number 8**

On July 26, Truman ordered an end to wage and labor discrimination in the federal government, confirming an order issued by FDR in 1941.40 On July 26, 1948, he issued two executive orders, Executive Order 9980 and Executive Order 9981. Executive Order 9980, entitled Regulations Governing for Employment Practices within the Federal Establishment, established fair employment practices in federal civilian agencies. The Order created the position of Fair Employment Officer. The Order "established a Fair Employment Board of at least seven persons within the Civil Service Commission." Executive Order 9981, entitled Establishing the President's Committee on Equality of Treatment and Opportunity in the Armed Services, called for the integration of the armed services and the establishment of a National Military Establishment to implement the Executive Order.

**Question 0**

On what day did Truman order an end to discrimination in the federal government?

**Question 1**

How many enforcement orders were issued to prevent discrimination?

**Question 2**

What was the name of Executive Order 9980?

**Question 3**

What position was taken as a result of Executive Order 9980?

**Question 4**

What was the name given to executive order 9981?

**Question 5**

On what day did Truman authorise discrimination in the federal government?

**Question 6**

How many enforcement orders were issued to promote discrimination?

**Question 7**

What was the name of executive order 9180?

**Question 8**

What position was formulated as a result of Executive Order 9?

**Question 9**

What was the name given to executive order 9181?

**Text number 9**

When Eisenhower was elected president in 1952, he believed that hiring practices and anti-discrimination laws should be decided at the state level, although the administration gradually continued to desegregate the armed forces and the federal government.50 The president also established in 1953 a government contracting committee that "conducted investigations of the racial composition of federal employees and tax-supported contractors. ' :50-51 The committee, chaired by Vice President Richard Nixon, had minimal results in that it held contractors primarily responsible for desegregating their own firms and corporations. :51

**Question 0**

What year was Eisenhower elected president?

**Question 1**

Who did Eisenhower think should decide the nature of discrimination law?

**Question 2**

What was founded in 1953?

**Question 3**

What was the main purpose of the Government Contracts Committee?

**Question 4**

Who was the chairman of the newly created committee?

**Question 5**

What year was Eisenhower elected vice president?

**Question 6**

Who does Eisenhower think should be denied the right to decide the nature of discrimination laws?

**Question 7**

What was founded in 1913?

**Question 8**

What was the final purpose of the Government Contracts Committee?

**Question 9**

Who was the chairman of the old committee?

**Text number 10**

In the 1960 presidential election, Democratic candidate and future President John F. Kennedy "criticized President Eisenhower for not ending discrimination in federally subsidized housing" and "advocated a permanent Fair Employment Practices Commission."59 Shortly after taking office, Kennedy issued Executive Order 10925 in March 1961, which required government contractors to "consider and recommend additional affirmative action to be taken by executive departments and agencies to more fully implement the national policy of nondiscrimination.".... The contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are hired and that employees are treated during employment without regard to race, religion, color or national origin. "60 The Executive Order also established the President's Committee on Equal Employment Opportunity (PCEEO), chaired by Vice President Lyndon B. Johnson. Federal contractors who failed to comply with or violated the executive order were punished by cancellation of the contract and possible debarment from future government contracts. The administration "did not insist on any special preference or treatment or quotas for minorities" but rather "advocated race-neutral hiring to end job discrimination. "61 Turning to women's rights issues, Kennedy established the Commission on the Status of Women in December 1961. The commission was charged with "examining the employment policies and practices of government and contractors" in relation to gender.66

**Question 0**

Who criticised President Eisenhower during the 1960 presidential election?

**Question 1**

What was John F. Kennedy's criticism of the President based on?

**Question 2**

Which order was issued shortly after Kennedy's inauguration?

**Question 3**

What does PCEEO stand for?

**Question 4**

What was the immediate penalty for a federal contractor who failed to comply with an enforcement order?

**Question 5**

Who criticised President Eisenhower during the 1930 presidential election?

**Question 6**

What was the basis of John F. Kennedy's support for the President?

**Question 7**

Which order was issued shortly after Kennedy lost office?

**Question 8**

What does PELCO stand for?

**Question 9**

What was the immediate penalty for a federal contractor who complied with an enforcement order?

**Text number 11**

In June 1963, President Kennedy continued his affirmative action policy by issuing another mandate, Executive Order 11114. The order supplemented his earlier executive order of 1961, which declared that "it is the policy of the United States to encourage affirmative action to eliminate discrimination in employment. "72 The order required all federal funds, including "grants, loans, unions and employers accepting taxpayer funds, and other forms of state and local government financial assistance," to comply with the government's affirmative action policy on employment.72

**Question 0**

When did President Kennedy issue Executive Order 11114?

**Question 1**

What was the main objective of Executive Order 11114?

**Question 2**

What did everyone who received federal funding have to do under the executive order?

**Question 3**

When did President Kennedy issue Executive Order 13?

**Question 4**

What was the main objective of Executive Order 14?

**Question 5**

What did everyone who received any kind of federal funding have to do without an executive order?

**Text number 12**

The first time the federal government used the term "affirmative action" in a racial context was in Executive Order 10925 issued by President John F. Kennedy and chaired by Vice President Johnson. Johnson met a young black lawyer, Hobart Taylor Jr, at an inaugural ball in Texas and tasked him with helping to draft the executive order. He wanted a sentence that "gave a positive sense of performance under the order." He had to choose between the words "positive action" and "affirmative action" and chose the latter because of its alliterative nature. The term "active recruitment" also began to be used. Although this provision was seen as important legislation, in reality it had little real power. Its scope was limited to a few hundred defense contractors, leaving nearly $7.5 billion in federal grants and loans unmonitored.60

**Question 0**

In which executive act did the term "positive action" first appear?

**Question 1**

Who chaired the committee set up by Executive Order 10925?

**Question 2**

Who was the author of the executive order?

**Question 3**

What was the alternative expression for "positive action" that was considered?

**Question 4**

What was the main reason for choosing "positive action" instead of "positive action"?

**Question 5**

Which executive act did not contain the term "affirmative action"?

**Question 6**

Who chaired the committee destroyed by executive order 10925?

**Question 7**

Who was involved in drafting the non-executive order?

**Question 8**

What was the alternative term for "non-corrective action" that was considered?

**Question 9**

What was the main reason for choosing "non-positive actions" instead of "positive actions"?

**Text number 13**

The NAACP had many problems with JFK's "symbolic" proposal. They wanted jobs. The day after the order went into effect, NAACP Labor Secretary Herbert Hill filed complaints about Lockheed Aircraft Corporation's hiring and promotion practices. Lockheed was about to enter into its first billion dollar contract with the Department of Defense. Because taxpayer funding accounted for 90 percent of Lockheed's business, as well as disparate pay practices, black workers accused Lockheed of "overt discrimination." Lockheed signed a contract with Vice President Johnson promising to "aggressively seek more qualified minority candidates for technical and skill positions. "63-64 This contract was the administration's model for a "plan for advancement." Johnson and his aides soon pressured other defense contractors, such as Boeing and General Electric, to sign similar voluntary contracts announcing progress plans. But these plans were just that, voluntary. Many Southern companies, still under Jim Crow laws, largely ignored federal recommendations.63-64.

**Question 0**

Who had a problem with JFK's proposal?

**Question 1**

Who filed complaints quickly after the executive order was implemented?

**Question 2**

Which company was targeted by the NAACP for not having fair practices?

**Question 3**

With whom did Lockheed sign an agreement to increase the number of minority workers?

**Question 4**

What laws did Southern companies join to override federal recommendations?

**Question 5**

Who had a problem with the rejection of JFK?

**Question 6**

Who filed complaints quickly before the executive order was enforced?

**Question 7**

Which company was targeted by the NAACP for fair practices?

**Question 8**

With whom did Lockheed sign an agreement to increase the number of minority workers?

**Question 9**

Which laws did the Northern companies join to ignore the federal recommendations?

**Text number 14**

This eventually led to the LBJ Civil Rights Act, which came shortly after President Kennedy's assassination. This document was more comprehensive than any offered by President Kennedy, and therefore more controversial. Its goal was to integrate not only public accommodations, but also private businesses that sold to the public, such as motels, restaurants, theaters, and gas stations. The bill also included public schools, hospitals, libraries and parks, among others. It also cooperated with JFK Executive Order 11114 by prohibiting discrimination in the awarding of federal contracts and upholding the government's authority to deny contracts to discriminatory businesses. Perhaps most significant of all, Title VII of the Civil Rights Act sought to end discrimination in all businesses with 25 or more employees. Another provision established the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission as the agency charged with ending discrimination in the nation's workplaces.74

**Question 0**

What act quickly followed the assassination of President Kennedy?

**Question 1**

What was the second objective of the Civil Rights Act, apart from regulating private business?

**Question 2**

With which other executive act did the Civil Rights Act work in close cooperation?

**Question 3**

What was the purpose of Title VII of the Civil Rights Act?

**Question 4**

What was the aim of the failure to provide equal employment opportunities?

**Question 5**

What act quickly followed the assassination of Vice President Kennedy?

**Question 6**

What was the second objective of the Civil Rights Act, apart from regulating private entrepreneurs?

**Question 7**

With which other executive act did the Civil Rights Act not cooperate closely?

**Question 8**

What was the purpose of Title VII of the Civil Rights Act?

**Text number 15**

Title VII was perhaps the most controversial part of the whole bill. Many conservatives blamed it for the de facto quota system and argued that it was unconstitutional because it attempted to regulate jobs. Minnesota Senator Hubert Humphrey corrected this perception: "Nothing [in Title VII] gives the Commission the power to require hiring, firing, and promotions to fill a racial 'quota' [. . .] Title VII is intended to encourage hiring on the basis of ability and qualifications, not race or religion." Title VII prohibits discrimination. Humphrey was the quiet hero of the bill's passage in Congress. He promised that the bill did not call for quotas, only non-discrimination. In doing so, he persuaded many pro-business Republicans, including Senate Minority Leader Everett Dirksen (IL), to support Title VII: 78-80.

**Question 0**

Which part of the legislation was the most controversial?

**Question 1**

What critics claimed that Title VII advocates?

**Question 2**

Which Senator rejected the criticism of Title VII?

**Question 3**

Who was one of the key members that Humphrey managed to get to support the bill?

**Question 4**

In what other important position than Senator did Everett Dirksen serve?

**Question 5**

Which part of the legislation was considered the least controversial?

**Question 6**

What did the supporters claim that Title VII advocates?

**Question 7**

Which mayor rejected the criticism of Title VII?

**Question 8**

Who was one of the key members that Humphrey managed to get to reject the bill?

**Question 9**

In what other important position than mayor did Everett Dirksen serve?

**Text number 16**

The progress made during Johnson's presidency to ensure equal opportunities in working life was continued by his successor, Nixon. In 1969, the Nixon administration launched the "Philadelphia Order". It was seen as the most effective plan to date to guarantee fair pay practices on construction sites. Philadelphia was chosen as a test case because, as Assistant Secretary of Labor Arthur Fletcher explained, 'the craft unions and the construction industry are among the most flagrant violators of equal opportunity laws ... openly hostile to the admission of blacks into their closed circles'. The order included clear 'targets and timetables'. As President Nixon asserted, "We would not impose quotas, but would require federal contractors to demonstrate 'affirmative action' to meet goals of increasing minority employment."

**Question 0**

Who followed in Johnson's footsteps in ensuring equal opportunities?

**Question 1**

Which act was initiated in 1969?

**Question 2**

Which sector of jobs was affected by the legislation?

**Question 3**

Which other group, apart from the construction industry, was one of the main violators of equality laws?

**Question 4**

Who was the Deputy Minister of Labour?

**Question 5**

Who followed in Johnson's footsteps in ensuring unequal opportunities?

**Question 6**

Which act was repealed in 1969?

**Question 7**

Which job sectors were not affected by the legislation?

**Question 8**

What other group, apart from the construction industry, was one of the main violators of inequality laws?

**Question 9**

Who was the Minister for Employment?

**Text number 17**

After the Nixon administration, progress on affirmative action slowed down. "During the short Ford administration, affirmative action took a back seat while implementation stumbled.":145 Equality was still an important issue for many Americans, but the world was changing and new issues were emerging. People were beginning to see affirmative action as a glorified thing of the past, and there were now other areas to focus on. "For all the gains that have marked this century as the American century -... nothing is more inspiring, however imperfect, than our quest for racial justice."

**Question 0**

What happened to the progress of affirmative action after the Nixon administration?

**Question 1**

What was one of the main reasons why the issue of positive action lost momentum?

**Question 2**

Which administration allowed affirmative action to take a back seat to other issues?

**Question 3**

What happened after the Nixon administration, when no corrective action was taken?

**Question 4**

What was one of the main reasons why the ban on positive action lost momentum?

**Question 5**

Which administration allowed affirmative action to take precedence over other issues?

**Text number 18**

In the beginning, racial classification was inherently suspicious and subject to strict controls. Such classifications could only be accepted if they were necessary to further a compelling state interest. Later, the US Supreme Court ruled that racial classifications benefiting underrepresented minorities were only permissible if they were necessary and furthered a compelling governmental purpose (see Richmond v. J.A. Croson Co. ) There is no clear guidance as to when government action is not "compelling" and such decisions are rare.

**Question 0**

What kind of classification was subject to strict control?

**Question 1**

What was the only situation where racial classification could be considered acceptable?

**Question 2**

Who later confirmed that racial classifications were to be maintained only if they were necessary?

**Question 3**

What is an example case that can be used to show when it is useful to maintain a racial classification?

**Question 4**

Which classifications are not subject to strict controls?

**Question 5**

What was the only situation where racial classification was not acceptable?

**Question 6**

Who later confirmed that racial classifications were to be maintained only if they were unnecessary?

**Question 7**

What is an example that shows that maintaining a racial classification is not beneficial?

**Text number 19**

Ricci v. DeStefano was heard by the US Supreme Court in 2009. The case concerned white and Hispanic firefighters in New Haven, Connecticut, who were denied promotions to management after passing a promotional test because of an allegedly discriminatory or at least questionable test. The test gave 17 whites and two Hispanics the chance for immediate promotion. Although 23% of the test takers were African-American, none of them scored high enough. Because of the possibility that the tests were biased and violated Title VII of the Civil Rights Act, none of the applicants were promoted until the outcome of the dispute was known. The Supreme Court ruled by a 5-4 vote that New Haven had committed prohibited racial discrimination against the white and Hispanic majority.

**Question 0**

Which white and Hispanic firefighter case was heard by the Supreme Court in 2009?

**Question 1**

What was the basis of the white and Hispanic firefighters' case?

**Question 2**

How many whites were given the opportunity for immediate promotion as a result of passing a controversial test?

**Question 3**

What percentage of test takers were African American?

**Question 4**

What was the final vote of the Supreme Court in the case?

**Question 5**

Which white and Hispanic firefighter case was heard by the Supreme Court in 2019?

**Question 6**

What was the basis of the white and black firefighters' case heard in the case?

**Question 7**

How many whites were given the chance of immediate dismissal as a result of taking a controversial test?

**Question 8**

What percentage of test takers were Asian American?

**Text number 20**

President Kennedy stated in Executive Order 10925 that "discrimination on the basis of race, religion, color, or national origin is contrary to the principles and policies of the Constitution of the United States" and that "it is the clear and positive duty of the United States Government to promote and secure equal opportunity for all qualified persons, regardless of race, religion, color, or national origin, who are employed or seeking employment in the Federal Government and on Federal contracts." that "it is the policy of the executive branch of the Government to promote by affirmative action equal opportunity for all qualified persons in the Government" and that "it is in the public interest and welfare of the United States to promote its economy, security, and national defense by the most efficient and effective use of all available labor."

**Question 0**

Which President declared that discrimination is against the principles of the US Constitution?

**Question 1**

On the basis of which statute did President Kennedy claim that discrimination was unconstitutional?

**Question 2**

Which industries were affected by Order 10925 in terms of regulation?

**Question 3**

Which President declared that discrimination is against the principles of the UK Constitution?

**Question 4**

On the basis of which statute did President Kennedy claim that discrimination was not unconstitutional?

**Question 5**

Which sectors were affected by Order 10925 in terms of deregulation?

**Text number 21**

Advocates of affirmative action argue that the system is not only racially based, but also class and gender based. Removing two key elements would undermine the whole purpose of the system. The African American Policy Forum argues that the class-based argument is based on the idea that non-poor minorities do not experience racial and gender discrimination. The AAPF argues that "race-conscious affirmative action is still needed to address the racial barriers that prevent countless people of color from succeeding in all classes." The groups continue that affirmative action is responsible for creating an African-American middle class, so it is not reasonable to say that the system benefits only the middle and upper classes.

**Question 0**

Which non-racial and non-gender affirmative action believers felt the system discriminated against?

**Question 1**

Which organisation believed in the class-based argument?

**Question 2**

Which group of people did the AAPF claim to have created affirmative action?

**Question 3**

What does the AAPF think is the basis of the class argument?

**Question 4**

What does the AAPF believe is the goal of affirmative action?

**Question 5**

Other than race and gender, what else did those who believed in affirmative action think the system did not discriminate against?

**Question 6**

Which organisation believed in the classless argument?

**Question 7**

Which group of people did the AAPF claim that affirmative action did not create?

**Question 8**

What does the AAPF believe is the basis of a class-based contract?

**Question 9**

What does the AAPF consider to be the objective of non-remedial measures?

**Text number 22**

After the end of World War II, Dwight D. Eisenhower's GI Bill widened the education gap between white and black Americans. This law opened the way for white soldiers to go to university. Despite their veteran status, returning black soldiers were not granted loans to the same extent as whites. Moreover, at the time of its introduction, segregation was still the law of the land, preventing blacks from entering the best educational institutions. In all, "nearly 8 million soldiers were educated under the GI Bill after World War II. But there were so few higher education opportunities for blacks that the promise of the GI Bill went largely unfulfilled."

**Question 0**

What major event preceded the widening educational gap between white and black Americans?

**Question 1**

What was seen as a major cause of the increase in educational inequalities?

**Question 2**

What did the returning black veterans not get?

**Question 3**

How many soldiers received training thanks to the GI Bill?

**Question 4**

What opportunities were few for black veterans?

**Question 5**

What major event preceded the widening educational gap between whites and Asian-Americans?

**Question 6**

What was not considered a major cause of the increase in educational inequalities?

**Question 7**

What did the white returnees not get?

**Question 8**

How many soldiers went untrained thanks to the GI Bill?

**Question 9**

What were the few opportunities for Spanish veterans?

**Text number 23**

According to a study by Dr Paul Brest, Latinos include immigrants who are descendants of immigrants from Central and South American countries. In 1991, Mexican-Americans, Puerto Ricans and Cubans made up 80% of the US Latino population. Latinos are worse off than white Americans and more likely to live in poverty. They are the least educated of the major ethnic groups, with a 3% drop in the high school graduation rate, while the African American rate increased by 12% between 1975 and 1990. In 1990, they accounted for 9% of the population, but received only 3.1% of the bachelor's degrees awarded. In times favourable to lawmakers, Latinos were considered "white" under Jim Crow laws during the Reconstruction era. In other cases, Latinos have been classified as an inferior race and a threat to white purity, according to Paul Brest. Latinos have faced significant discrimination in areas such as employment, housing and education. According to Brest, stereotypes are still largely negative, with many perceiving Latinos as "lazy, unproductive and unemployed". In addition, native-born Latinos and recent immigrants are seen as similar because outsiders generally do not distinguish between Latino groups.

**Question 0**

Who did the research on the origin of "Latinos"?

**Question 1**

What proportion of Latin Americans were Mexicans, Puerto Ricans and Cubans in 1991?

**Question 2**

What is the educational level of Latinos in relation to other major ethnic groups?

**Question 3**

How much did the proportion of African-American high school graduates increase between 1975 and 1990?

**Question 4**

How many of all bachelor's degrees awarded in 1990 went to Latinos?

**Question 5**

Who did the research on the origin of "blacks"?

**Question 6**

What proportion of Latinos were Mexican-Americans, Puerto Ricans and Cubans in 1911?

**Question 7**

What is the educational level of blacks in relation to other major ethnic groups?

**Question 8**

How many of the total number of bachelor's degrees awarded in 1992 went to Latinos?

**Text number 24**

Native Americans refer to the diverse group of people who lived in North America before Europe was settled. During the western expansion of the US government, Native Americans were displaced from the land that had been their home for centuries. Instead, they were forced onto reservations, which were much smaller and less productive. According to Brest, Native American land was reduced from 138 million hectares in 1887 to 52 million hectares in 1934. In 1990, the poverty rate for Native Americans was more than three times that of whites, and only 9.4% of Native Americans had a bachelor's degree, compared to 25.2% of whites and 12.2% of African Americans.

**Question 0**

Which groups can be classified as Indians?

**Question 1**

When did the Indians lose their land?

**Question 2**

Where were the Indians forced to live after they lost their land?

**Question 3**

How much land did Indians own in 1934?

**Question 4**

What was the poverty rate of Native Americans relative to whites in 1990?

**Question 5**

Which groups can be classified as non-Native American?

**Question 6**

When did the Indians win their land?

**Question 7**

Where were the Indians forced to live after they won their land?

**Question 8**

How much land did Indians own in 1914?

**Text number 25**

Asian migrants experienced prejudice and discrimination because they were not given the opportunity to acquire citizenship. They also had to contend with many of the same school segregation laws that African-Americans faced. In particular, during World War II, Japanese Americans were interned in camps and lost their property, homes and businesses. Discrimination against Asians began with the Chinese Exclusion Act of 1882 and continued with the Scott Act of 1888 and the Geary Act of 1892. In the early 1900s, the United States passed the Immigration Act of 1924 to prevent Asian immigration, fearing that Asians would steal white jobs and lower wages. Moreover, whites and non-Asians do not distinguish between different Asian groups and perpetuate the stereotype of the "model minority". According to a 2010 article by Fairfield University professor Qin Zhang, Asians are characterised as one-dimensional because they have a good work ethic and value education, but lack communication skills and personality. A negative consequence of this stereotype is that Asians are portrayed as poor leaders and interpersonal skills. This has contributed to the "glass ceiling" phenomenon where, although there are many qualified Asian-Americans, there are disproportionately few of them in management positions in companies. In addition, the model minority stereotype has led to a resentment of Asian success, with many universities and colleges restricting or blaming Asian entry.

**Question 0**

What kind of discrimination did early Asian immigrants experience?

**Question 1**

What type of law did Asian immigrants struggle with?

**Question 2**

Which act marked the beginning of discrimination against Asians?

**Question 3**

What was the purpose of the bill to restrict or prevent Asian immigration?

**Question 4**

According to research, what are Asians perceived to be lacking?

**Question 5**

m What kind of discrimination did early African migrants experience?

**Question 6**

What type of law did African migrants struggle with?

**Question 7**

What was the bill that tried to promote Asian immigration?

**Text number 26**

Advocates of affirmative action recognize that politics is inherently unequal; however, they view politics as far more just than politics that ignores these circumstances, given the inescapable fact that there is historical inequality in America. Moreover, affirmative action advocates view it as an effort toward inclusion rather than a discriminatory practice. "Workplace discrimination is based on prejudice and exclusion, while affirmative action is an attempt to overcome prejudice through inclusion. The most effective way to heal society from exclusionary practices is to make specific efforts to promote inclusion, which is exactly what affirmative action does. "

**Question 0**

What is one of the problems of affirmative action?

**Question 1**

How do people who support affirmative action feel about it?

**Question 2**

What are positive actions supposed to achieve?

**Question 3**

What do positive action advocates think is the best way to combat exclusionary practices?

**Question 4**

What is one of the problems with non-remedial actions?

**Question 5**

How do people who are not in favour of affirmative action react to it?

**Question 6**

What are positive actions not supposed to achieve?

**Question 7**

What do positive action advocates consider to be the worst way to combat exclusionary practices?

**Text number 27**

Affirmative action policies have both supporters and opponents. Many presidents over the last century have not taken a very firm stand on this policy, and the public has had to find out for themselves what the president thinks. However, Bill Clinton made his position on affirmative action very clear in a speech on 19 July 1995, almost two and a half years after his inauguration. In his speech, he discussed the history of the United States that led to the implementation of this policy: slavery, Jim Crow and segregation. Clinton also mentioned President Lyndon B. Johnson's "Freedom is not enough" speech and declared that simply banning discrimination in the country would not be enough to give all Americans equality. She addressed claims that affirmative action was hurting the white middle class, saying that politics was not the source of their problems. Clinton made her position on affirmative action clear by saying:

**Question 0**

Which president made his position on affirmative action clear in 1995?

**Question 1**

How long after his inauguration did Bill Clinton give a speech?

**Question 2**

To which speech did Bill Clinton's speech draw similarities?

**Question 3**

What did President Clinton claim was not enough to give all Americans equality?

**Question 4**

What was President Clinton's response to the claim that affirmative action was hurting the white middle class.

**Question 5**

Which president made his position on non-discrimination clear in 1995?

**Question 6**

How soon after his inauguration did Bill Clinton give a speech?

**Question 7**

What was the speech that Bill Clinton's speech was different from?

**Question 8**

What did President Clinton claim would be enough to give all Americans equality?

**Question 9**

What was President Clinton's response to the claim that affirmative action does not harm the white middle class?

**Text number 28**

The National Conference of State Legislatures in Washington, D.C., noted in a 2014 review that many affirmative action advocates argue that affirmative action policies help open doors for historically excluded groups in the workplace and in higher education. Workplace diversity has become a managerial concept, with employers actively seeking to promote an inclusive workplace. By valuing diversity, employers are able to create an environment where a culture of respect for individual differences prevails and where they can attract talent and ideas from all demographics. By creating such a diverse workforce, these employers and companies will gain a competitive advantage in an increasingly global economy. According to the US Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, many private sector employers have found that a diverse workforce makes a company "stronger, more profitable and a better place to work." As a result, these diversity policies are implemented for competitive reasons rather than in response to discrimination, but they have demonstrated the value of diversity.

**Question 0**

Where was the national conference of state legislatures held in 2014?

**Question 1**

What did the advocates of positive action claim about the effects of policies that support positive action?

**Question 2**

What has the concept of diversity in the workplace led employers to do?

**Question 3**

A diverse workplace allows employers to do what?

**Question 4**

Which organisation claims that private sector employers believe that a diverse workplace is beneficial?

**Question 5**

Where was the national conference of state legislatures held in 2024?

**Question 6**

What did the advocates of affirmative action claim some of the effects of the policies that were rejected by affirmative action did?

**Question 7**

What has the concept of diversity in the workplace led employers to miss?

**Question 8**

A diverse workplace gives employers the opportunity to do what?

**Text number 29**

According to a 2000 study by the American Association of University Professors (AAUP), affirmative action promoted diversity in colleges and universities. This has been shown to have a positive impact on the educational outcomes and experiences of college students and the teaching of faculty members. According to a study by Geoffrey Maruyama and José F. Moreno, the results showed that faculty members believed that diversity helped students achieve the key goals of a university education, that white students were not adversely affected by classroom diversity, and that attention to multicultural learning enhanced the ability of colleges and universities to fulfill their missions. In addition, diverse students offer unique perspectives that can challenge preconceptions by learning about the experiences and ideas of others. According to Professor Gurin of the University of Michigan, studying with a heterogeneous group of students can potentially develop skills such as "perspective taking, acceptance of difference, willingness and ability to find commonalities in differences, acceptance of conflict as normal, conflict resolution, participation in democracy and interest in the wider social world". In addition, broadening perspectives helps students to confront personal and content stereotypes and promotes discussion of racial and ethnic issues in the classroom. In addition, a 2000 AAUP study found that a diversity of perspectives leads to better discussion and greater understanding among students of issues related to race, tolerance, justice, etc.

**Question 0**

What does AAUP stand for?

**Question 1**

According to the AAUP study, what was the impact of affirmative action on universities?

**Question 2**

What did one study claim about faculty members' beliefs about increasing diversity?

**Question 3**

Who doesn't suffer from diversity in the classroom?

**Question 4**

What year did the AAUP publish its study?

**Question 5**

What does ADUP stand for?

**Question 6**

What was the impact of affirmative action on universities according to the AALP study?

**Question 7**

What did one study claim about faculty members' beliefs about reduced diversity?

**Question 8**

Who is suffering from diversity in the classroom?

**Question 9**

What year did ALUP publish its study?

**Text number 30**

Richard Sander argues that artificially placing minority pupils in schools they would otherwise be unable to attend discourages them and leads to their failure and high drop-out rates. For example, about half of black college students rank in the bottom 20% of their class, black law school graduates are four times more likely to fail the bar exam than whites, and interracial friendships are more likely to form between students with relatively similar levels of academic preparation; thus, blacks and Hispanics are more likely to integrate socially on campuses where their academic preparation is less poor. He argues that the supposed "beneficiaries" of affirmative action - minorities - do not actually benefit but rather suffer. Sander's claims have been disputed and his empirical analyses have been heavily criticised. A group including some of the country's leading experts on statistical methodology told the Supreme Court that Sander's analyses were so flawed that the court would be wise to ignore them altogether. Meanwhile, many researchers have found that minorities benefit significantly from affirmative action.

**Question 0**

Who says that artificially bringing minority pupils into schools has a negative effect on them?

**Question 1**

According to Richard Sander, what was the negative impact of affirmative action?

**Question 2**

Where do half of black students rank in terms of performance compared to the rest of the class?

**Question 3**

What is the failure rate of black law school graduates compared to white law school graduates?

**Question 4**

Who claims that artificially bringing minority pupils into schools has a positive effect on them?

**Question 5**

According to Richard Sander, what was the positive impact of affirmative action?

**Question 6**

Where do half of white university students rank in terms of performance relative to the rest of the class?

**Question 7**

What is the failure rate of black law school graduates compared to Asian law school graduates?

**Text number 31**

The argument about the effectiveness of positive action is based on the idea of inequality between classes. Opponents of race-based affirmative action argue that the program actually benefits middle- and upper-class African-Americans and Hispanics at the expense of lower-class European-Americans and Asian-Americans. This argument supports the idea of class-based affirmative action. The American poor are disproportionately made up of people of color, so class-based affirmative action would disproportionately help people of color. This would eliminate the need for race-based affirmative action and reduce the disproportionate benefits to middle and upper class people of color.

**Question 0**

What is the primary idea behind the affirmative action controversy?

**Question 1**

According to opponents of affirmative action, which non-African Americans benefit most from affirmative action?

**Question 2**

At the expense of whom else but Asian-Americans do upper-class African-Americans and Latin-Americans supposedly benefit?

**Question 3**

What do some people think positive action should be based on instead of racial legislation?

**Question 4**

Who are the main group of poor people in America?

**Question 5**

What is the primary idea behind the non-corrective action controversy?

**Question 6**

Who do non-Asian Americans benefit the most from affirmative action, according to opponents of affirmative action?

**Question 7**

At the expense of who else but African-Americans, do upper-class African-Americans and Hispanics supposedly benefit?

**Question 8**

What do some people think should be the basis for positive action instead of religion-based legislation?

**Question 9**

Who are the rich in America?

**Text number 32**

In 1976, a group of Italian-American professors at New York City University asked to be added to the affirmative action group on promotions and salaries. Italian-Americans in the United States are normally considered white and would not be considered for affirmative action, but the professors believed they were underrepresented. Libertarian economist Thomas Sowell, in his book Affirmative Action Around the World: An Empirical Study, wrote that affirmative action policies encourage non-privileged groups to designate themselves as members of privileged groups [i.e. as primary beneficiaries of affirmative action] in order to benefit from group preference policies.

**Question 0**

Where were the Italian-American professors working who asked to be added to the affirmative action group?

**Question 1**

What year did the Italian-American professors make their request?

**Question 2**

Which racial category do Italian-Americans usually belong to?

**Question 3**

What was the title of a book written by Thomas Sowell?

**Question 4**

Why would Italian-Americans want to designate themselves as a priority group?

**Question 5**

Where were the Irish-American professors working who asked to be added to the affirmative action group?

**Question 6**

What year did the Irish-American professors make their request?

**Question 7**

Which racial category do Irish-Americans usually belong to?

**Question 8**

What was the name of a song written by Thomas Sowell?

**Question 9**

Why would Italian-Americans want to be labelled as belonging to a non-preferred group?

**Text number 33**

Frederick Lynch, author of Invisible Victims: White Males and the Crisis of Affirmative Action, conducted a study of white males, which found that they were victims of reverse discrimination. Lynch explains that these white men felt frustrated and unfairly victimized by affirmative action. Shelby Steele, another anti-affirmative action author, wanted affirmative action to be restored to its original meaning of equal opportunity. She argued that blacks should take full responsibility for their education and for keeping their jobs. Steele believes that America still has a long way to go to achieve its goals of eliminating discrimination.

**Question 0**

Which book was written by Frederick Lynch?

**Question 1**

What did white men feel happened to them as a result of affirmative action?

**Question 2**

What moral position does Shelby Steele represent?

**Question 3**

What does Shelby Steele think is the real concept of positive action?

**Question 4**

Which book did Frederick Lynch burn?

**Question 5**

What did black men feel happened to them as a result of affirmative action?

**Question 6**

What moral position does Shelby Steele disagree with?

**Question 7**

What is Shelby Steele's misconception of affirmative action?

**Text number 34**

Terry Eastland, author of From Ending Affirmative Action: The Case for Colorblind Justice, states, "Most justifications for affirmative action fall into two categories: correcting past discrimination and promoting diversity." Eastland believes that the founders of affirmative action failed to anticipate how the benefits of affirmative action would go to those who did not need it, mainly middle-class minorities. He also argues that affirmative action carries a stigma that can cause minorities to doubt themselves and feel a sense of entitlement. Eastland believes that affirmative action is a big risk that only sometimes pays off, and that without it we could compete more freely with each other. Libertarian economist Thomas Sowell, in his book Affirmative Action Around the World, identifies the negative consequences of affirmative action: an empirical study. Sowell writes that affirmative action policies encourage non-privileged groups to designate themselves as members of privileged groups [i.e. primary beneficiaries] in order to benefit from group preference policies; that they tend to primarily benefit the most fortunate of privileged groups (e.g. that they tend to benefit primarily those in the most privileged groups (e.g. upper and middle class blacks), often at the expense of those in the least privileged groups (e.g. poor whites or Asians); that they reduce the incentives for both the privileged and the non-privileged to do their best - the former because it is unnecessary and the latter because it may prove futile - leading to a net loss for society as a whole; and that they also generate hostility towards privileged groups.:115-147.

**Question 0**

Which book did Terry Eastland write?

**Question 1**

In addition to promoting diversity, what is the other reason Eastland sees for advocating affirmative action?

**Question 2**

What did Eastland believe the founders of affirmative action were not taking into account?

**Question 3**

Why does Sowell believe that the most popular minority groups have little incentive to perform at their best?

**Question 4**

What argument does Sowell make when he claims that non-privileged minorities have less incentive to perform at their best?

**Question 5**

Which song did Terry Eastland write?

**Question 6**

What does Eastland see as another reason to be against affirmative action, apart from promoting diversity?

**Question 7**

What did Westland believe the founders of affirmative action were not taking into account?

**Question 8**

Why does Sowell believe that the most popular minority groups have plenty of incentives to perform at their best?

**Question 9**

What argument does Sowell make when he claims that privileged minorities have less incentive to perform at their best?

**Text number 35**

Some commentators have defined reverse discrimination as the policy or practice of discriminating against members of the majority in favour of a historically disadvantaged group or minority. Many argue that reverse discrimination is the result of affirmative action policies and that these policies are just one form of discrimination, no different from previous ones. People like Ward Connerly argue that affirmative action presupposes the very discrimination it seeks to eliminate. According to these opponents, this contradiction can make affirmative action counterproductive. One argument against reverse discrimination is the idea that affirmative action encourages mediocrity and incompetence. Jobs would be offered not to the most qualified applicants but to applicants with a particular characteristic, such as a particular race, ethnicity or gender. Opponents say, for example, that affirmative action leads to the admission of unqualified applicants to highly demanding institutions or jobs, which ultimately leads to failure (see, for example, Richard Sander's study on affirmative action in law school, the bar exam, and potential success in law firms). Other opponents argue that affirmative action lowers the bar and thus prevents those who strive for excellence on their own merits from gaining a real sense of achievement. Opponents of affirmative action argue that merit should be the primary factor when applying for jobs, university, post-graduate studies, etc.

**Question 0**

What is the definition of reverse discrimination?

**Question 1**

What is the irony, according to some commentators, of policies resulting from affirmative action?

**Question 2**

Who is an example of someone who claims that affirmative action is another form of discrimination?

**Question 3**

What do the opponents of affirmative action think should be the most important factor in determining admission to employment or training?

**Question 4**

The argument against affirmative action is that it encourages what?

**Question 5**

What is the definition of discrimination?

**Question 6**

What is the irony, according to some commentators, of policies resulting from affirmative action?

**Question 7**

Who is an example of someone who argues that affirmative action is not another form of discrimination?

**Question 8**

What should be the main key to determining eligibility for unemployment, according to the opponents of affirmative action?

**Question 9**

The argument against affirmative action is that it prevents what?

**Text number 36**

Another popular argument in favour of positive action is the compensation argument. Blacks were mistreated in the past because of a morally irrelevant black characteristic, so modern society should compensate for the insults. This creates reverse discrimination in the form of preferential pay, contracts and grants as a means of redressing past wrongs. Many opponents argue that this form of reparation is morally untenable because if blacks were harmed in the past for being black, preferential treatment for that same characteristic is illogical. Furthermore, arguments are made that whites today, who innocently benefited from past wrongs, should not be punished for something over which they had no control. Therefore, they are being discriminated against in reverse, because they are receiving the punishment that should be meted out to people who knowingly and willingly benefited from discriminatory practices.

**Question 0**

What is a typical argument for affirmative action?

**Question 1**

In the compensation argument, who should have to make up for past discrimination against blacks?

**Question 2**

Which argument do those who oppose affirmative action make in relation to the compensation argument?

**Question 3**

For whites, what is the argument that tries to negate the benefits of affirmative action in the compensation argument?

**Question 4**

Who should be punished for discrimination, according to the opposition?

**Question 5**

What is a typical argument against affirmative action?

**Question 6**

In the compensation argument, who should have to compensate for discrimination against whites?

**Question 7**

Which argument do those in favour of positive action make in relation to the compensation argument?

**Question 8**

For blacks, what is the argument that tries to negate the benefits of affirmative action in the compensation argument?

**Text number 37**

Some opponents also argue that affirmative action has undesirable side effects and does not achieve its objectives. They argue that it prevents reconciliation, replaces old injustices with new ones, undermines the achievements of minorities and encourages groups to see themselves as disadvantaged even when they are not. It can increase racial tensions and benefit the more privileged in minority groups at the expense of the disenfranchised in more advantaged groups (such as lower-class whites and Asians).Recently, US states have been pushing hard to ban racial or gender preferences in university admissions in response to the controversial and unprecedented decision in Grutter v. Bollinger. In 2006, nearly 60% of Michigan voters decided to ban affirmative action in university admissions. Michigan joined California, Florida, Texas and Washington in banning racial or gender-based admissions. Some opponents believe, among other things, that affirmative action devalues the achievements of people who belong to the group it is intended to help, and thus makes affirmative action harmful. In addition, opponents of affirmative action argue that such action dehumanizes individuals and that job or school applicants are judged as members of a group without regard to the individual.

**Question 0**

What else do opponents of affirmative action claim affirmative action is but a failure to achieve its goal?

**Question 1**

What is the argument against affirmative action other than that it benefits more privileged people in minority groups?

**Question 2**

When did Michigan vote on affirmative action?

**Question 3**

How many Michigan voters voted to ban affirmative action in college admissions?

**Question 4**

In which case was an unprecedented and controversial decision made?

**Question 5**

What else do advocates of affirmative action claim it has done other than fail to achieve its goal?

**Question 6**

What is the argument against affirmative action other than that it benefits more privileged people outside minority groups?

**Question 7**

When has Michigan voted on affirmative action?

**Question 8**

How many Michigan voters supported affirmative action for college admissions?

**Question 9**

In which case was there an uncontested decision?

**Text number 38**

In the United States, racial preferences are an important form of discrimination in access to education, particularly universities and other forms of higher education. Race, ethnicity, mother tongue, social class, geographic origin, parental attendance at the university in question (legacy admissions) and/or gender are sometimes taken into account when a university evaluates an applicant's grades and test scores. Individuals may also be awarded scholarships and fees based on the criteria listed above. In 1978, the Supreme Court ruled in Bakke v. Regents that public universities (and other public institutions) cannot set specific racial numerical targets for admission or employment. Instead, the court said, diversity "goals" and "timetables" can be set.

**Question 0**

Where are racial preferences most emphasised in the US?

**Question 1**

What is another term for children who receive preferential treatment because their parents study at the same university?

**Question 2**

Which Supreme Court case led to the decision on public universities and affirmative action?

**Question 3**

What are public universities not allowed to do?

**Question 4**

Instead of allowing universities to set numerical targets, what did the Court decide that universities should be allowed to do?

**Question 5**

Where in the UK is there the greatest emphasis on racial preferences?

**Question 6**

What is another term for children who do not receive preferential treatment because their parents study at the same university?

**Question 7**

Which Supreme Court case led to the decision on private universities and affirmative action?

**Question 8**

What are public universities allowed to do?

**Text number 39**

The racial preferences debate on admission to US colleges and universities reflects competing views on the mission of higher education: 'To what extent should higher education pursue scientific excellence, to what extent civic goods, and how should these goals be balanced?' Scholars such as Ronald Dworkin have argued that no applicant to higher education has the right to expect that a university will design its admissions policy to favour a particular set of characteristics. According to this view, admission is not an honour granted to reward superior merit, but rather a means to further the mission defined by each university. If diversity is a goal of the university, and if racial selection procedures do not discriminate against applicants on the basis of hatred or contempt, affirmative action may be considered acceptable on the basis of criteria related to the mission the university has set for itself.

**Question 0**

What does the debate on racial benefits say about universities and colleges?

**Question 1**

What claim did Ronald Dworkin make about expectations that should not be in a university application?

**Question 2**

What does Ronald Dworkin think admission should stand for?

**Question 3**

When can positive action be considered acceptable for admission purposes?

**Question 4**

What does the debate on racial preferences not say about universities and colleges?

**Question 5**

What was Ronald Dworkin's argument about what expectations should be included in a university application?

**Question 6**

When are affirmative action measures unacceptable for access?

**Text number 40**

Following the Hopwood v. Texas ruling, which banned racial assessment in school admissions, the state of Texas passed a law guaranteeing admission to any state university if a student ranked in the top 10% of his or her graduating class. Florida and California have also replaced racial quotas with class ranking and other criteria. Class rank tends to benefit top students from less competitive high schools at the expense of students from more competitive high schools. However, this effect may be intentional, as less funded and less competitive schools are more likely to have high minority populations. Critics argue that class ranking is more a measure of peers than of self. The top 10% rule increases racial diversity only because schools remain highly segregated by housing patterns. The class ranking rule has the same effect as traditional affirmative action: it opens schools to students who would not otherwise have gotten in if that school had used a holistic, merit-based approach. Between 1996 and 1998, Texas state universities admitted merit-based students, and minority admissions declined. When the state adopted the "10% cap" rule, minority admissions returned to pre-1996 levels.

**Question 0**

What precedent did Hopwood v. Texas set for immigration policy?

**Question 1**

What does the law adopted by the State of Texas guarantee?

**Question 2**

In which states other than Texas and Florida have race quotas been replaced?

**Question 3**

What is one example of what was used to replace racial quotas?

**Question 4**

What happened to minority enrollment after the state adopted the 10% cap rule?

**Question 5**

Which Hopwood v. Texas ruling did not set a precedent in immigration policy?

**Question 6**

What was not guaranteed by the law passed by the State of Texas?

**Question 7**

Which state other than Texas and Florida did not replace their racial quotas?

**Question 8**

What is one example of how the breed quotas were not replaced?

**Text number 41**

In a panel discussion for Harvard University's African-American alumni in 2003-04, two prominent black professors - Lani Guinier and Henry Louis Gates - highlighted the unintended impact of Harvard's affirmative action policies. They noted that only about a third of Harvard's black students came from families where all four grandparents were born into the African-American community. The majority of Harvard's black students were Caribbean and African immigrants or their children, and some were the mixed-race children of mixed-race couples. One Harvard student, born in the South Bronx to a black family whose ancestors had lived in the United States for several generations, said that there were so few Harvard students from the historic African-American community that they began calling themselves "descendants" (i.e., descendants of American slaves). The reasons for the historical underrepresentation of African Americans and possible remedies are still being debated.

**Question 0**

What happened at Harvard University in 2003-04?

**Question 1**

What did two well-known black professors point out in the panel discussion?

**Question 2**

What proportion of Harvard's black students came from families where all four grandparents were born into the African-American community?

**Question 3**

What name did Harvard's African-American students who could trace their ancestry back several generations begin to call themselves?

**Question 4**

Other than the reasons for the under-representation of African-Americans, what else is there to discuss?

**Question 5**

What happened at Harvard University in 2007-2008?

**Question 6**

What did two well-known white professors point out in the panel discussion?

**Question 7**

What proportion of Harvard's black students came from families where all four grandparents were born in an Asian-American community?

**Question 8**

What did Harvard's Asian-American students, who could trace their ancestry back several generations, start calling themselves?

**Question 9**

Other than the reasons for the under-representation of Asian-Americans, what else is there to discuss?

**Text number 42**

UCLA professor Richard H. Sander published an article in the November 2004 issue of the Stanford Law Review questioning the effectiveness of racial preferences in law schools. He noted that prior to his article, there had been no comprehensive research on the effects of affirmative action. The article presents research showing that half of all black law students rank near the bottom of their class after the first year of law school and that black law students are more likely to drop out of law school and fail the bar exam. The article presents a preliminary estimate that the number of new black lawyers in the United States would increase by 8% if affirmative action programs at all law schools were discontinued. Less qualified black students would go to less prestigious schools where their abilities would be more in line with those of their classmates and where they would therefore perform relatively better. Sander helped develop an affirmative action plan for UCLA's law school based on socioeconomic background after the 1996 passage of Assembly Bill 209, which banned racial preferences at California public universities. The change came after studies showed that UCLA's black graduation rate was 41 percent, compared to 73 percent for whites.

**Question 0**

Which university does Richard H. Sander belong to?

**Question 1**

In which publication did Sander publish an article questioning racial preferences in law schools?

**Question 2**

What did Sander's research show about the rankings of black law students?

**Question 3**

By how much does the article estimate that the number of black lawyers would potentially increase if affirmative action were stopped?

**Question 4**

Which piece of legislation banned the use of race-based benefits in the state of California?

**Question 5**

Which university does Richard H. Sander not belong to?

**Question 6**

In which publication did Sander publish an article in which he did not question racial preferences in law schools?

**Question 7**

What did Sander's study show about the rankings of white law students?

**Question 8**

How much does the article estimate that the number of black lawyers would potentially increase if affirmative action were to be introduced?

**Question 9**

Which piece of legislation did not ban the use of race-based benefits in the state of California?

**Text number 43**

A 2007 study by University of Washington economics professor Mark Long showed that affirmative action alternatives proved ineffective in restoring minority participation in flagship public universities in California, Texas and Washington. Specifically, the apparent recovery in minority enrollment can be explained by an increase in the number of minorities in high schools in these states, and the beneficiaries of class-based (not race-based) affirmative action would be white students. At the same time, affirmative action itself is both morally and materially costly: 52% of whites (and 14% of blacks) thought it should be abolished, suggesting a white aversion to the use of racial identity, and the cost of full records checks is expected to cost universities between $1.5 million and $2 million a year, not counting potential legal costs.

**Question 0**

What is Professor Mark Long's field of study?

**Question 1**

What year did Long publish his study?

**Question 2**

How did the Long report explain the setbacks in minority enrolment?

**Question 3**

Who would benefit from classroom-based positive action?

**Question 4**

What percentage of the black population thought that affirmative action should be abolished?

**Question 5**

In what field did Professor Mark Long work?

**Question 6**

In what year did Long abandon his research?

**Question 7**

How did the Long report dismiss the objections to minority enrolment?

**Question 8**

Who would be the supposed beneficiaries of non-class-based affirmative action?

**Question 9**

What percentage of the black population agreed that affirmative action should not be abolished?

**Text number 44**

In 2006, Jian Li, a Chinese student at Yale University, filed a civil rights lawsuit with the Office of Civil Rights against Princeton University, alleging that his race played a role in the decision to reject his application for admission, and demanding a suspension of federal financial aid to the university until it "ends discrimination against Asian Americans in all its forms" by eliminating racial and heritage preferences. Janet Rapelye, Princeton's Dean of Admissions, responded to the allegations in the 30 November 2006 issue of the Daily Princetonian, stating that "the numbers do not suggest [discrimination]". She said Li was not admitted because "many others had much better qualifications". Li's extra-curricular activities were described as "not very significant". Li responded by email that his placement on the waiting list undermined Rapelye's argument. "Princeton had originally placed my application on the waitlist," Li said. "So if the application yield had not been higher than expected, the admissions office might well have accepted an applicant whose 'external activities were not very significant'."

**Question 0**

To which organisation did Li file a civil rights complaint?

**Question 1**

Against which university did Li invoke racial discrimination?

**Question 2**

Who was the admissions director at Princeton University at the time of the complaint?

**Question 3**

According to Princeton, what were the real reasons why Li rejected his application?

**Question 4**

Even if Li was not accepted, what was done instead of outright rejection?

**Question 5**

Which organisation did Li not file a civil rights lawsuit with?

**Question 6**

What university did Li claim was not racially discriminatory?

**Question 7**

Who was not the Dean of Admissions at Princeton University at the time of the complaint?

**Question 8**

According to Princeton, what were the real reasons why Li accepted the application?

**Question 9**

Even if Li did not get a rejection, what was done instead of a direct rejection?

**Text number 45**

In 2012, Louisiana State University student Abigail Fisher and Southern Methodist University law student Rachel Multer Michalewicz filed a lawsuit against the University of Texas' admissions policy, claiming it engaged in "race-conscious policies" that "violated their civil and constitutional rights". The University of Texas applies the "Top Ten Percent Law", which guarantees admission to all Texas public colleges and universities to high school students who graduate in the top ten percent of their high school class. Fisher has taken the admissions policy to court because he believes he was denied admission to the University of Texas on the basis of his race, and thus his 14th Amendment right to equal protection was violated. The Supreme Court heard oral arguments from Fisher on October 10, 2012, and issued an ambiguous ruling in 2013 that sent the case back to the lower court, stating only that the university must show that it cannot achieve diversity through other, non-racial means. In July 2014, the US Fifth Circuit Court of Appeals ruled that U of T follows a "holistic" approach to applying affirmative action and can continue the practice. On February 10, 2015, Fisher's lawyers filed a new lawsuit in the Supreme Court. This is a renewed appeal that the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit erred - both the second time and the first time. In June 2015, the Supreme Court agreed to hear the case a second time. The case is likely to be decided in June 2016.

**Question 0**

What was the lawsuit against the university?

**Question 1**

What did the claimants allege was the university's admissions policy?

**Question 2**

What did the University of Texas admissions policy supposedly violate?

**Question 3**

Who decided that the university follows a "holistic" approach to positive action?

**Question 4**

When is the Supreme Court likely to hear the case a second time?

**Question 5**

Which university had not brought legal action against it?

**Question 6**

What did the plaintiffs allege that the university did not have an admissions policy?

**Question 7**

What did the University of Texas admissions policy not violate?

**Question 8**

Who concluded that the university does not follow a "holistic" approach to positive action?

**Question 9**

When is the Supreme Court likely to hear the case a third time?

**Text number 46**

On 17 November 2014, Students for Fair Admissions, an arm of the Project on Fair Representation, filed a lawsuit in federal district court against the admissions practices of Harvard University and the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. The UNC-Chapel Hill suit alleges discrimination against white and Asian students, while the Harvard suit focuses on discrimination against Asian applicants. Both universities asked the court to stay the lawsuits until the US Supreme Court clarifies the relevant law by issuing a second decision in Fisher v. University of Texas at Austin. This Supreme Court case is likely to be decided in June 2016 or slightly earlier.

**Question 0**

On what day were lawsuits filed against Harvard and Chapel Hill?

**Question 1**

Who brought the lawsuits against the universities?

**Question 2**

Which non-Asian students were allegedly discriminated against?

**Question 3**

What is the branch of Students for Fair Admissions?

**Question 4**

What are universities waiting for before taking legal action?

**Question 5**

The day the lawsuits were filed against Harvard and Chapel Hill?

**Question 6**

Who filed the lawsuits against the universities?

**Question 7**

Which non-African students were allegedly discriminated against?

**Question 8**

What is not Students for Fair Admissions?

**Question 9**

What do universities expect when they proceed with the trial?

**Text number 47**

In May 2015, a coalition of more than 60 Asian-American organisations filed federal complaints against Harvard University with the Departments of Education and Justice. The coalition requested a civil rights investigation into what it described as Harvard's discriminatory admissions practices against Asian American applicants. The complaint alleges that recent studies show that Harvard has engaged in systematic and ongoing discrimination against Asian Americans in its "comprehensive" admissions process. Harvard allegedly rejected Asian-American applicants with near-perfect test scores, top one percent grade point averages, academic awards and leadership positions because of the university's use of racial stereotyping, racially differentiated standards and de facto racial quotas. This federal lawsuit was dismissed in July 2015 because the Students for Fair Admissions lawsuit makes similar allegations.

**Question 0**

How many Asian organisations were involved in the federal complaints process?

**Question 1**

Who did the organisations complain to?

**Question 2**

Who was the target of the application?

**Question 3**

What is the grade point average of some students who are rejected?

**Question 4**

Why was the case eventually dismissed?

**Question 5**

How many Asian organisations were not involved in the federal appeals process?

**Question 6**

Who did the organisations not complain to?

**Question 7**

Who was not the subject of the application?

**Question 8**

What is the grade point average of some students who are not rejected?

**Document number 249**

**Text number 0**

The competition is open to all eligible clubs up to Level 10 of the English Football League System - all 92 professional clubs in the Premier League and Football League (Levels 1-4), plus several hundred non-league teams in National League System Levels 1-6 (Levels 5-10). A record 763 clubs competed in the 2011-12 season. The tournament consists of 12 randomly drawn rounds, followed by semi-finals and a final. There is no ranking of participants, but a league-level freeplay system ensures that the higher-ranked teams qualify for the subsequent rounds.

**Question 0**

Who is the competition open to?

**Question 1**

How many clubs competed in 2001-12?

**Question 2**

How many rounds are there in the tournament?

**Question 3**

How many games does it take to win?

**Question 4**

Which league can compete?

**Question 5**

Who is the competition not open to?

**Question 6**

How many clubs competed before 2011?

**Question 7**

Which leagues cannot participate in the competition?

**Question 8**

What is the maximum number of games needed to win?

**Question 9**

How many non-random rounds are there in the tournament?

**Text number 1**

The first six rounds will be a qualifying competition, from which 32 teams will advance to the first round of the main competition, where the first 92 professional teams will meet. The final participants will be clubs from the Premier League and the Championship who will qualify for the draw for the third round. In modern times, non-league teams have never reached the quarter-finals and teams below level 2 have never reached the final. [note 1] Therefore, in addition to the winners, considerable attention is paid to the "little guys" (smaller teams) that advance the furthest, especially if they achieve an unlikely "giant-killer" victory.

**Question 0**

Which rounds are qualifying rounds?

**Question 1**

How many teams in the first round?

**Question 2**

Which league comes in the third round?

**Question 3**

Has any non-league team reached the quarter-finals in modern times??

**Question 4**

Has a level 2 club ever made it to the final?

**Question 5**

How many teams will not progress to the first round of the competition?

**Question 6**

Has a non-league team reached the quarter-finals in previous seasons?

**Question 7**

How many teams are in the second round?

**Question 8**

In what period did a non-league team reach the quarter-finals?

**Question 9**

What is the name of the last six rounds?

**Text number 2**

The winners will receive the FA Cup trophy, of which there have been two models and five actual trophies, the latest being a replica of the second model introduced in 1911, dating back to 2014. The winners will also have access to European football matches and a place in the FA Community Shield. Arsenal are the current champions, having beaten Aston Villa 4-0 in the 2015 final to win the trophy for the second year in a row. It was Arsenal's 12th FA Cup title, making them the most successful club in the FA Cup ahead of Manchester United, who have 11 titles.

**Question 0**

What do the winners get?

**Question 1**

How many FA Cup models have there been?

**Question 2**

How many FA Cups have there been?

**Question 3**

When was the latest model introduced?

**Question 4**

What do the losers get?

**Question 5**

When was the earliest model introduced?

**Question 6**

Who is the least successful club?

**Question 7**

What was Arsenal's result against Manchester United in the 2015 final?

**Question 8**

How many FA Cup Trophy replicas have been made?

**Text number 3**

In 1863, the newly formed Football Association (FA) published the Laws of the Game for association football, which combined the various rules that had existed until then. On 20 July 1871, at the offices of The Sportsman newspaper, FA Secretary C. W. Alcock proposed to the FA Committee that 'it is desirable that a Challenge Cup should be established within the Association, in which all clubs belonging to the Association should be invited to compete'. The first FA Cup tournament was launched in November 1871. After thirteen matches in all, Wanderers were crowned winners in the final on 16 March 1872. Wanderers retained the trophy the following year. The modern cup began to take shape in the 1888-89 season, with the introduction of qualifying rounds.

**Question 0**

When were the rules of association football published?

**Question 1**

Who was the secretary of the FA in 1871?

**Question 2**

When was the first FA Cup tournament held?

**Question 3**

Who won the first and second cup?

**Question 4**

When was the modern cup founded?

**Question 5**

Who was the secretary of the FA in 1888-89?

**Question 6**

Who lost the first and second cup?

**Question 7**

In which period were the qualifying rounds removed from the tournament?

**Question 8**

When did Wanderers lose the trophy?

**Question 9**

Where were the rules of association football published?

**Text number 4**

After 1914-15, the competition was suspended due to the First World War and only resumed in 1919-20.The 1922-23 competition was the first final, played at the newly opened Wembley Stadium (then known as the Empire Stadium). Due to the outbreak of the Second World War, the competition was not played in 1938-39 and 1945-46. Due to wartime breaks, the competition did not celebrate its centenary until 1980-81. The final featured Ricky Villa's goal, later voted the best ever scored at Wembley Stadium, but since replaced by Steven Gerrard.

**Question 0**

Was the competition interrupted because of the First World War?

**Question 1**

what year did the competition continue after the First World War?

**Question 2**

When was Wembly Stadium opened?

**Question 3**

What was the name of Webly Stadium at that time?

**Question 4**

When did the competition turn a hundred years old?

**Question 5**

Who replaced Steven Gerrard's goal?

**Question 6**

In which season did Steven Gerrard score a goal?

**Question 7**

In which season was Wembly Stadium closed?

**Question 8**

In which season did Empire Stadium become Wembly Stadium?

**Question 9**

Why was Empire Stadium renamed Wembly Stadium?

**Text number 5**

The competition is open to all clubs up to level 10 of the English Football League system that meet the eligibility criteria. All clubs in the top four divisions (Premier League and the three divisions of the Football League) are automatically eligible. Clubs at the next six levels (non-league football) are also eligible if they have played in either the FA Cup, FA Trophy or FA Vase in the previous season. Newly established clubs, such as F.C. United of Manchester in 2005-2006 and 2006-2007, are therefore not eligible to play in the FA Cup in their first season. All clubs participating in the competition must also have a suitable stadium.

**Question 0**

Is the competition open to everyone?

**Question 1**

Is someone automatically eligible?

**Question 2**

Who else can play?

**Question 3**

Can new clubs also play?

**Question 4**

Do I need a stadium to compete?

**Question 5**

Who is the competition closed to?

**Question 6**

Who is not automatically eligible?

**Question 7**

In which season can newly established clubs start playing?

**Question 8**

What does a club not need to play?

**Question 9**

In which competitions can a team not participate if it has played in them in the previous season?

**Text number 6**

It is very rare for top clubs to skip a race, although it can happen in exceptional circumstances. Defending champions Manchester United did not enter the FA Cup in 1999-2000 because they were already competing in the Club World Cup. The club argued that participation in both tournaments would put a strain on its fixture list and make it difficult to defend its Champions League and Premier League titles. The club argued that it did not want to undermine the value of the FA Cup by fielding a weaker team. The move benefited United, who were given a two-week break and won the league title in 1999-2000 by 18 points, although they did not progress beyond the group stage of the Club World Cup. However, the withdrawal from the FA Cup attracted much criticism as it undermined the prestige of the tournament, and Sir Alex Ferguson later admitted that he regretted his handling of the situation.

**Question 0**

Does anyone ever miss a tournament?

**Question 1**

Which clubs have missed out on the competition?

**Question 2**

Why did they not take part in this competition?

**Question 3**

What did people think of the Manchester decision?

**Question 4**

Did the club later regret its choice?

**Question 5**

In which FA Cup season did Manchester United participate?

**Question 6**

What titles did Machester United not want to defend by withdrawing from the FA Cup?

**Question 7**

By what margin did Manchester United win the Club World Cup?

**Question 8**

Did the club later regret withdrawing from the club's World Cup?

**Question 9**

What wouldn't participating in both tournaments do?

**Text number 7**

Welsh teams playing in English leagues are eligible, although since the creation of the Welsh League there are only six clubs left: Cardiff City (the only non-English team to have won the tournament in 1927), Swansea City, Newport County, Wrexham, Merthyr Town and Colwyn Bay. In the early years, other Welsh, Irish and Scottish teams also took part in the competition, with Glasgow's Queen's Park losing the final to Blackburn Rovers in 1884 and 1885 before being banned by the Scottish Football Association. In 2013-14, the first Channel Islands club entered the competition, with Guernsey F.C. competing for the first time.

**Question 0**

Will Welsh clubs be allowed to participate in the competition?

**Question 1**

Has a Welsh team ever won a competition?

**Question 2**

Have other countries ever competed?

**Question 3**

Why can't these countries compete?

**Question 4**

Has any other country been allowed to participate since then?

**Question 5**

When was the Welsh Confederation founded?

**Question 6**

Which Welsh team has lost the tournament?

**Question 7**

Which countries have never had a team in the competition?

**Question 8**

What year were the Scottish, Welsh and Irish teams not allowed to participate?

**Question 9**

In which season did the Channel Islands club last play?

**Text number 8**

The number of participants has increased considerably in recent years. In 2004-05, 660 clubs took part in the competition, surpassing the long-term record of 656 clubs set in 1921-22. In 2005-2006 the number of participants rose to 674, in 2006-2007 to 687, in 2007-2008 to 731 and in 2008-2009 and 2009-2010 to 762. Numbers have fluctuated slightly but remained broadly stable since then, with 759 clubs participating in 2010-11, a record 763 in 2011-12, 758 in 2012-13, 737 in 2013-14 and 736 in 2014-15. By comparison, England's other major domestic cup, the League Cup, has only 92 Premier League and Football League members participating.

**Question 0**

Has the number of participants remained the same?

**Question 1**

How many clubs participated in the 2004-2005 season?

**Question 2**

How many clubs participated in 2005-06?

**Question 3**

How many clubs participated in 2006-2007?

**Question 4**

How many clubs participated in 2007-08?

**Question 5**

How much has the number of entrants to the competition decreased in recent years?

**Question 6**

How has the number of participants changed in the League Cup?

**Question 7**

How has the membership of the Premier League and the Football League changed?

**Question 8**

In which season did the League Cup break its long-standing record?

**Text number 9**

Starting in August, the competition will progress throughout as a knockout tournament consisting of twelve rounds, a semi-final and a final in May. A system of free games will ensure that clubs above level 9 and 10 will qualify for the competition at later stages. There is no ranking for each round, but the pairs of matches are determined by a random draw. Matches that end in a draw before the semi-finals will be replayed only once. The first six rounds will be qualifying rounds with regional draws. The next six rounds are the "real" rounds, with all clubs participating in the same draw.

**Question 0**

When is the final?

**Question 1**

When do clubs over 9 get involved?

**Question 2**

Is there seeding?

**Question 3**

What happens in the event of a draw?

**Question 4**

What are the first 6 rounds?

**Question 5**

What month is the semi-final?

**Question 6**

How will you ensure that clubs below level 9 and 10 will be able to compete in the later stages?

**Question 7**

What will be the early stages of the competition?

**Question 8**

What is not determined by a random draw?

**Question 9**

What happens when there is a draw after the semi-finals?

**Text number 10**

The final is usually held on the Saturday after the end of the Premier League season in May. The only recent seasons when this pattern has not been followed were 1999-2000, when most rounds were played a few weeks earlier than normal on an experimental basis, 2010-11 and 2012-13, when the FA Cup final was played before the end of the Premier League season to get Wembley ready for the Champions League final, and 2011-12 to give England time to prepare for the European Championships in the summer.

**Question 0**

When will the final be held?

**Question 1**

Was there a time when this was not the case?

**Question 2**

Why?

**Question 3**

Did it ever happen again?

**Question 4**

What happened in those years?

**Question 5**

When will the final never happen?

**Question 6**

When is the UEFA Champions League usually held?

**Question 7**

In which season was the UEFA Champions League not held on a normal day?

**Question 8**

When was the final played early to allow England to prepare for the Champions League?

**Question 9**

In which season was the European Championship played early as an experiment?

**Text number 11**

Until the 1990s, when repetitions were played until one team had won. Some draws took up to six matches to settle; Fulham played a total of 12 matches in six rounds in their 1975 campaign, which is still the highest number of matches a team has played to reach the final. Re-matches were traditionally played three or four days after the original match, but from 1991-92 they were played at least 10 days later on police instructions. This led to the introduction of penalty shoot-outs, the first of which was played on 26 November 1991 when Rotherham United beat Scunthorpe United.

**Question 0**

Do clubs play against each other?

**Question 1**

How many games has the team played the most to reach the final?

**Question 2**

When are the replays played?

**Question 3**

When was the first penalty kick?

**Question 4**

Which clubs were playing during the first penalty?

**Question 5**

How many games has the team played the least to reach the final?

**Question 6**

When did Scunthorpe United eliminate Rotherham United?

**Question 7**

When was the last penalty shoot-out?

**Question 8**

Why were rematches traditionally played three or four days after the original game?

**Question 9**

How much did the clubs repeat themselves after the 1990s?

**Text number 12**

The winners of the FA Cup qualify for the UEFA Europa League the following season (formerly the UEFA Cup; until 1998 it was part of the Cup Winners' Cup). This European place is valid even if the team is relegated or not in the English top flight. If the team that won the FA Cup also qualified for the following season's Champions League or Europa League by virtue of its previous league position, the losing FA Cup finalist was awarded a Europa League place. The FA Cup winners qualify for the Europa League in the group stage. Losing finalists, if they qualified for the Europa League, started earlier, in the knockout stage or in the third qualifying round. However, from the 2015-16 season onwards, UEFA will not allow the runners-up in the Europa League to qualify through the competition.

**Question 0**

Does the winner of the FA Cup get anywhere?

**Question 1**

Did it used to have a different name?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the cup now?

**Question 3**

Does the loser of the cup get anything?

**Question 4**

What about the FA Cup winner?

**Question 5**

Where do the FA Cup losers go?

**Question 6**

Where will the UEFA Europa League winners go?

**Question 7**

What was the former name of the FA Cup?

**Question 8**

When will the FA Cup winners be eliminated from the Europa League?

**Question 9**

In which season did UEFA allow second-placed teams to qualify for the Europa League?

**Text number 13**

The semi-finals have been played exclusively at the rebuilt Wembley Stadium since 2008, a year after it opened and after the final had already been played there (in 2007). For the first decade of the competition, Kennington Oval was the venue for the semi-finals. Between the first decade and the reopening of Wembley, the semi-finals were played at high-capacity neutral venues across England, usually at the home grounds of teams not participating in the semi-final in question, chosen to be roughly equidistant between the two teams to ensure fairness of travel. The three most used venues during this period were Villa Park in Birmingham (55 times), Hillsborough in Sheffield (34 times) and Old Trafford in Manchester (23 times). The original Wembley stadium was also used seven times for semi-finals between 1991 and 2000 (the last semi-final was held there), but not always for matches involving London teams. In 2005, both were held at the Millennium Stadium.

**Question 0**

Where will the semi-finals be played?

**Question 1**

Is there a name for this place?

**Question 2**

Where were the semi-finals held before that?

**Question 3**

What was the most used venue?

**Question 4**

Where was the cup held in 2005?

**Question 5**

Where are semi-finals never played?

**Question 6**

In which decade was Kennington Oval not used as a semi-final venue?

**Question 7**

What were the three least used places?

**Question 8**

How many times was Kennington Oval used for semi-final matches between 1991 and 2000?

**Question 9**

How were stadiums selected between 1991 and 2000?

**Text number 14**

In 2003, the FA decided to use the new Wembley stadium on a permanent basis for semi-final matches in order to recover debts related to the financing of the new stadium. This was controversial as the move was seen as unfair to fans of teams based far from London and took away some of the prestige of Wembley's finals. In defending the move, the FA has also cited the additional capacity provided by Wembley, although a match between Millwall and Wigan in 2013 resulted in 6,000 tickets being put on sale to neutral fans after the match was not sold out. According to a 2013 fan poll by The Guardian, 86% were against Wembley's semi-final matches.

**Question 0**

Where is the FA Cup taking place today?

**Question 1**

Why is it being held at Webly Stadium?

**Question 2**

Will Londoners accept this action?

**Question 3**

Has the game ever gone unsold?

**Question 4**

Do people object to the new Webly Stadium?

**Question 5**

Why did the FA decide not to use the new Wembley in 2003?

**Question 6**

When did the FA decide to stop using Wembley?

**Question 7**

What percentage of people supported the Wembley semi-finals?

**Question 8**

What has the FA not mentioned as a reason for using Wembley?

**Question 9**

To whom was the transfer considered fair?

**Text number 15**

The final has been played at the rebuilt Wembley Stadium since it opened in 2007. Due to the rebuilding process, between 2001 and 2006 the final was held at the Millennium Stadium in Cardiff, Wales. Before the rebuild, the final was played at the original Wembley Stadium, which opened in 1923 (originally the Empire Stadium). The one exception to this 78-year run of finals at the Empire Stadium (including five rematches) was the 1970 rematch between Leeds and Chelsea, held at Old Trafford in Manchester.

**Question 0**

Where will the final be played now?

**Question 1**

When was this stadium opened?

**Question 2**

Where was the FA Cup held when this stadium was built?

**Question 3**

Where is Millennium Stadium located?

**Question 4**

Was it always held at the Millennium Stadium?

**Question 5**

Where has there never been a final since 2007?

**Question 6**

When did the Millennium Stadium open?

**Question 7**

Where is Wembley Stadium located?

**Question 8**

When did Old Trafford open?

**Question 9**

What was the original name of the Millennium Stadium?

**Text number 16**

In the 51 years before the opening of the Empire Stadium, the final (including eight rematches) took place at various venues, mainly in London, mainly at Kennington Oval and later at Crystal Palace. It was played 22 times at the Oval (the inaugural match in 1872 and all but twice thereafter until 1892). After the Oval, 21 finals were played at the Crystal Palace between 1895 and 1914, with 4 four-legged repechages elsewhere in between. Other London venues included Stamford Bridge from 1920 to 1922 (the last three finals before the move to the Empire Stadium) and Oxford University's Lillie Bridge in Fulham, where the second ever final was played in 1873. Other venues rarely used during this period were all outside London, and were as follows:

**Question 0**

Where are most of the FA Cup finals played?

**Question 1**

How many times was the FA Cup played at the Oval ?

**Question 2**

When was the first FA Cup played at the Oval?

**Question 3**

How many times has Crystal Palace hosted the FA Cup?

**Question 4**

How many rematches took place at the Oval?

**Question 5**

Where are the fewest FA Cup finals held?

**Question 6**

How many times was the FA Cup not played at the Oval?

**Question 7**

How many FA Cup finals were played outside London?

**Question 8**

What time was the FA Cup final played outside London?

**Question 9**

Where was the final played after the opening of Empire Stadium?

**Text number 17**

The FA will allow artificial grass pitches (3G) in all competition rounds from 2014-15. Under the 2015-16 rules, the pitch must be FIFA One Star or Two Star for draws involving one of the 92 professional clubs. Two years earlier, it was agreed that 3G pitches could only be used in qualifying rounds - if a team with a 3G pitch progressed to the main competition, it had to transfer its draw to another eligible participant's pitch with a natural grass pitch. As the team was strongly in favour of this platform, the first match in the regular rounds to be played on a 3G surface was the first round replay at Maidstone United's Gallagher Stadium on 20 November 2015, which was televised.

**Question 0**

Is the use of artificial grass allowed?

**Question 1**

What is the required quality of the field?

**Question 2**

How many professional clubs are there?

**Question 3**

What happens if the field is not in good condition?

**Question 4**

Where was the first #G surface game played?

**Question 5**

In which period did the FA ban artificial grass?

**Question 6**

What was the required quality of the pitch before the start of the 2015-16 season?

**Question 7**

When was the last time a match with a 3G surface was televised?

**Question 8**

Where was the last match played with a 3G surface?

**Question 9**

What happens if a team with a 3G pitch does not qualify for the actual competition?

**Text number 18**

The trophy consists of three parts - the cup itself and the lid and stand. There have been two trophy designs, but five physical trophies have been presented. The original goblet, known as the 'little tin idol', was 18 inches high and was made by Martin, Hall & Co. It was stolen in 1895 and never recovered, and an exact replica was built to replace it, which was used until 1910. The FA decided to change the design after the 1909 winner Manchester United made their own copy, at which point the FA realised they did not own the copyright. This new, larger model was designed by Messers Fattorini and Sons and was used from 1911. To preserve the original, it was replaced from 1992 by an exact replica, although it had to be replaced after just over two decades because it had worn out due to more handling than in previous eras. A third copy, used for the first time in 2014, was built heavier to withstand more handling. Of the four surviving trophies, only the 1895 copy has passed into private hands.

**Question 0**

How many parts are there in the trophy?

**Question 1**

What are the components of the award?

**Question 2**

How many trophy designs have there been?

**Question 3**

How many physical trophies have been awarded?

**Question 4**

When was the first model changed?

**Question 5**

When was the original trophy created?

**Question 6**

What was the name of the new, larger model?

**Question 7**

Who designed the third copy?

**Question 8**

How long was the third copy?

**Question 9**

When was the third copy last used?

**Text number 19**

The name of the winning team will be engraved on the silver ribbon around the stand immediately after the finals are over, so that it is ready for the presentation ceremony. The engraver therefore has only five minutes to complete a task that would normally take twenty minutes, although time is saved by engraving the year during the match and drawing the supposed winner. During the final match, the trophy will be decorated with ribbons in the colours of both finalists, and the ribbons of the loser will be removed at the end of the match. Traditionally, at Wembley finals, the prize-giving ceremony takes place in the Royal Box, where the players, led by the captain, ascend the stairs to the corridor in front of the box and return up the stairs on the other side of the box. In Cardiff, the prize-giving took place on the podium on the pitch.

**Question 0**

Is the trophy engraved with the winner's inscription?

**Question 1**

When is the engraving done?

**Question 2**

how long does an engraving take from start to finish?

**Question 3**

Is the trophy decorated?

**Question 4**

Where will the cup be presented?

**Question 5**

Where do you engrave the name of the losing team?

**Question 6**

How many minutes does an engraver have to complete a task that would normally take five minutes?

**Question 7**

When will the winning tapes be removed?

**Question 8**

Where is the presentation of the cup, which has never been done?

**Question 9**

What's behind Royal Box?

**Text number 20**

The tradition of presenting the trophy immediately after the match did not begin until the 1882 final; after the first final in 1872, the trophy was not presented to the winners, the Wanderers, until four weeks later at a reception at the Pall Mall restaurant in London. Under the original rules, the trophy was to be awarded permanently to any club that had won the competition three times, but when the first winner, Wanderers, achieved this feat in the 1876 final, FA secretary CW Alcock (who also captained Wanderers to their first victory) changed the rules.

**Question 0**

When did the trophy start being handed out after the game?

**Question 1**

When was the first prize awarded?

**Question 2**

Where was the first trophy presented?

**Question 3**

What happens to multiple cup winners?

**Question 4**

Did it ever happen?

**Question 5**

When did the tradition of presenting the trophy immediately after the game end?

**Question 6**

Where was the last time the trophy was presented?

**Question 7**

What was supposed to happen to a club that lost the competition three times?

**Question 8**

Who lost the 1876 final?

**Question 9**

Who was the Wanderers captain during the first defeat?

**Text number 21**

Almost 60 years later, 80-year-old career criminal Henry (Harry) James Burge claimed to have committed the theft and confessed to the newspaper, and the story was published in the Sunday Pictorial on 23 February 1958. He claimed to have committed the robbery with two other men, but when his account of the burglary and other stolen items contradicted a contemporaneous report in the Birmingham Post newspaper (the crime occurred before written police reports), detectives decided that a conviction was not realistic and the case was dropped. Burge claimed that the cup had been melted down to make counterfeit half-crown coins, which was consistent with information known at the time that stolen silver was used to counterfeit coins which were then laundered through the local racetrack betting shops, although Burge had no previous experience of counterfeiting, having served 42 years in prison for 42 previous convictions. He had also been jailed for seven years in 1957 for car theft. He was released in 1961 and died in 1964.

**Question 0**

How to claim to have stolen the FA Cup?

**Question 1**

Is he acting alone?

**Question 2**

How long ago did this crime take place?

**Question 3**

What was Burge doing with the cup?

**Question 4**

What did they do with those coins?

**Question 5**

Who returned the FA Cup?

**Question 6**

When did Henry James Burge commit a theft?

**Question 7**

When did the Birmingham Post publish its report?

**Question 8**

What made the detectives decide that a conviction was possible?

**Question 9**

What crime did Burge commit for which he spent 42 years in prison?

**Text number 22**

The 1895 copy, which had become obsolete with redesign, was presented in 1910 to the FA's long-serving president, Lord Kinnaird. Kinnaird died in 1923 and it was held by his family until it was auctioned in 2005. It was sold at Christie's auction on 19 May 2005 for £420 000 (£478 400 including auction fees and tax). The sale price was a new world record for a football memorabilia, surpassing the £254 000 paid for Jules Rimet's World Cup trophy in 1997. The winning bidder was then Birmingham City chairman David Gold, who claimed that the Football Association and the government did nothing proactively to ensure the trophy was kept in the country, and Gold said that the purchase was motivated by a desire to save the trophy for the nation. Indeed, on 20 April 2006, Gold handed over the trophy to the Preston National Football Museum, where it was immediately put on public display. It later moved with the museum to its new location in Manchester. In November 2012, it was ceremoniously presented to the Royal Engineers after they beat Wanderers 7-1 in the FA Cup first final charity match.

**Question 0**

Who was the long-standing chairman of the FA Cup?

**Question 1**

What year did Lord Kinnard die?

**Question 2**

Was the toast lost during that time?

**Question 3**

Where was it sold?

**Question 4**

Who won the tender?

**Question 5**

Who owned the 1895 replica before it was out of date?

**Question 6**

Who was the rejected bidder?

**Question 7**

Where was the FA Cup never auctioned?

**Question 8**

Where was Jules Rimet's world championship trophy on public display?

**Question 9**

What year was the FA Cup moved to Manchester?

**Text number 23**

Since the beginning of the 1994-95 season, the FA Cup has been sponsored. However, in order to protect the identity of the competition, the sponsored name has always included 'The FA Cup' in addition to the sponsor's name, unlike in league cup sponsorship agreements where the word 'cup' is preceded only by the sponsor's name. Sponsorship agreements are for four years but, as in the case of E.ON, can be extended for one year. The Emirates airline will be the sponsor from 2015 to 2018, when the competition was renamed "The Emirates FA Cup", as opposed to the previous versions which were "The FA Cup in association with E.ON" and "The FA Cup with Budweiser".

**Question 0**

Is the Fa-cup sponsored?

**Question 1**

How long will the sponsor stay?

**Question 2**

Can they extend their contract?

**Question 3**

Who is your current sponsor?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the competition now?

**Question 5**

Who was the sponsor in 1994-95?

**Question 6**

In which competition is the sponsor's name not in the title?

**Question 7**

Which company has not agreed to a one-year extension?

**Question 8**

What is not a sponsor from 2015 to 2018?

**Question 9**

Which company has sponsored the League Cup?

**Text number 24**

The public looks forward to the unlikely victories in the earlier rounds of the competition, where lower-ranked teams defeat higher-ranked opponents in what are known as "giant kills", which are seen as an essential part of the competition's tradition and prestige, in addition to the teams winning the competition. Almost every club in the league pyramid has a giant-killing in its history. It is particularly newsworthy when a top Premier League team suffers a defeat or when the giant killer is a non-league club, i.e. a club from outside the professional football league.

**Question 0**

Are people looking forward to the Cinderella games?

**Question 1**

What do people think about giant killers?

**Question 2**

Do giant murders happen often?

**Question 3**

Is the media presenting giant killers?

**Question 4**

What is a giant killer?

**Question 5**

What is it called when the higher ranked team beats the lower ranked team?

**Question 6**

What is not considered an important part of the tradition?

**Question 7**

What is not considered newsworthy?

**Question 8**

What does no club in the League pyramid like to remember?

**Text number 25**

The Football League was founded in 1888, 16 years after the first FA Cup. Since the Football League's inception, Tottenham Hotspur are the only non-league 'giants' to have won the cup, having won the FA Cup in 1901 by beating Sheffield United, the reigning league runners-up: at that time there were only two divisions and 36 clubs in the Football League, and Spurs were the champions of the next lowest division - the Southern League - and probably already good enough for the First Division (as they proved when they joined the Second Division in 1908 and were immediately promoted to the First Division). Only two other proper non-league clubs have reached the final since the league's inception: Sheffield Wednesday in 1890 (champions of the Football Alliance League, which was effectively already the Second Division, which it formally became in 1892 - Wednesday were allowed straight into the First Division) and Southampton in 1900 and 1902 (in those years they were also Southern League champions, demonstrating the strength of that league: even then it was probably a First Division club, but later Southampton's form faded and it only joined the league in 1920 and with the formation of the Third Division).

**Question 0**

When was the football league founded?

**Question 1**

Who is the only non-league giant to have won the cup?

**Question 2**

What year did they win the cup?

**Question 3**

Who did they remove from the cup?

**Question 4**

How many clubs were there in the football league?

**Question 5**

What was created 16 years before the first FA Cup?

**Question 6**

Who won the FA Cup in 1888?

**Question 7**

How many clubs were in the football league in 1920?

**Question 8**

Which club has never reached the final?

**Question 9**

How many non-league clubs have failed to reach the final since the league was created?

**Text number 26**

Chasetown, who played at level 8 in English football in 2007-08, is the lowest ranked team to play in the third round (the last 64 teams out of 731 that participated in that season). Chasetown were then in the Southern League Division One Midlands (a lower tier within the Southern Football League), having lost out to Football League Championship (Level 2) side Cardiff City, who were runners-up in the FA Cup that year. Their success earned the small organisation over £60 000 in prize money.

**Question 0**

Who will play in the third round in the lowest position in the third round?

**Question 1**

What level were they at?

**Question 2**

How many teams competed that year?

**Question 3**

Where did Chasetown rank?

**Question 4**

In which FA Cup season did this happen?

**Question 5**

What is the highest ranking you can play in the third round?

**Question 6**

How many teams decided not to compete that season?

**Question 7**

Which team did Chasetown win against?

**Question 8**

Who won the FA Cup that year?

**Question 9**

How much prize money did Cardiff City win?

**Text number 27**

Seven clubs have won the FA Cup as part of the league and cup trophies: Preston North End (1889), Aston Villa (1897), Tottenham Hotspur (1961), Arsenal (1971, 1998, 2002), Liverpool (1986), Manchester United (1994, 1996, 1999) and Chelsea (2010). In 1993, Arsenal became the first team to win both the FA Cup and League Cup in the same season, beating Sheffield Wednesday 2-1 in both finals. Liverpool (2001) and Chelsea (2007) have since repeated the feat. In 2012, Chelsea achieved another cup trophy, consisting of the FA Cup and the 2012 Champions League. In 1998-99, Manchester United added the 1999 Champions League title to the Champions League and Cup double to create a unique treble. Two years later, in 2000-01, Liverpool won the FA Cup, League Cup and UEFA Cup to complete their cup treble. The English have never achieved such a treble.

**Question 0**

How many clubs have won the fa cup as part of the league cup double?

**Question 1**

Who was the first club to win the FA Cup as part of the League Cup double?

**Question 2**

Who was the most recent clubs to have won the fa cup as part of a league cup double?

**Question 3**

Has any club won both in the same season?

**Question 4**

How many clubs have lost the FA Cup?

**Question 5**

Which club has never won the FA Cup as part of a league and cup double?

**Question 6**

Who lost to Arsenal in 1993?

**Question 7**

Who has never reached the cup-triple?

**Question 8**

Which clubs could not repeat Arsenal's success?

**Text number 28**

No two teams have ever played in the final that are not in the top division, and only eight winners have not been in the top division: Notts County (1894), Tottenham Hotspur (1901), Wolverhampton Wanderers (1908), Barnsley (1912), West Bromwich Albion (1931), Sunderland (1973), Southampton (1976) and West Ham United (1980). With the exception of Tottenham, these clubs all played in the second tier (the old Second Division) - Tottenham played in the Southern League and were not elected to the Football League until 1908, making them the only FA Cup winners not to be in the league. Apart from Tottenham's win, only 24 finalists have come from outside the top two divisions of English football: 7 winners and 17 runners-up: and none from the third or lower divisions, Southampton (1902) being the last finalist to come from outside the top two divisions.

**Question 0**

Have there been two clubs from outside the top flight playing in the final?

**Question 1**

Is the winner of the final a club that is not in the top division?

**Question 2**

Who was the first outside club to win?

**Question 3**

What year did it happen?

**Question 4**

How many second-tier players have made it to the final?

**Question 5**

How many winners have there been in the first chain?

**Question 6**

Which team has never won a final?

**Question 7**

How many finalists have come from the top tier of English football?

**Question 8**

What year did the first indoor club win?

**Question 9**

What was the last finalist in the top two?

**Text number 29**

In the early years, the BBC had an exclusive radio broadcast, and the Radio Times had a picture of the pitch, marked with numbered squares so that listeners could follow the match on the radio. The first FA Cup final on radio was in 1926 between Bolton Wanderers and Manchester City, but it was only broadcast in Manchester, and the first national final on BBC radio was between Arsenal and Cardiff in 1927. The first BBC televised final was in 1937 between Sunderland and Preston North End, but it was not broadcast in full. The following season's final between Preston and Huddersfield was broadcast in full on the BBC. When ITV was established in 1955, it shared the final with the BBC and was one of the only club matches to be shown live on television. In the 1970s and 1980s, the coverage became increasingly detailed, and the BBC and ITV tried to steal viewers from each other by starting earlier and earlier, some as early as 9.00am, six hours before kick-off. Today this continues, with Setanta and ESPN broadcasting all day from Wembley, but terrestrial coverage usually starts two hours before kick-off. The division of rights between the BBC and ITV continued from 1955 until 1988, when ITV lost the rights to a new sports channel, which later became Sky Sports.

**Question 0**

Who broadcast the matches on the radio?

**Question 1**

What was the first radio broadcast of the Fa cup?

**Question 2**

Which clubs competed in the match?

**Question 3**

Will the game be broadcast in both cities?

**Question 4**

When was the first national broadcast?

**Question 5**

Who never broadcast the FA Cup?

**Question 6**

When was the last time an FA Cup final was broadcast on the radio?

**Question 7**

In which city was the first FA Cup final not broadcast on the radio?

**Question 8**

When was the last time TV networks started reporting on the game?

**Question 9**

How long does the coverage continue after the kick-off?

**Text number 30**

From 1988 to 1997, the FA Cup was covered by BBC and Sky Sports, with the BBC having highlights on Match of the Day and usually one match per round, while Sky had the same deal. From 1997 to 2001, ITV and Sky shared live coverage, both had two matches per round and the BBC continued with highlights on Match of the Day. From 2002 to 2008, the BBC and Sky again split their coverage, with the BBC having two or three matches per round and Sky one or two. From 2008-09 to 2013-14, FA Cup matches were shown live on ITV throughout England and Wales, with UTV broadcasting matches to Northern Ireland but STV refusing to show them. ITV shows 16 FA Cup matches during the season, including the first set of matches from the first to the sixth round of the competition and one semi-final match exclusively live. The final will also be shown live on ITV. Under the same 2008 contract, Setanta Sports showed three matches and one replay in each of the rounds from three to five, two semi-finals, one semi-final and the final. The channel also broadcast ITV matches exclusively in Scotland after ITV's Scottish licensee STV decided not to broadcast FA Cup matches. Setanta went bankrupt in June 2009, as a result of which the FA terminated Setanta's contract to broadcast FA-approved competitions and England international matches. As a result of Setanta's bankruptcy, ITV broadcast exclusively the football competition in the 2009-2010 season, with 3-4 matches per round, all quarter-finals, semi-finals and finals live because the FA could not find a pay-TV operator in time. ESPN bought the competition for the 2010-11 to 2012-13 season, during which time Rebecca Lowe became the first woman to host an FA Cup final in the UK.

**Question 0**

Who had the FA Cup coverage between 1988 and 1997?

**Question 1**

How are the games broadcast now?

**Question 2**

Does anyone refuse to show them?

**Question 3**

Has a woman ever posted a match?

**Question 4**

Which year will Rebecca host the match?

**Question 5**

Which channel has never covered the FA Cup?

**Question 6**

Which networks refused to share the live broadcast with each other?

**Question 7**

Which channel has never refused to show a match?

**Question 8**

Which network only broadcasts outside Scotland?

**Question 9**

Who was the last woman to host an FA Cup final?

**Text number 31**

Many [who?] expected BSkyB to make an offer to show some of the remaining FA Cup matches for the remainder of the 2009-10 season, which would include the semi-final and shared rights to the final. ESPN took over Setanta's FA Cup package from 2010-11. The 2011 final was also broadcast live on Sky 3D, in addition to ESPN (which provided the 3D coverage of Sky 3D) and ITV. Following the sale of ESPN's UK and Irish channels to BT, the ESPN rights package was transferred to BT Sport from 2013-14.

**Question 0**

Who took over the package from Sentana?

**Question 1**

Who will show the 2011 final?

**Question 2**

Is the contract still with ESPN?

**Question 3**

What year did this happen?

**Question 4**

Who took over after ESPN?

**Question 5**

Who was expected to bid for the 2010-11 season?

**Question 6**

Which final was not shown live?

**Question 7**

To whom did BT Sport transfer the rights?

**Question 8**

Who bought BT's UK and Irish channels?

**Question 9**

Which channel showed the 2013-14 season live besides ESPN?

**Document number 250**

**Text number 0**

New Haven (local /nuː ˈheɪvən/, noo-HAY-vən) is a municipality in the Greater New Haven metropolitan area of the U.S. state of Connecticut, with a population of 862,477 in 2010. It is located on New Haven Harbor on the northern shore of Long Island Sound in New Haven County, Connecticut, which in turn comprises the outer limits of the New York metropolitan area. It is Connecticut's second largest city (after Bridgeport), with a population of 129,779 according to the 2010 US Census. According to the Census Bureau's July 1, 2012 census, the city had a population of 130,741.

**Question 0**

In which US state is New Haven located?

**Question 1**

New Haven Harbor is located on the north shore of which body of water?

**Question 2**

What county is New Haven in?

**Question 3**

What is the population of New Haven according to the 2010 US Census?

**Question 4**

Which large metropolitan area is the outer boundary of New Haven County?

**Question 5**

What is the population of the city of New Haven in 2010?

**Question 6**

What is the largest city in Connecticut?

**Question 7**

What county is New Haven in?

**Question 8**

Population of Greater New Haven in 2010?

**Question 9**

What is the metropolis next to New Haven County, Connecticut?

**Text number 1**

In 1637, a small group of Puritans explored and wintered in the New Haven waterfront. In April 1638, the main group of five hundred Puritans from the Massachusetts Bay colony sailed into the harbour under the leadership of Reverend John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, a London merchant. These settlers hoped to establish (what they considered) a better theological community with a government more closely connected to the church than the one they had left in Massachusetts, and they sought to take advantage of the excellent harbour facilities in the harbour. The Quinnipiacs, under attack from neighbouring Pequots, sold their land to settlers for protection.

**Question 0**

What year did the Puritans explore the Port of New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which settlement were the original 500 Puritan settlers from?

**Question 2**

Who was the religious leader of the original Puritans?

**Question 3**

What year did the original 500 Puritan settlers arrive in the New Haven waterfront?

**Question 4**

From which indigenous tribe did the Puritan settlers buy land in exchange for protection?

**Question 5**

In what year will the establishment of New Haven Harbour begin?

**Question 6**

Where did the settlers come from?

**Question 7**

What was the name of the Indians who sold them the land?

**Question 8**

What did settlers hope to establish in New Haven Harbor compared to Massachusetts?

**Question 9**

Who was the religious leader who led the pilgrims to the port of New Haven?

**Text number 2**

By 1640, the theocratic administration of the city and the nine-square grid pattern were in place, and the city was renamed Newhaven after Quinnipiac. However, the area north of New Haven remained Quinnipiac until 1678, when it was renamed Hamden. The settlement became the headquarters of the colony of New Haven. At that time, the New Haven Colony was separate from the Connecticut Colony, which had been established to the north centering on Hartford. One of the main differences between the two colonies was that the New Haven colony was an intolerant theocracy that did not allow the establishment of other churches, while the Connecticut colony allowed the establishment of other churches.

**Question 0**

What kind of government did the Puritan settlers set up?

**Question 1**

In what year did Puritan settlers rename the area from Quinnipac to Newhaven?

**Question 2**

In what year was the northern area of New Haven renamed Hamden?

**Question 3**

Which colony was located north of the New Haven colony and centered around an area called Hartford?

**Question 4**

What did the New Haven colony not allow, what made it different from the main Connecticut colony?

**Question 5**

What was the new name for the northern part of New Haven in 1678?

**Question 6**

The New Haven colony was separated from the Connecticut colony, which was located where?

**Question 7**

What made New Haven different from other Connecticut settlements?

**Question 8**

Where was the headquarters of the New Haven colony?

**Text number 3**

For more than a century, New Haven residents had fought in colonial militias alongside regular British troops, as in the French and Indian War. As the American Revolution approached, General David Wooster and other influential residents hoped that the conflict with the British government could be resolved without rebellion. On April 23, 1775, which is still celebrated in New Haven as Powder House Day, the Second Company, Governor's Foot Guard, of New Haven, engaged the British government in battle against Parliament. Led by Captain Benedict Arnold, they broke into the Powder House to take up arms and began a three-day march to Cambridge, Massachusetts. Other members of the New Haven militia accompanied George Washington as he stayed overnight in New Haven on his way to Cambridge. Contemporary accounts from both sides note the professional military bearing of the New Haven volunteers, including their uniforms.

**Question 0**

Who was the powerful New Haven general who hoped to avoid conflict with the British Parliament as the American Revolution approached?

**Question 1**

What date in New Haven is still remembered as Powder House Day?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the second company of the New Haven company that first engaged in the opening battle with the British?

**Question 3**

Who led the governor's infantry to break into the powder magazine to arm themselves?

**Question 4**

In which area did the New Haven militia march for three days after the Gunpowder Plot?

**Question 5**

Power House Day is celebrated on what day in New Haven?

**Question 6**

What is the name of the infamous historical figure who played an important role on Power House Day?

**Question 7**

Where did George Washington plan to go when he retired to New Haven?

**Question 8**

What is the name of the New Haven militia that fought on Powder House Day?

**Question 9**

Although the militia was mainly made up of volunteers, what distinguished them from other militia companies?

**Text number 4**

On July 5, 1779, 2,600 Loyalists and British soldiers led by New York Governor General William Tryon landed in New Haven Harbor and sacked the town of 3,500 people. A militia of Yale students had prepared for battle, and former Yale president and Yale Divinity School professor Naphtali Daggett rode out to meet the Redcoats. Yale President Ezra Stiles said in his diary that although he moved furniture in anticipation of the battle, he still could not believe that the revolution had begun. New Haven was not burned, as the invaders did to Danbury in 1777 or to Fairfield and Norwalk a week after the raid on New Haven, so many of the city's colonial features were preserved.

**Question 0**

Who was the Governor of New York under whose authority the Loyalist and British raid on New Haven took place?

**Question 1**

Which University of New Haven students formed a temporary militia to oppose the redcoats?

**Question 2**

Who was the Yale Divinity School professor who led the student militia against the redcoats?

**Question 3**

On what day did the Loyalists and Redcoats land in New Haven harbour to launch the attack on New Haven?

**Question 4**

Who was the Yale president who submitted diary entries expressing disbelief at the start of the revolution in New Haven?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the general who led the British regulars into the port of New Haven?

**Question 6**

What was the population of New Haven Harbor at that time?

**Question 7**

A group of militiamen from a very famous modern town in Connecticut came to fight in the harbour, what was the name of their town?

**Question 8**

Who led the militia that fought in New Haven?

**Question 9**

Were historic sites in New Haven lost or burned after the battle?

**Text number 5**

The city found its fortune in the late 1700s thanks to the inventions and industrial activity of Yale University graduate Eli Whitney. He stayed in New Haven to develop cottonseed and set up a weapons factory in the northern part of town near the Hamden town line. This area is still known as Whitneyville, and the main road through both towns is known as Whitney Avenue. The factory is now the Eli Whitney Museum, which focuses on children's activities and exhibits related to the A. C. Gilbert Company. His factory, along with that of Simeon North and the bustling watchmaking and brassware industries, contributed to Connecticut's early development as a strong manufacturing economy; so many gun manufacturers were born that the state became known as 'The Arsenal of America'. Samuel Colt invented the automatic revolver in 1836 at the Whitney gun factory. The Farmington Canal, created in the early 1800s, was a short-lived means of transporting goods to the interior of Connecticut and Massachusetts, running from New Haven to Northampton, Massachusetts.

**Question 0**

Who is the Yale-educated inventor and arms manufacturer who had a major positive impact on New Haven's economy in the late 1700s?

**Question 1**

Which invention, for which Eli Whitney is primarily known, did he develop in New Haven?

**Question 2**

What is the area near Hamden that was renamed after Eli Whitney?

**Question 3**

What nickname was given to Connecticut because of the large number of gun manufacturers born in the state?

**Question 4**

Who invented the automatic revolver in 1836 at the Eli Whitney gun factory?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the inventor who created the cotton mill in New Haven?

**Question 6**

What is the name of the main road connecting New Haven and Hamden?

**Question 7**

What was the company responsible for Connecticut's rise as a manufacturing economy?

**Question 8**

The rise of gun factories in Connecticut earns the state what name?

**Question 9**

What year was the first automatic revolver invented?

**Text number 6**

One of the important early events of the anti-slavery movement took place in New Haven when, in 1839, a trial was held in the US District Court in New Haven against rebellious Mende tribesmen who were being transported as slaves on the Spanish slave ship Amistad. A statue of Joseph Cinque, the unofficial leader of the slaves, stands next to City Hall. For more information, see below under 'Museums'. Abraham Lincoln gave a speech on slavery in New Haven in 1860, shortly before he won the Republican presidential nomination.

**Question 0**

What year saw the landmark trial that placed New Haven at the forefront of the growing anti-slavery movement?

**Question 1**

What tribesmen did the Spaniards carry as slaves on the ship?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the Spanish slave ship that transported the Mende?

**Question 3**

Who was the unofficial leader of the slaves to whom a statue is dedicated next to New Haven City Hall?

**Question 4**

In 1860, which major US president gave a speech on slavery in New Haven?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the slave ship that once sat in New Haven harbour?

**Question 6**

Who was the leader of the slaves during the New Haven anti-slavery movement in 1839?

**Question 7**

Which famous president gave a speech in New Haven in 1860?

**Question 8**

Who exactly were the slaves on the Spanish slave ship?

**Text number 7**

The US Civil War boosted the local economy with wartime purchases of industrial goods, including the New Haven Arms Company, which later became the Winchester Repeating Arms Company. (Winchester continued to manufacture arms in New Haven until 2006, and many of the buildings that were part of the Winchester factory are now part of the Winchester Repeating Arms Company Historic District.) After the war, the population grew and doubled by the early 1900s, thanks in particular to immigrants from southern Europe, especially Italy. Today, about half of the population of East Haven, West Haven and North Haven is Italian-American. Jewish immigration to New Haven has left a permanent mark on the city. Westville was the centre of New Haven's Jewish life, but today many have spread to suburbs such as Woodbridge and Cheshire.

**Question 0**

What major war boosted New Haven's economy through industrial goods purchased through the New Haven Arms Company?

**Question 1**

What was the later name of the New Haven Arms Company?

**Question 2**

Which immigrant influx from a southern European country contributed significantly to New Haven's population growth in the early 1900s?

**Question 3**

Which ethnic group currently makes up about half of the population of East Haven, West Haven and North Haven?

**Question 4**

Which area of New Haven was known as the centre of the Jewish community?

**Question 5**

What was the original name of New Haven's famous rifle manufacturing companies?

**Question 6**

Who makes up the majority of the demographic makeup of ethnicity in today's New Haven?

**Question 7**

The Civil War had many effects after the war, what was the main impact on New Haven?

**Text number 8**

In 1954, then-Mayor Richard C. Lee launched some of the earliest major urban renewal projects in the United States. Certain parts of downtown New Haven were redeveloped to include museums, new office towers, a hotel and large shopping malls. Other parts of the city were affected by the construction of Interstate 95 at Long Wharf, Interstate 91 and the Oak Street Connector. The Oak Street Connector (Route 34), which runs between Interstate 95, downtown and The Hill neighborhood, was originally intended as a freeway to the western suburbs of the city, but was completed only as a freeway to the downtown area, and the western area became a boulevard (see "Redevelopment" below).

**Question 0**

Who is the mayor of New Haven responsible for the projects that put the city at the forefront of urban renewal in the United States around 1954?

**Question 1**

Which major US highway runs along the Long Wharf section of New Haven?

**Question 2**

Which major New Haven thoroughfare runs between Interstate 95, downtown and The Hill?

**Question 3**

What area of New Haven was Route 34 originally intended to serve?

**Question 4**

What eventually became of the western part of Highway 34?

**Question 5**

What was the name of the mayor who led the New Haven urban development project in 1954?

**Question 6**

What was a major urban development that affected several New Haven neighbourhoods?

**Question 7**

What will happen to the western part of Route 34 during this reconstruction process?

**Text number 9**

Since around 2000, many parts of downtown New Haven have been revitalised, with new restaurants, nightlife and small retail shops. The area around New Haven Green, in particular, has seen a proliferation of housing and condominiums. In recent years, downtown retail options have increased with the opening of new stores such as Urban Oufitters, J Crew, Origins, American Apparel, Gant Clothing and Apple Store, as well as the opening of older stores such as Barnes & Noble, Cutlers Records and Raggs Clothing. In addition, two new supermarkets, Stop & Shop just outside of downtown and Elm City Market, located a block from the Green, serve the growing population of downtown. The recent turnaround of downtown New Haven has received positive feedback from various publications.

**Question 0**

Around what year was the last time downtown New Haven's revitalization began?

**Question 1**

In which particular area of downtown New Haven did the number of housing units increase significantly at the beginning of this century?

**Question 2**

Which particular service sector has grown significantly in downtown New Haven in recent years?

**Question 3**

Which new supermarket, in addition to Stop & Shop, is located a block from the Green and ready to serve the growing downtown population?

**Question 4**

What has happened to retail in downtown New Haven in the 2000s?

**Question 5**

How has the media reacted to these changes in the city centre?

**Question 6**

What has happened to New Haven Green in the 2000s?

**Question 7**

Including growth, what market chain has expanded near Downtown New Haven?

**Text number 10**

Major projects include the construction of Gateway Community College's new downtown campus and a 32-story, 500-unit residential and retail building at 360 State Street. The 360 State Street project is now operational and will be the largest residential building in Connecticut. A new marina building and pier are planned for the Port of New Haven, and the Farmington Canal Trail is scheduled to extend into downtown New Haven within the next year. In addition, foundation and ramp work has begun to widen I-95 to provide a new harbor crossing in New Haven, where a bridge will be built to replace the 1950s Q Bridge. The city still hopes to redevelop the site of the New Haven Coliseum stadium, which was demolished in 2007.

**Question 0**

Which mixed-use project in New Haven is the largest residential building in Connecticut?

**Question 1**

Which park is expected to extend into downtown New Haven?

**Question 2**

In which area is a new boathouse and jetty planned?

**Question 3**

What is the landmark demolished in 2007 that the city ultimately wants to restore?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the building project in the centre of Gateway Community College?

**Question 5**

What kind of adaptation is being made to the Port of New Haven?

**Question 6**

The City of New Haven wants to renovate/build what type of structure?

**Question 7**

What is being developed in terms of infrastructure in the city centre?

**Question 8**

What kind of bridge will replace the old Q Bridge?

**Text number 11**

In April 2009, the US Supreme Court agreed to hear a reverse discrimination lawsuit brought by 18 white firefighters against the city. The lawsuit concerned the New Haven Fire Department's 2003 promotional exams. After the tests were scored, no black firefighter scored high enough for promotion consideration, so the city announced that no one would be promoted. In a later decision in Ricci v. DeStefano, the Court ruled by a vote of 5-4 that New Haven's decision to disregard the test scores violated Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964. As a result, the district court ordered the city to promote 14 white firefighters.

**Question 0**

In what year did the US Supreme Court uphold a lawsuit brought by 18 New Haven firefighters against the City of New Haven?

**Question 1**

What was the difference in the lawsuit that led 18 white firefighters in New Haven to seek help from the US Supreme Court?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the case in which the US Supreme Court ruled that the City of New Haven had violated the Civil Rights Act of 1964 by denying a firefighter a promotion?

**Question 3**

In what year in a promotion test given by the New Haven Fire Department, did the low scores of black firefighters ultimately stop the promotions of all firefighters of all races in the city?

**Question 4**

How many of the 18 white firefighters were promoted by order of the New Haven City Circuit Court after the US Supreme Court ruled in favour of the petitioning firefighters?

**Question 5**

What was the decision of the Supreme Court in 2009?

**Question 6**

Which two parties have been involved in a court case?

**Question 7**

What did the city do after the promotions test results failed?

**Question 8**

How many white firefighters were promoted afterwards?

**Text number 12**

In 2010 and 2011, Connecticut (and Massachusetts) were awarded state and federal funds to build the Hartford Line, with New Haven Union Station as the southern terminus and Springfield Union Station as the northern terminus. According to the White House, "This corridor [currently] runs one train per day, connecting the communities of Connecticut and Massachusetts to the Northeast Passage and Vermont. The vision for this corridor is to return the alignment to its original route through the Knowledge Corridor in western Massachusetts, improving travel time and increasing the accessible population base." The Knowledge Corridor high-speed passenger rail project, to be built in 2013, will cost around $1 billion, and the project's final northern terminus is reportedly Montreal, Canada. The train is said to exceed 180 kilometres per hour (110 miles per hour) and will exponentially increase rail traffic in both cities.

**Question 0**

Connecticut was awarded funding in 2010 and 2011 to build which line, with its southern terminus in New Haven?

**Question 1**

From which New Haven terminal was the Hartford Line scheduled to depart?

**Question 2**

Where was the northern terminus of the Hartford line located?

**Question 3**

What is the name of the corridor in western Massachusetts that federal authorities are using to improve travel times and serve both New Haven and Springfield?

**Question 4**

In which year was the "Knowledge corridor high-speed passenger rail link" to be built?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the rail line connecting Connecticut and Massachusetts?

**Question 6**

Where does the New Haven terminus start?

**Question 7**

The rail line is intended to connect Connecticut and Massachusetts to which state to the north?

**Question 8**

When will construction of the Knowledge Corridor start?

**Question 9**

How fast are these trains in general?

**Text number 13**

New Haven's best-known geographical features are its large deep harbour and the two reddish basalt rock ridges that rise to the north-east and north-west of the city's core. These cliffs are known as East Rock and West Rock, and both serve as extensive parks. West Rock has been tunneled through for east-west access to the Wilbur Cross Parkway (the only highway tunnel through a natural barrier in Connecticut), and once served as a hideout for the 'Regics' (see: Regicides Trail). Most Newhaveners call these men the "Three Judges". At the top of East Rock is a prominent soldiers' and sailors' war memorial and the "Great/Giant Steps" stairway that runs up the cliffside.

**Question 0**

Besides the Port of New Haven, what other natural element is a significant geographic feature of the region that straddles the northeast and northwest boundaries of the region?

**Question 1**

What trap rock ridge was modified to construct the east-west portion of the Wilbur Park Crossway?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the group that once used West Rock as their hideout, known colloquially as the "Three Judges"?

**Question 3**

What is the name of the war memorial at the top of East Rock?

**Question 4**

What is the name of a popular highlight on the East Rock escarpment?

**Question 5**

What is New Haven best known for as a major landmark and structure?

**Question 6**

In economic and geographical landscape terms, what is the use of two tropical cliffs on a ridge north of the city?

**Question 7**

What kind of infrastructure will West Rock be used for?

**Question 8**

What does Eastern Rocks offer as a park?

**Text number 14**

The city is drained by three rivers: the West, Mill and Quinnipiac, named in order from west to east. The West River flows into West Haven Harbor, while the Mill and Quinnipiac rivers flow into New Haven Harbor. Both harbors are bays in Long Island Sound. In addition, several smaller streams flow through the city's residential areas, including Wintergreen Brook, Beaver Ponds Outlet, Wilmot Brook, Belden Brook, and Prospect Creek. All of these smaller streams do not have a constant flow year-round.

**Question 0**

How many rivers in the city of New Haven have been dammed?

**Question 1**

Which New Haven river flows into West Haven Harbor?

**Question 2**

Which local water body do the Mill and Quinnipiac rivers flow into?

**Question 3**

Which larger waterway does West Haven Harbor and New Haven Harbor sink into?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the West River in the city of New Haven?

**Question 5**

The East River bears the name of the Native American tribes who once lived in New Haven, what is the name?

**Question 6**

Where do the two eastern rivers meet in New Haven Harbour?

**Question 7**

These two ports are part of what estuary?

**Question 8**

Are all of New Haven's smaller streams active in all four seasons?

**Text number 15**

New Haven lies between a humid continental climate (Köppen climate classification: Dfa) and a humid subtropical climate (Köppen climate classification: Cfa), but with more features of the former, like much of the New York metropolitan area. Summers are humid and warm, with temperatures above 32 °C (90 °F) 7-8 days a year. Winters are cold, with moderate snow and rainfall and occasional mixed precipitation. The weather patterns affecting New Haven are mainly due to seaward weather, which reduces the marine effect on Long Island Sound, although, as in other marine areas, temperature differences between the coast and areas a few miles inland can sometimes be large.

**Question 0**

While New Haven's climate has transitive properties, which Copenhagen climate classification more accurately characterizes New Haven's climate?

**Question 1**

What season is typically warm and humid in New Haven?

**Question 2**

What baseline temperature limit do temperatures usually exceed in the summer in New Haven?

**Question 3**

How much snow usually falls during the winter in New Haven?

**Question 4**

New Haven's climate is largely similar to that of which large neighbouring metropolitan area?

**Question 5**

The New Haven area closely resembles what kind of climate?

**Question 6**

Will the weather get hotter than 90 degrees in summer?

**Question 7**

As a coastal city, how much snow does it snow?

**Question 8**

What are the main effects of New Haven's weather due to its being a coastal city?

**Text number 16**

New Haven has a long tradition of urban planning and purposeful urban design. The city can claim to have had one of the first pre-planned town plans in the country. At its inception, New Haven was designed on a nine-square-block grid plan, leaving the central plaza as an open urban green space (common area) in the tradition of many New England cities. The city also launched America's first public tree planting programme. As in other cities, many of the elm trees that gave New Haven the nickname "Elm City" were destroyed in the mid-20th century by Dutch elm disease, although many have since been replanted. New Haven Green now has three separate historic churches, a testament to the city's original theocratic character. Today, the Green remains the social centre of the town. It was designated a National Historic Landmark in 1970.

**Question 0**

What was the urban plan for New Haven when the area was created?

**Question 1**

What environmental initiative is the City of New Haven known for, mainly for being the first of its kind in America?

**Question 2**

What nickname was given to the city of New Haven in the mid-19th century because of a largely extinct native tree?

**Question 3**

What was the cause of the sudden extinction of many New Haven elephants?

**Question 4**

Which New Haven public district was designated a National Historic Landmark in 1970?

**Question 5**

What was New Haven's nickname?

**Question 6**

Planting trees is why the city centre is called what?

**Question 7**

In what year was it recognised as a landmark?

**Question 8**

How many blocks were in the city's original plans?

**Question 9**

New Haven is known for its trees because it was the first in the US to introduce what?

**Text number 17**

Downtown New Haven is home to nearly 7,000 people and is more residential than most downtowns. The downtown area provides about half of the city's jobs and half of its tax base, and in recent years it has been filled with dozens of new upscale restaurants, several of which have received national acclaim (such as Ibiza, which has been recognized by Esquire and Wine Spectator magazines and the New York Times as the best Spanish food in the country), in addition to shops and thousands of apartments and condominiums, contributing to the city's overall growth.

**Question 0**

How many people live in downtown New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which downtown New Haven restaurant has been featured in the New York Times, Esquire and Wine Spectator for its excellent Spanish cuisine?

**Question 2**

How many jobs does downtown New Haven provide for the city?

**Question 3**

How much of the total tax base in the New Haven area is made up by downtown New Haven?

**Question 4**

How many people live in downtown New Haven?

**Question 5**

What is the financial responsibility of the central part?

**Question 6**

Which area of the city centre receives the most positive media coverage?

**Question 7**

What has contributed most to the region's continued growth?

**Text number 18**

The city has many separate districts. In addition to the city centre, centred on the central business district and the green area, there are the following districts: The Hill South neighborhoods, City Point (or Oyster Point) Historic Waterfront and Long Wharf waterfront; Edgewood, West River, Westville, Amity and West Rock-Westhills West neighborhoods; East Rock, Cedar Hill, Prospect Hill and Newhallville neighborhoods in the northern part of the city; the east downtown areas of Mill River and Wooster Square, an Italian-American neighborhood; Fair Haven, an immigrant community between the Mill and Quinnipiac Rivers; Quinnipiac Meadows and Fair Haven Heights across the Quinnipiac River; and The Annex and East Shore (or Morris Cove) on the east side of the harbor.

**Question 0**

Which New Haven area includes the business district and the area around New Haven Green?

**Question 1**

What is the historic waterfront in the southern New Haven area?

**Question 2**

Which area of East Central New Haven has a large Italian-American population?

**Question 3**

What is the name of a neighbourhood in New Haven, located between the Mill and Quinnipiac rivers and made up of a predominantly immigrant community?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the district near the city harbour?

**Question 5**

Although Green is the popular centre of the city, there is another district, what's it called?

**Question 6**

If you were to go to the northern part of New Haven, which part of the city would you find?

**Question 7**

Between two rivers lies an area with a large immigrant population, the name is?

**Question 8**

Wooster Square is known for what roots?

**Text number 19**

New Haven's economy was originally based on manufacturing, but the post-war period brought a rapid industrial decline; the whole of the Northeast suffered, and medium-sized cities with a large working population like New Haven were particularly hard hit. At the same time, the growth and expansion of Yale University continued to contribute to economic change. Today, more than half (56%) of the city's economy comes from services, particularly education and health care; Yale is the city's largest employer, followed by Yale - New Haven Hospital. Other large employers include St. Raphael Hospital, Smilow Cancer Hospital, Southern Connecticut State University, Assa Abloy Manufacturing, Knights of Columbus Headquarters, Higher One, Alexion Pharmaceuticals, Covidien, and United Illuminating. Yale and Yale-New Haven are also among the largest employers in the state, providing more jobs with wages over $100,000 than any other employer in Connecticut [cited ].

**Question 0**

Which sector originally made the largest contribution to New Haven's economy?

**Question 1**

What is New Haven's largest employer?

**Question 2**

How much of New Haven's economy is based on health and education-based services?

**Question 3**

What is New Haven's second largest employer?

**Question 4**

Which pharmaceutical company is a big employer in New Haven?

**Question 5**

What did New Haven rely on for growth and the economy?

**Question 6**

Was the city the only one to suffer from the decline in the industrial sector?

**Question 7**

How much does New Haven depend on blue-collar jobs today?

**Question 8**

Which institution has the greatest impact on the city's labour market?

**Text number 20**

The Knights of Columbus, the world's largest Catholic fraternal service organization and Fortune 1000 company, is based in New Haven. Two other Fortune 1000 companies are located in Greater New Haven: electrical equipment manufacturers Hubbell, based in Orange, and Amphenol, based in Wallingford. Eight of the Courant 100 companies are based in Greater New Haven, and four are headquartered in New Haven. New Haven-based publicly traded companies include NewAlliance Bank, Connecticut's second largest bank and New England's fourth largest bank (NYSE: NAL), Higher One Holdings (NYSE: ONE), a financial services company, United Illuminating, a Southern Connecticut electric distribution company (NYSE: UIL), Achillion Pharmaceuticals (NASDAQ: ACHN), Alexion Pharmaceuticals (NasdaqGS: ALXN) and Transpro Inc. (AMEX: TPR). Vion Pharmaceuticals is traded on the OTC market (OTC BB: VIONQ.OB). Other notable companies operating in the city include Peter Paul Candy Manufacturing Company (the candy division of the Hershey Company), the US division of Assa Abloy (one of the world's leading lock manufacturers), Yale University Press and the Russell Trust Association (the business unit of the Skull and Bones Society). The Southern New England Telephone Company (SNET) began operations in the city as the District Telephone Company of New Haven in 1878; it is still headquartered in New Haven as a subsidiary of AT&T Inc, now known as AT&T Connecticut, and provides telephone service to all but two Connecticut municipalities.

**Question 0**

Which Fortune 1000 company, also the world's largest Catholic Charities, is located in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which major electrical equipment manufacturer, also a Fortune 1000 company, is located in Greater New Haven?

**Question 2**

Which listed bank, also the second largest in Connecticut, is based in New Haven?

**Question 3**

What is the name of the infamous Skull and Bones, a business group based in New Haven?

**Question 4**

In what year did the Southern New England Telephone Company, formerly the District Telephone Company of New Haven, begin operations in the area?

**Question 5**

New Haven is home to one of the largest religious service organizations in the world, its name?

**Question 6**

In the New Haven metropolitan area, there is a Fortune 1000 company in the city of Orange called?

**Question 7**

What is the name of the second largest bank in Connecticut?

**Question 8**

SNET is one of the oldest telephone companies, and it started in what year?

**Question 9**

Today, SNET operates in New Haven under what name?

**Text number 21**

According to the US Census Bureau, the city of New Haven had a population of 129 779 in 2010, with 47 094 households and 25 854 families. The population density is 6,859.8 people per square mile (2,648.6/km²). There are 52,941 dwellings, with an average population density of 2,808.5 per square mile (1,084.4/km²). The racial composition of the city is 42.6% white, 35.4% African American, 0.5% Native American, 4.6% Asian, 0.1% Pacific Islander, 12.9% other races, and 3.9% bi-racial. Hispanics or Latinos made up 27.4% of the population. Non-whites made up 31.8% of the population in 2010, down from 69.6% in 1970. The demographics of the city are changing rapidly: New Haven has always been a city of immigrants, and currently the Latino population is growing rapidly. Previous ethnic groups have included African Americans in the post-war period and Irish, Italians and (to a lesser extent) Slavs in the pre-war period.

**Question 0**

How many households are there in New Haven, according to the 2010 U.S. Census Bureau report?

**Question 1**

What percentage of New Haven's population is white?

**Question 2**

What percentage of New Haven's population is African-American?

**Question 3**

Which minority population in New Haven is currently experiencing rapid growth?

**Question 4**

What is the total population of New Haven according to the U.S. Census Bureau in 2010?

**Question 5**

What is the average population density per square kilometre in New Haven?

**Question 6**

In terms of being a resident, what is the demographic of Native Americans living in the city?

**Question 7**

New Haven has a large immigrant population, which seems to be one of the main reasons for that over the last century?

**Question 8**

Has the white/Caucasian population increased or decreased in modern times since the 1970s?

**Text number 22**

New Haven is a predominantly Roman Catholic city, as the Dominican, Irish, Italian, Mexican, Ecuadorian and Puerto Rican populations are predominantly Catholic. The city is part of the Archdiocese of Hartford. Jews also make up a significant portion of the population, as do black Baptists. There is also a growing number of (mostly Puerto Rican) Pentecostals. The city has churches of all main branches of Christianity, several storefront churches, ministries (especially in working-class Hispanic and black neighborhoods), a mosque, many synagogues (including two yeshivas) and other places of worship.

**Question 0**

What is the most prominent religion in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which Catholic Church has direct jurisdiction over New Haven?

**Question 2**

How many yeshivas are located in New Haven?

**Question 3**

What religious movement are many Puerto Ricans in New Haven affiliated with?

**Question 4**

What other religious community besides Jews makes up a large part of New Haven's non-Catholic population?

**Question 5**

What is the most common denomination of religion in the city?

**Question 6**

There are several religious groups that seem to be rising in the demographic, one of which is popular among African Americans?

**Question 7**

However, Christianity can be found within the city, especially in which parts of the city?

**Text number 23**

New Haven is the birthplace of former President George W. Bush, who was born while his father, former President George H. W. Bush, lived in New Haven while attending Yale University. In addition to being the home of both Presidents Bush as students at Yale, New Haven was also the temporary home of former Presidents William Howard Taft, Gerald Ford and Bill Clinton, and Secretary of State John Kerry. President Clinton met his wife, former US Secretary of State Hillary Rodham Clinton, while they were students at Yale Law School. Former Vice Presidents John C. Calhoun and Dick Cheney also studied in New Haven (although the latter did not graduate from Yale). The last time before the 2008 elections, in 1968, neither major party had a candidate with ties to New Haven and Yale. James Hillhouse, a native of New Haven, served as President Pro Tempore of the US Senate in 1801.

**Question 0**

Which former US president was born in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which New Haven college did former US President Bill Clinton and Hillary Rodham Clinton both attend?

**Question 2**

Which former US Vice-President graduated from Yale University?

**Question 3**

Before 2008, when was the last election in which neither major party had a candidate with a connection to New Haven and Yale University?

**Question 4**

Who was the President of the Senate from New Haven in 1801?

**Question 5**

Which former US President was born in New Haven?

**Question 6**

Several presidents have studied at this popular university, can you guess the name of the university?

**Question 7**

This man serving in President Obama's cabinet also studied at Yale, guess who?

**Question 8**

Yale University has been strongly linked to our presidential candidates ever since. Since what year?

**Text number 24**

New Haven was the theme of Who rules? Democracy and Power in the American City, a highly influential political science book by Yale professor Robert A. Dahl, which includes an extensive history of the city and an in-depth description of its politics in the 1950s. Alexis de Tocqueville also mentions New Haven's theocratic history several times in his classic work on 19th century American political life, Democracy in America. New Haven was home to conservative thinker William F. Buckley Jr. in 1951, when he wrote his influential God and Man at Yale. William Lee Miller's The Fifteenth Ward and the Great Society (1966) similarly explores the relationship between New Haven local politics and national political movements, focusing on Lyndon Johnson's Great Society and urban renewal.

**Question 0**

What is the title of a political science book written by a Yale professor about the politics and history of New Haven in the 1950s?

**Question 1**

Who is the author of the book "Who rules? Democracy and Power in the American City"

**Question 2**

Where in Alexis de Tocqueville's penultimate work is the original theocratic government of New Haven mentioned?

**Question 3**

Who was the well-known conservative who wrote the book God and Man at Yale, who was offered a residence in New Haven in 1951?

**Question 4**

Who is the author of The Fifteenth Ward and the Great Society?

**Question 5**

What is the title of a popular book about New Haven politics published in the 1950s?

**Question 6**

Which famous French historian mentioned the city in his book Democracy in America?

**Question 7**

New Haven was home to an author who wrote God and Man at Yale, the author's name was?

**Question 8**

What is the title of a book published in 1966 that focused on the politics of the city in relation to the policies of President Johnson?

**Text number 25**

In 1970, the New Haven Black Panther trials were the largest and longest in Connecticut history. Black Panther Party founder Bobby Seale and ten other party members were tried for the alleged murder of an informer. Starting in May, the city became a demonstration centre for 12,000 Panther supporters, college students and New Left activists (including Jean Genet, Benjamin Spock, Abbie Hoffman, Jerry Rubin and John Froines) who gathered on the New Haven Green, across the street from where the trials were held. There were violent clashes between protesters and New Haven police, and several bombs were set off by radicals in the area. The event became a rallying point for critics of the New Left and the Nixon administration.

**Question 0**

Which New Haven trial is known to be the longest in Connecticut history?

**Question 1**

What year was the New Haven Black Panther Trials held in New Haven?

**Question 2**

Who was the founder of the Black Panthers on trial in New Haven?

**Question 3**

On what day did the takeover of New Haven begin with a demonstration of 12 000 people against the Black Panther trials?

**Question 4**

Where in downtown New Haven did the Black Panther trial protesters gather?

**Question 5**

Which political movement group is known within the city among non-whites?

**Question 6**

How many people attended the Black Panther trials in 1970?

**Question 7**

What is the concrete outcome of the legal protest?

**Question 8**

The demonstration will also start to criticise the administration of which president?

**Question 9**

What was the name of one party leader who also happened to be on trial?

**Text number 26**

In April 2009, the US Supreme Court agreed to hear a reverse discrimination lawsuit brought by 20 white and Hispanic firefighters against the city. The lawsuit concerned the New Haven Fire Department's 2003 promotional exams. After the tests were scored, no blacks scored high enough to qualify for promotion, so the city announced that no one would be promoted. On 29 June 2009, the US Supreme Court ruled in favour of the firefighters, holding that they were wrongly denied promotions because of their race. The case, Ricci v. DeStefano, became highly publicized and brought national attention to New Haven politics because then Supreme Court nominee (and Yale Law School graduate) Sonia Sotomayor was involved in the lower court's decision.

**Question 0**

What year did the US Supreme Court agree to hear a lawsuit originally brought by 20 white and Hispanic firefighters seeking relief from the City of New Haven?

**Question 1**

What was the primary legal issue at the heart of the firefighters' lawsuit against New Haven?

**Question 2**

What year did the City of New Haven refuse to promote any firefighters, citing the poor performance of black firefighters on performance tests?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the 2009 case in which the US Supreme Court granted relief to New Haven firefighters against the City of New Haven?

**Question 4**

Which Supreme Court Justice was a graduate of Yale Law School and was in the process of being appointed when firefighters filed a 2009 lawsuit against the City of New Haven?

**Question 5**

The 2009 Supreme Court case of City of New Haven v. Who?

**Question 6**

What was the date of the final decision?

**Question 7**

What was the actual name of the case?

**Question 8**

The choice of court was quite popular because of who was involved in the case?

**Question 9**

After reaching the verdict, it was summarized that the city denied the firefighter a promotion for what?

**Text number 27**

Garry Trudeau, the creator of the Doonesbury political cartoon, studied at Yale University. It was there that he met fellow student and later Green Party congressional candidate Charles Pillsbury, a long-time New Haven resident after whom Trudeau's cartoon is named. During his college years, Pillsbury was known by the nickname "The Doones". International law theory, which advocates a sociological normative approach to jurisprudence, has been named after the city as the New Haven approach. US Senator Richard Blumenthal of Connecticut is a graduate of Yale, as is former US Senator Joe Lieberman, who also lived in New Haven for several years before moving back to his hometown of Stamford.

**Question 0**

Who is the famous Doonesbury cartoonist who went to Yale University in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which long-time New Haven resident and former Yale student is Doonesbury named after?

**Question 2**

What was Charles Pillsbury's nickname at university?

**Question 3**

What is the name of the theory of international law based on the jurisprudence framed by a sociological normative approach?

**Question 4**

Which Connecticut State Senator is a graduate of Yale University in New Haven?

**Question 5**

Which former US Senator had lived in New Haven and graduated from Yale?

**Question 6**

What exactly did the New Haven approach mean?

**Question 7**

What is the name of the member of the Greens who also studied at Yale?

**Text number 28**

However, analysis by the Regional Data Cooperative for Greater New Haven, Inc. has shown that problems with comparable denominators and other factors mean that such municipality-based classifications may be inaccurate. For example, two cities of similar population size may cover very different areas of land, making such analyses irrelevant. The research organisation requested comparisons based on neighbourhoods, blocks or standard methods (similar to those used by Brookings, DiversityData and other established institutions), not municipalities.

**Question 0**

Which organisation's analysis shows in detail that municipality-based classifications can be inaccurate?

**Question 1**

Which variable in the two cities can cause differences in the analysis because they are spread over different regions of the country?

**Question 2**

Neighbourhoods and neighbourhoods, unlike municipalities, are both examples of what?

**Question 3**

Which research organisation carried out the urban analysis of New Haven?

**Question 4**

The organisation said that the analysis should be based on a comparison of districts within the city and not on what?

**Question 5**

What, according to the institution, leads to an inaccurate analysis of the city?

**Text number 29**

New Haven is a major centre for higher education. Yale University, located in the heart of downtown, is one of the city's best-known features and its largest employer. New Haven is also home to Southern Connecticut State University, part of the Connecticut State University System, and Albertus Magnus College, a private institution. Gateway Community College has a campus in downtown New Haven, formerly located in the Long Wharf area; Gateway was consolidated into one campus downtown on a new state-of-the-art campus (on the site of the old Macy's building), and was open for the fall 2012 semester.

**Question 0**

Which private university is located in downtown New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which community college is located in downtown New Haven?

**Question 2**

Which state university is located in New Haven?

**Question 3**

Which school is the largest employer in New Haven?

**Question 4**

What year did Gateway Community College recently open its combined central campus?

**Question 5**

Where Yale University is located.

**Question 6**

What is also the name of the state university in the city?

**Question 7**

In addition to Yale, there is another private university in New Haven, called?

**Question 8**

Before moving downtown, New Haven had a community college, which was located where?

**Question 9**

When did the new Gateway Community College open?

**Text number 30**

Hopkins School, a private school founded in 1660, is the fifth oldest educational institution in the United States. New Haven has several other private schools as well as public magnet schools, including the Metropolitan Business Academy, High School in the Community, Hill Regional Career High School, Co-op High School, New Haven Academy, ACES Educational Center for the Arts, Foote School and Sound School, all of which attract students from New Haven and nearby cities. New Haven is also home to two Achievement First elementary schools, Amistad Academy and Elm City College Prep, as well as Common Ground Environmental School.

**Question 0**

Which private school, which has the distinction of being the fifth oldest educational institution in the United States, was founded in New Haven?

**Question 1**

What year was the Hopkins School founded in New Haven?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the environmental school in New Haven?

**Question 3**

What are the names of the two Achievement First elementary schools in New Haven?

**Question 4**

Which New Haven magnet school focuses on art education?

**Question 5**

What is one of the oldest schools, founded in 1660, and what is its name?

**Question 6**

How old is the school historically compared to other schools?

**Question 7**

How many elementary schools are available in New Haven?

**Text number 31**

The city has the New Haven Promise, a scholarship funded by Yale University for qualifying students. Students must be enrolled in a public high school (including charter schools) for four years, must live in the city during that time, must achieve a 3.0 cumulative GPA, must have 90 percent attendance, and must complete 40 hours of service to the city. The initiative was launched in 2010, and currently more than 500 scholarship recipients are enrolled at Connecticut colleges and universities. There are more than 60 towns in the state that have a Promise-type program for their students.

**Question 0**

Which scholarship does Yale University in New Haven award to public school students who meet certain criteria?

**Question 1**

What is the cumulative GPA that qualifies a student for the New Haven Promise Scholarship?

**Question 2**

How many hours of community service must a student complete to qualify for the New Haven Promise Scholarship?

**Question 3**

What is the minimum requirement for a student to be eligible for the New Haven Promise Scholarship?

**Question 4**

What year was the New Haven Promise scholarship launched?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the Yale-funded scholarship?

**Question 6**

What kind of service must be met to apply?

**Question 7**

When did the fellowship project start?

**Question 8**

How many students are currently enrolled in the programme?

**Text number 32**

Livability.com named New Haven the best food city in the country in 2014. New Haven has 56 Zagat-rated restaurants, the most in Connecticut and the third most in New England (after Boston and Cambridge). More than 120 restaurants are located within a two-block radius of New Haven Green. The city has an eclectic mix of ethnic restaurants and small markets specialising in a variety of foreign foods. Cuisines represented include Malaysian, Ethiopian, Spanish, Belgian, French, Greek, Greek, Latin American, Mexican, Italian, Thai, Chinese, Japanese, Vietnamese, Korean, Indian, Jamaican, Cuban, Peruvian, Syrian/Lebanese, Turkish and others.

**Question 0**

What honour did Livability.com bestow on New Haven in 2014?

**Question 1**

How many Zagat-rated restaurants are located in New Haven?

**Question 2**

Which Connecticut town has the most Zagat-rated restaurants?

**Question 3**

How many restaurants are there within a two-block radius of New Haven Green?

**Question 4**

Which website gave New Haven critical praise for the city's food?

**Question 5**

How many restaurants are located in downtown New Haven?

**Question 6**

How many Zagat-rated restaurants are there in the city?

**Question 7**

In cities, there are markets that focus on which types of food?

**Text number 33**

New Haven's greatest culinary claim to fame is perhaps its pizza, which is claimed to be among the best in the country, or even the world. The New Haven-style pizza, known as "apizza" (pronounced in the original Italian dialect ah-BEETS, [aˈpitts]), made its debut at the iconic Frank Pepe Pizzeria Napoletana (known as Pepe's) in 1925. Apizza is baked in coal- or wood-fired brick ovens and is known for its thin crust. Apizza can be red (with tomato sauce) or white (with garlic sauce and olive oil), and pizza ordered 'plain' is made without the otherwise usual mozzarella cheese (originally smoked mozzarella, known in Italian as 'scamorza'). White clam pie is a well-known specialty at restaurants on Wooster Street in New Haven's Little Italy neighborhood, including Pepe's and Sally's Apizza (which opened in 1938). Modern Apizza on State Street, which opened in 1934, is also famous.

**Question 0**

What dish is generally considered to be New Haven's penultimate culinary achievement?

**Question 1**

What is the colloquial name for New Haven-style pizza?

**Question 2**

At which New Haven institution did "apizza" make its debut in 1925?

**Question 3**

What ingredient is missing from a New Haven-style pizza when ordered plain?

**Question 4**

Where in New Haven on Wooster Street can you expect to find an excellent white clam pie pizza?

**Question 5**

What is New Haven best known for when it comes to food?

**Question 6**

Where did the New Haven pizza style come from?

**Question 7**

What is "apizza" usually known as?

**Question 8**

Where in New Haven is there white clam pie?

**Question 9**

What year was New Haven-style pizza discovered?

**Text number 34**

Another New Haven gastronomic icon is Louis' Lunch, located in a small brick building on Crown Street, which has been serving fast food since 1895. Although hotly contested, the Library of Congress credits Louis Lassen, the restaurant's founder, with inventing the burger and steak sandwich. Louis' Lunch fries burgers, steak sandwiches and hot dogs vertically in original antique cast-iron ovens built in 1898, using grates patented in 1939 by local resident Luigi Pieragostini to hold the meat in place during cooking.

**Question 0**

Which New Haven landmark fast food restaurant is located on Crown Street?

**Question 1**

What year did Louis' Lunch start serving fast food in New Haven?

**Question 2**

Who is the founder of Louis' Lunch in New Haven?

**Question 3**

According to which federal agency, New Haven resident Louis Lassen invented the hamburger and steak sandwich?

**Question 4**

Which New Haven resident patented a cast iron stove using grating irons in 1939?

**Question 5**

Louis's Lunch is popular for serving what?

**Question 6**

How does Louis' Lunch prepare its food?

**Question 7**

When was Louis' lunch discovered?

**Text number 35**

On weekdays at lunchtime, more than 150 lunch trolleys and food trucks from nearby restaurants serve different groups of students on the Yale campus. Carts are clustered at three main locations: at Yale - New Haven Hospital in the center of Hospital Green (Cedar and York Streets), at Yale Trumbull College (Elm and York Streets), and at the intersection of Prospect and Sachem Streets by the Yale School of Management. Popular farmer's markets run by the local non-profit CitySeed operate weekly in several areas, including Westville/Edgewood Park, Fair Haven, Upper State Street, Wooster Square and Downtown/New Haven Green.

**Question 0**

Which intersecting streets marked by the Yale - New Haven Hospital's hospital green centre are filled with food carts on weekdays?

**Question 1**

Which Yale college is located on the corner of Elm and York Streets in New Haven?

**Question 2**

Which Yale school is closest to the intersection of Prospect and Sachem streets?

**Question 3**

Which New Haven nonprofit organization manages the farmers' markets that serve different neighborhoods weekly throughout the region?

**Question 4**

How many lunch trolleys are there on the Yale campus at lunchtime?

**Question 5**

Who manages the New Haven farmers' market?

**Question 6**

New Haven Hospital is located in which Hospital Green district?

**Text number 36**

The city is home to numerous theatres and production houses, including the Yale Repertory Theatre, the Long Wharf Theatre and the Shubert Theatre. There is also the Yale School of Drama, through the Yale University Theatre and the student-run Yale Cabaret. Southern Connecticut State University hosts the Lyman Center for the Performing Arts. The closed Palace Theatre (across the street from the Shubert Theatre) is currently undergoing renovations and will reopen as the College Street Music Hall in May 2015. Smaller theatres include the Little Theater on Lincoln Street. The Cooperative Arts and Humanities High School also has a state-of-the-art theatre on College Street. The theatre is used for student productions and as a venue for weekly services at the local non-denominational church, City Church New Haven.

**Question 0**

Which two other major theatre buildings are located in New Haven, in addition to the Yale Reparatory Theatre?

**Question 1**

What is the name of a group led by Yale University students that offers theatre performances in New Haven?

**Question 2**

Which New Haven venue is hosted by Southern Connecticut State University?

**Question 3**

What was the original name of the College Street Music Hall?

**Question 4**

What year was the newly renovated College Street Music Hall reopened?

**Question 5**

Which theatre is located on the Yale campus?

**Question 6**

Southern Connecticut State University has its own theatre, its name?

**Question 7**

Which theatre is currently under renovation in the city?

**Question 8**

Which New Haven school is known for having a theatre that is used by both students and the church?

**Question 9**

Yale also has a theatre run by one of its own students, name it?

**Text number 37**

New Haven has a number of museums, many of which are associated with Yale. The Beinecke Rare Book and Manuscript Library houses the original Gutenberg Bible. There is also the Connecticut Children's Museum, the Knights of Columbus Museum near the headquarters of that organization, the Peabody Museum of Natural History, the Yale University Musical Instrument Collection, the Eli Whitney Museum (across the city line in Hamden, Connecticut, on Whitney Avenue) and the Yale Centre for British Art, which houses the largest collection of British art outside the United Kingdom, and the Yale University Art Gallery, the oldest higher education art museum in the country. New Haven is also home to the New Haven Museum and Historical Society on Whitney Avenue, which houses a library with many primary source treasures from colonial times to the present day.

**Question 0**

Where is the original copy of the Gutenberg Bible in the New Haven Museum?

**Question 1**

Which New Haven landmark serves as the oldest university art museum in the country?

**Question 2**

Which New Haven museum has the largest collection of British art available outside the UK?

**Question 3**

Which museum on Whitney Street in Hamden is dedicated to a prominent New Haven inventor?

**Question 4**

Which major university is most of New Haven's museums associated with?

**Question 5**

Which museum has the original Gutenberg Bible?

**Question 6**

Yale claims to have the oldest university art museum in the US, what's the name of the place?

**Question 7**

There is a museum on Whitney Avenue that contains various historical treasures, what is its name?

**Question 8**

What is the name of a museum that focuses on one inventor in particular, located in the city?

**Text number 38**

Artspace on Orange Street is one of many contemporary art galleries around the city, showcasing the work of local, national and international artists. Others include City Gallery and A. Leaf Gallery in the downtown area. Westville galleries include Kehler Liddell, Jennifer Jane Gallery and The Hungry Eye. The Erector Square complex in Fair Haven features the Parachute Factory Gallery and numerous artists' studios, and is an active destination during the annual City-Wide Open Studios in October.

**Question 0**

What is the name of a major contemporary art gallery on Orange Street in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which two contemporary art galleries are located in downtown New Haven?

**Question 2**

Where in New Haven are Kehler Liddel, Jennider Jane Gallery and The Hungry Eye Gallery located?

**Question 3**

Which New Haven gallery is located in the Erector Square complex in Fair Haven?

**Question 4**

What will the Erector Square complex be used for at New Haven's annual arts event in early October?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the art gallery that features many artists locally and from around the world?

**Question 6**

This gallery features works by an artist such as The Hungry Eye, what's the name of the place?

**Question 7**

The Erector Square complex is a gallery located where?

**Question 8**

During which month is the complex particularly active?

**Text number 39**

New Haven Green hosts many free music concerts, especially during the summer months. These have included the New Haven Symphony Orchestra, Free Concerts on the Green in July and the New Haven Jazz Festival in August. The jazz festival, which began in 1982, is one of the longest-running free outdoor festivals in the United States until its cancellation in 2007. Headliners like The Breakfast, Dave Brubeck, Ray Charles and Celia Cruz have traditionally drawn between 30,000 and 50,000 fans and filled the New Haven Green to capacity. The New Haven Jazz Festival was revived in 2008 and has been sponsored by Jazz Haven ever since.

**Question 0**

Which public spaces in New Haven offer free concerts in the summer?

**Question 1**

Which music festival was started in 1982 in New Haven?

**Question 2**

What year was the New Haven Jazz Festival cancelled, which is why it is no longer one of the longest-running free outdoor festivals in the US?

**Question 3**

Who sponsors the New Haven Jazz Festival?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the concerts taking place on New Haven Green in July?

**Question 5**

What are the popular events on New Haven Green?

**Question 6**

When did the first jazz festival debut?

**Question 7**

How many people usually attend these music concerts?

**Question 8**

Which organisation supports the New Haven Jazz Festival after it was cancelled in 2007?

**Text number 40**

In addition to the jazz festival mentioned above, New Haven hosts the annual International Festival of Arts and Ideas. New Haven's Saint Patrick's Day parade, which began in 1842, is the oldest St. Patrick's Day parade in New England and draws the largest crowds of any one-day event in Connecticut. The Italian Festival of St. Andrew the Apostle has been held in historic Wooster Square every year since 1900. Other parishes in the city celebrate the Feast of St. Anthony of Padua and Carnival in honor of St. Bernadette Soubirous. Every April, New Haven celebrates Powder House Day on the New Haven Green to commemorate the city's participation in the Revolutionary War. The annual Wooster Square Cherry Blossom Festival commemorates the planting of 72 Yoshino Japanese Cherry Blossom trees in 1973 by the New Haven Historic Commission in partnership with the New Haven Parks Department and area residents. The festival now attracts well over 5,000 visitors. Film Fest New Haven has been held annually since 1995.

**Question 0**

Which annual arts festival is based in New Haven?

**Question 1**

What was the opening year of the St Patrick's Day parade in New Haven?

**Question 2**

Where in New Haven's historic district is the Italian Festival of St Andrew the Apostle held?

**Question 3**

Which annual festival on the New Haven Green commemorates New Haven's entry into the War of Independence?

**Question 4**

What year did Film Fest New Haven start?

**Question 5**

Which international arts festival is taking place in New Haven?

**Question 6**

How long has St Patrick's Day, one of the oldest and greatest traditions in the city, been celebrated?

**Question 7**

Which event has been held in Wooster Square every year since the early 1900s?

**Question 8**

Which organisation was responsible for planting several cherry blossom trees in 1973?

**Question 9**

How many people attend the Wooster Square Cheery Blossom Festival each year?

**Text number 41**

New Haven is home to the daily New Haven Register, the weekly "alternative" New Haven Advocate (run by the Tribune, which owns the Hartford Courant), the daily New Haven Independent and the monthly Grand News Community Newspaper. Downtown New Haven is covered by the in-depth civic news forum Design New Haven. The Register also supports the weekly entertainment publication PLAY Magazine. The city is also served by several student newspapers, including the Yale Daily News, the weekly Yale Herald, and the humor magazine Rumpus Magazine. WTNH Channel 8, Connecticut's ABC channel, WCTX Channel 59, the state's MyNetworkTV channel, and Connecticut Public Television station WEDY Channel 65, a PBS channel, broadcast from New Haven. All New York City news and sports stations broadcast to New Haven County.

**Question 0**

What is the name of the largest daily editorial newspaper in the city of New Haven?

**Question 1**

What is the civic news forum that specifically reports on downtown New Haven?

**Question 2**

Which New Haven weekly entertainment news source is behind The Register?

**Question 3**

Channel 65 is the home of New Haven, which PBS affiliate?

**Question 4**

Which New Haven-based weekly journal is published by Yale University?

**Question 5**

What is New Haven's main newspaper company?

**Question 6**

Which company owns another newspaper, the New Haven Advocate?

**Question 7**

The city has a monthly newspaper called ?

**Question 8**

What is the name of the tabloid that is run mainly by students?

**Question 9**

Does New Haven receive television coverage of news and sports from other cities?

**Text number 42**

New Haven has been home to professional sports since the 19th century, with baseball, basketball, football, hockey and soccer teams, including the New York Giants of the National Football League from 1973-1974, who played in the Yale Bowl. Throughout the second half of the 20th century, New Haven had a continuous roster of hockey and baseball teams that played at New Haven Arena (built 1926, demolished 1972), New Haven Coliseum (1972-2002) and Yale Field (1928-present).

**Question 0**

Which NFL team played in the Yale Bowl from 1973-1974?

**Question 1**

What year was the New Haven Arena demolished?

**Question 2**

Where did hockey and baseball teams play in the now-defunct New Haven venues in the second half of the 20th century?

**Question 3**

What year was Yale Airport established in New Haven?

**Question 4**

How long has the city of New Haven been known for its various sports teams?

**Question 5**

Which famous NFL team played in New Haven's own stadium in the 70s?

**Question 6**

There are a couple of sports stadiums in the city, one of which was demolished in the 20th century?

**Question 7**

Which stadiums are still hosting minor sports leagues today?

**Question 8**

How long has Yale Field been open and operating?

**Text number 43**

When John DeStefano Jr. became mayor of New Haven in 1995, he outlined a plan to make the city a major cultural and arts hub in the Northeast, including investments in programs and projects other than sports licenses. While nearby Bridgeport was building new sports facilities, the brutalist New Haven Coliseum was rapidly crumbling. The DeStefano administration felt that maintaining the venue was taking taxpayer money and closed the Coliseum in 2002; it was demolished in 2007. New Haven's last professional sports team, the New Haven County Cutters, left in 2009, but the DeStefano administration built the New Haven Athletic Center in 1998, an 8,700-square-meter (94,000-square-foot) indoor sports center with more than 3,000 seats. Built next to Hillhouse High School, the NHAC is used for New Haven Public Schools' athletic events, as well as major regional and statewide sporting events; it is the largest high school indoor athletic center in the state.

**Question 0**

Who was the mayor of New Haven in 1995 who sought to make the area a northeast hub for arts and culture?

**Question 1**

Which sports complex in New Haven was closed by the DeStefano administration in 2002?

**Question 2**

What was New Haven's last professional sports team?

**Question 3**

Which New Haven indoor sports complex was built by the DeStefano administration in 1998?

**Question 4**

What is the approximate seating capacity of the New Haven Sports Centre?

**Question 5**

Who was the mayor of the city in the late 90s?

**Question 6**

Due to heavy maintenance, DeStefano decided to close which important infrastructure in the city?

**Question 7**

When was the last time New Haven had a professional sports team?

**Question 8**

How big was the New Haven Sports Centre in terms of capacity?

**Text number 44**

New Haven hosted the 1995 Special Olympics World Championships; then President Bill Clinton spoke at the opening ceremony. The city is home to the Pilot Pen International tennis event, held every August at the Connecticut Tennis Center, one of the largest tennis courts in the world. Every two years, New Haven hosts "The Game" between Yale and Harvard, the second oldest college football competition in the country. New Haven hosts a number of road races, including the US 20-kilometer championship during the New Haven Road Race.

**Question 0**

What year will New Haven host the Special Olympic Summer World Games?

**Question 1**

Which major tennis event is held in New Haven every August?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the tennis complex in New Haven, one of the largest in the world?

**Question 3**

What is the nickname of the historic football competition between Yale and Harvard that takes place every year in New Haven?

**Question 4**

What year did New Haven become the host of the Special Olympics?

**Question 5**

The city also hosts a major international tennis event, when is it usually held?

**Question 6**

"The Game" is a special event focusing on what kind of competition between universities?

**Question 7**

What is the name of the major road race that spots within the city?

**Text number 45**

New Haven has many architectural landmarks from every major period and architectural style in American history. Many architects and architectural firms have made their mark on the city, including Ithiel Town and Henry Austin in the 19th century, and Cesar Pelli, Warren Platner, Kevin Roche, Herbert Newman and Barry Svigals in the 20th century. The Yale School of Architecture has contributed to this important sector of the city's economy. Cass Gilbert of the Beaux-Arts School designed New Haven's Union Station and the New Haven Free Public Library, and was commissioned to design City Beautiful in 1919. Frank Lloyd Wright, Marcel Breuer, Alexander Jackson Davis, Philip C. Johnson, Gordon Bunshaft, Louis Kahn, James Gamble Rogers, Frank Gehry, Charles Willard Moore, Stefan Behnisch, James Polshek, Paul Rudolph, Eero Saarinen and Robert Venturi have all designed buildings in New Haven. Yale's 1950s Ingalls Rink, designed by Eero Saarinen, was included in the 2007 America's Favorite Architecture list.

**Question 0**

Which two prominent 19th century architects lived in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which department at Yale University is considered to have contributed to the architectural aspect of the New Havens economy?

**Question 2**

Who is the prominent Beaux-Arts artist responsible for the design of both New Haven Union Station and the New Haven Public Library?

**Question 3**

What year did New Haven commission the City Beautiful plan?

**Question 4**

Who is responsible for the design of the Ingalls Rink at Yale University in New Haven?

**Question 5**

New Haven is also known for a very important architectural institute called?

**Question 6**

Which architect designed New Haven's free public library?

**Question 7**

What was the name of the building that made the 2007 American Architecture Favourite list?

**Text number 46**

The city has many historic sites, 59 of which are listed on the National Register of Historic Places. Nine of these are among the 60 US National Historic Landmarks in Connecticut. New Haven Green, one of the National Historic Landmarks, was established in 1638 and is home to three 19th century churches. Under one of the churches (called Center Church on-the-Green) is a 17th-century crypt that is open to visitors. Among the most famous burials are those of Benedict Arnold's first wife and President Rutherford B. Hayes' aunt and grandmother; Hayes visited the crypt as president in 1880. Yale University's old campus is adjacent to the Green and includes Connecticut Hall, Yale's oldest building and a National Historic Landmark. The Hillhouse Avenue area, listed on the National Register of Historic Places and also part of the Yale campus, has been called a pedestrian museum for its 19th century mansions and streetscape; Charles Dickens is said to have called Hillhouse Avenue "the most beautiful street in America" when he visited the city in 1868.

**Question 0**

How many New Haven properties are listed on the National Register of Historic Places?

**Question 1**

In 1868, which famous writer is said to have declared New Haven's Hillhouse Avenue "the most beautiful street in America"?

**Question 2**

Which of the three churches on the edge of New Haven Green has an infamous 17th century crypt?

**Question 3**

Which famous American traitor's first wife is buried in a 17th century crypt in New Haven Church on the edge of New Haven Green?

**Question 4**

Which Yale University building on the National Register of Historic Places is the oldest building on campus?

**Question 5**

How many historic sites are on the National Register of Historic Places in New Haven?

**Question 6**

What year was the famous New Haven Green founded?

**Question 7**

Which tourist site is located directly below New Haven Green?

**Question 8**

Yale University also has a historic site on campus called?

**Text number 47**

After the outbreak of the American Revolutionary War in 1776, the Connecticut colonial government ordered the construction of Black Rock Fort (built over an older 17th century fort) to protect the port of New Haven. In 1779, during the Battle of New Haven, British soldiers captured Black Rock Fort and burned the barracks to the ground. The fort was rebuilt by the federal government in 1807 (by order of the Thomas Jefferson administration) and renamed Fort Nathan Hale after the hero of the Revolutionary War who lived in New Haven. Fort Nathan Hale's guns successfully engaged British warships during the War of 1812. During the Civil War in 1863, a second Fort Hale was built next to the original Fort Hale, with bombproof bunkers and a moat to defend the town in case of a Southern attack on New Haven. The US Congress ceded the site to the state in 1921, and all three versions of the fort have been restored. The site is now listed on the National Register of Historic Places and is visited by thousands of visitors each year.

**Question 0**

Which structure was ordered to be built in New Haven in 1776 to protect the harbour at the start of the War of Independence?

**Question 1**

In what year did the British take over Black Rock Fort in New Haven and burn it down?

**Question 2**

After which Revolutionary War hero and New Haven native was Black Rock Fort renamed after its rebuilding in 1807?

**Question 3**

What two forts separated the second Fort Hale built in New Haven during the Civil War?

**Question 4**

In what year did the US Congress grant Connecticut ownership of the Fort Hale site in New Haven?

**Question 5**

Black Rock Fortress was built as a result of an event in the 1700s.

**Question 6**

The fortress was destroyed during the fighting and rebuilt in what year?

**Question 7**

Why was the fort renamed Fort Nathan Hale?

**Question 8**

During the Civil War, New Haven needed to be further fortified against another attack, which structure did the city build?

**Question 9**

The federal government transferred ownership of the fort to the State of Connecticut, what year was this?

**Text number 48**

Grove Street Cemetery is a National Historic Landmark located adjacent to the Yale campus and contains the graves of Roger Sherman, Eli Whitney, Noah Webster, Josiah Willard Gibbs, Charles Goodyear, Walter Camp and others. The cemetery is known for its large Egyptian gate. The Union League Club of New Haven building on Chapel Street is notable for being a historic Beaux-Arts building built on the site where Roger Sherman's home once stood; George Washington is known to have stayed in Sherman's apartment as president in 1789 (one of three times Washington visited New Haven in his lifetime).

**Question 0**

Which New Haven cemetery, located next to the Yale University campus, is designated a National Historic Landmark?

**Question 1**

What architectural style was the Grove Street Cemetery gate designed in?

**Question 2**

Which Beaux Arts building on New Haven's Chapel Street was built on the site believed to be the former home of Roger Sherman?

**Question 3**

Which former US President is believed to have stayed in New Haven at the home of Roger Sherman?

**Question 4**

Which prominent New Haven inventor, credited with inventing the cotton mill, is buried in Grove Street Cemetery?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the historic site next to the Yale campus?

**Question 6**

What is Grove Street Cemetery known for?

**Question 7**

Roger Sherman once lived on Chapel Street, and what is the building that sits on its site today?

**Question 8**

George Washington once visited the Sherman house, what year was that?

**Text number 49**

Lighthouse Point Park, the city-maintained public beach, was a popular tourist destination during the Roaring Twenties, attracting celebrities of the era such as Babe Ruth and Ty Cobb. The park is still popular with New Haven residents and features the Five Mile Point Lighthouse, built in 1847, and the Lighthouse Point Carousel, built in 1916. The Five Mile Point Lighthouse was decommissioned in 1877 when the Southwest Ledge Light was built at the mouth of the harbor and is still in use today. Both lighthouses and the carousel are listed on the National Register of Historic Places.

**Question 0**

Which New Haven public beach was the most popular tourist destination throughout the Roaring Twenties?

**Question 1**

Which famous professional baseball player is known to have visited Lighthouse Point Park in New Haven in the 1920s?

**Question 2**

Which major New Haven attraction, built in 1847, was located in Lighthouse Point Park?

**Question 3**

What year was the carousel built at Lighthouse Point in New Haven?

**Question 4**

What year was Five Mile Point Lighthouse decommissioned in connection with the construction of Southwest Ledge Lighthouse?

**Question 5**

Which popular tourist destination was particularly active in the 20th century?

**Question 6**

In 1847 a new landmark was built in the park, what exactly was it?

**Question 7**

After 1877 another lighthouse was built on the site of File Mile Point, what was its name?

**Question 8**

Is Southwest Ledge Light still in operation?

**Text number 50**

Union Station is also served by four Amtrak lines: the Northeast Regional and high-speed Acela Express to New York, Washington and Boston, the first and second busiest in the country; the New Haven-Springfield Line to Hartford and Springfield, Massachusetts; and the Vermonter to both Washington and Vermont, 24 km from the Canadian border. Amtrak also partners with United Airlines, providing service to all United Airlines-operated airports via Newark Airport (EWR), with Union Station (IATA: ZVE) as the origin or destination.

**Question 0**

How many Amtrak lines serve Union Station?

**Question 1**

Which lines from Union Station are the busiest in the US?

**Question 2**

What is the train service from Union Station to Hartford and Springfield, Massachusetts?

**Question 3**

With which airline does Amtrak code-share with for flights to, from or from Union Station at Newark Airport?

**Question 4**

Which train service from Union Station operates between Vermont and Washington D.C.?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the New Haven train station?

**Question 6**

What is the rail line connecting Connecticut, Massachusetts and Vermont?

**Question 7**

In addition, the train line is also connected to which airline's services?

**Text number 51**

New Haven Division buses run routes that were originally operated by trolleybus. Horse-drawn motor coaches began operating in New Haven in the 1860s, and by the mid-1890s all lines had become electric. In the 1920s and 1930s, some trolley lines were replaced by bus lines, and the last trolley line was converted to a bus line in 1948. The City of New Haven is currently giving early consideration to restoring light rail (light rail) service, which has been absent since the post-war era.

**Question 0**

What form of public transport preceded the current New Haven Division bus routes?

**Question 1**

In what decade did New Haven start using horse-drawn carriages?

**Question 2**

What improvements were made to New Haven's trolley lines in the mid-1890s?

**Question 3**

Which New Haven mass transit system abolished trolley service in the 1920s and 1930s?

**Question 4**

What year was New Haven's last trolley route converted into a bus route?

**Question 5**

What route do New Haven buses take?

**Question 6**

Before the 1900s, what was the form of public transport in the city?

**Question 7**

In what year were trolleys finally replaced by buses altogether?

**Question 8**

What other public transport ideas is the city currently considering?

**Text number 52**

The Farmington Canal Trail is a rail route that eventually runs from downtown New Haven to Northampton, Massachusetts. The scenic trail follows the route of the historic New Haven and Northampton Company and the Farmington Canal. Currently, a continuous 23-kilometer (14-mile) section of the trail runs from downtown through Hamden to Cheshire, allowing bicycling between New Haven and these suburbs. The trail is part of the East Coast Greenway, a proposed 4,800-kilometer (4,800-mile) bikeway that would connect every major city on the East Coast from Florida to Maine.

**Question 0**

Which rail line is planned to run between downtown New Haven and Northampton, Massachusetts?

**Question 1**

What historic path does the Farmington Canal Trail follow?

**Question 2**

Which canal is located next to the Historic New Haven and Northamption Trail?

**Question 3**

Which proposed bike path to connect all the major cities on the East Coast is part of the Farmington Canal Trail?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the path that runs from New Haven to eastern Massachusetts?

**Question 5**

Which means of transport can also be used to reach part of the line?

**Question 6**

Parts of the Farmington Canal are also part of what cycling route?

**Question 7**

How long is the East Coast Greenway route if it stretches from Maine to Florida?

**Text number 53**

In 2004, the city's first bike lane was added on Orange Street, connecting East Rock Park and the East Rock neighborhood to downtown. Since then, bike lanes have also been added on Howard Avenue, Elm St., Dixwell Avenue, Water Street, Clinton Avenue and State Street. The City has created recommended bicycle routes for getting around New Haven, including the Canal Trail and Orange Street lanes. A citywide bicycle map can be found here , and a bicycle map by region can be found here . Since late 2012, bike lanes have also been added in both directions on Dixwell Avenue for most of the street from downtown to the Hamden city limits, and on Howard Avenue from Yale New Haven Hospital to City Point.

**Question 0**

What year did Orange Street get its first bike lane in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which New Haven neighbourhood did the Orange Street bike lane connect to downtown?

**Question 2**

Besides Orange Street, what is the City of New Haven's recommended cycling route?

**Question 3**

What year were bike lanes added to Dixwell Avenue and Howard Avenue?

**Question 4**

When was the first bike lane created in New Haven?

**Question 5**

The lane extends from East Rock Park to which part of the city?

**Question 6**

What year will New Haven finally integrate bike lanes into most of the city?

**Question 7**

How can the direction of the cycle lanes be placed within the city?

**Text number 54**

New Haven is located at the intersection of coastal Interstate 95 - which provides access south and/or west to the west coast of Connecticut and New York, and east to the east coast of Connecticut, Rhode Island and eastern Massachusetts - and Interstate 91, which leads north to interior Massachusetts and Vermont and the Canadian border. I-95 is notorious for congestion, which increases with proximity to New York City; east of New Haven, it crosses the Quinnipiac River via the Pearl Harbor Memorial, or "Q Bridge," which is often a major bottleneck for traffic. Congestion on I-91 is relatively low, however, except at the I-95 and I-95 interchange during peak periods.

**Question 0**

Which major highway connects New Haven and New York City?

**Question 1**

Which of New Haven's main thoroughfares leads north to Massachusetts and Vermont and eventually to the Canadian border?

**Question 2**

Which New Haven River does 1-95 cross on the east side?

**Question 3**

What is the nickname given to the Pearl Harbor Memorial?

**Question 4**

Which New Haven highway is less congested during rush hour?

**Question 5**

New Haven is bordered by which part of the national highway?

**Question 6**

Which of the nearby highways takes you north to Massachusetts?

**Question 7**

Highway 95 is also notorious for what exactly?

**Question 8**

Which river crosses I-95?

**Question 9**

Is I-91 similar to I-95 in terms of bad traffic?

**Text number 55**

The Oak Street Connector (Connecticut Route 34) intersects I-91 at Exit 1, just south of the I-95/I-91 interchange, and runs northwest for a few blocks as an expressway to downtown before terminating on the highway. Wilbur Cross Parkway (Connecticut Route 15) runs parallel to I-95 on the west side of New Haven, turns north near town, and then runs north along I-91 through the outer edge of New Haven and Hamden, providing an alternative to the I-95/I-91 trip (limited to non-commercial vehicles). Route 15 in New Haven has the state's only highway tunnel (officially named the Heroes Tunnel), which runs through West Rock, home to West Rock Park and Three Judges Cave.

**Question 0**

Which downtown New Haven rapid transit line intersects with 1-91 at Exit 1?

**Question 1**

What is another name for Connecticut Highway 15, an alternative route to Highway 1-95/1/91?

**Question 2**

On which New Haven main street is Connecticut's only highway tunnel?

**Question 3**

What is the name of the highway tunnel on Route 15 in New Haven?

**Question 4**

Which part of New Haven does Route 15 run through?

**Question 5**

Oak Street Connect intersects with which highway?

**Question 6**

Which interstate is adjacent to Connecticut Route 15?

**Question 7**

What is the name of the only highway tunnel in Connecticut?

**Text number 56**

The city also has several major surface highways. U.S. Route 1 (Columbus Avenue, Union Avenue, Water Street, Forbes Avenue) runs east-west south of downtown, serving Union Station and leading out of town to Milford, West Haven, East Haven and Branford. The main roadway leading northwest from downtown is Whalley Avenue (partially designated Route 10 and Route 63), which leads to Westville and Woodbridge. There are two main roads to the north of Hamden, Dixwell Avenue and Whitney Avenue. To the northeast are Middletown Avenue (Route 17), which leads to North Haven's Montowese neighborhood, and Foxon Boulevard (Route 80), which leads to East Haven's Foxon neighborhood and the Town of North Branford. To the west is Route 34, which leads to the town of Derby. Other major intra-urban thoroughfares include Ella Grasso Boulevard (Route 10) west of downtown and College Street, Temple Street, Church Street, Elm Street and Grove Street in the downtown area.

**Question 0**

Which New Haven east-west artery serves Union Station?

**Question 1**

Which road leading northwest from downtown New Haven includes both Route 10 and Route 63 at different points?

**Question 2**

Which two main roads run north of New Haven towards Hamden?

**Question 3**

Which northeast New Haven street is labeled Route 17?

**Question 4**

Which western road leads from New Haven to Derby?

**Question 5**

In which direction does U.S. Route 1 run within the city?

**Question 6**

What is the name of the route that runs north from the centre?

**Question 7**

To which city does Western Route 34 lead?

**Question 8**

What is the other surface artery west of downtown New Haven?

**Text number 57**

The Port of New Haven is home to the Port of New Haven, a deep-water port with three berths to accommodate ships and barges, and facilities for handling bulk cargo. The port has the capacity to load 200 trucks per day from shore or through the loading docks. A rail link is available, with a dedicated shunting yard for rail traffic and a private siding for loading and unloading operations. Approximately 400,000 square feet (40,000 m2) of indoor storage and 50 acres (200,000 m2) of outdoor storage are available. There are also five jetty cranes with a capacity of 250 tons and 26 forklifts with a capacity of 26 tons.

**Question 0**

Which port is the Port of New Haven located in?

**Question 1**

How many trucks can the Port of New Haven load every day?

**Question 2**

What other activities are available at the Port of New Haven for unloading trucks in addition to land transport?

**Question 3**

How many square metres of indoor storage space is available at the Port of New Haven?

**Question 4**

How many acres does the Port of New Haven offer outdoor storage?

**Question 5**

The name of the Port of New Haven?

**Question 6**

How large is the port in terms of scale?

**Question 7**

How many forklift trucks are available in daily production?

**Question 8**

How many transport vehicles can the port accommodate?

**Text number 58**

The New Haven area is home to several medical facilities that are regarded as some of the best hospitals in the country. Yale-New Haven Hospital has four pavilions, including Yale-New Haven Children's Hospital and Smilow Cancer Hospital; Hospital of Saint Raphael is located several blocks north and touts its excellent cardiac emergency care program. Smaller downtown health facilities include Temple Medical Center, located downtown on Temple Street, Connecticut Mental Health Center/Park Street across from Y-NHH, and Hill Health Center, which serves the working-class Hill neighborhood. A large veterans hospital is located next door in West Haven. To the west is Milford Hospital in Milford and to the north is MidState Medical Center in Meriden.

**Question 0**

How many major medical centres are located in downtown New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which New Haven Medical Center Smilow Cancer Hospital is part of?

**Question 2**

Which New Haven hospital offers outstanding cardiac emergency care?

**Question 3**

How many pavilions are there at Yale -- New Haven Hospital?

**Question 4**

Which mental health facility is located in New Haven?

**Question 5**

How many pavilions are part of New Haven Hospital?

**Question 6**

Which hospital is located near the working class part of the city?

**Question 7**

Which hospital is located north of New Haven in Meriden?

**Question 8**

What is the name of a well-known hospital specialising in patients with young children?

**Question 9**

Which nearby town would you go to for war-related injuries?

**Text number 59**

Yale and New Haven are working to build a medical and biotechnology research hub in the city and Greater New Haven area, and are succeeding to some extent.The city, state and Yale jointly manage Science Park, a large site three blocks northwest of Yale's Science Hill campus. This multi-block area, roughly bounded by Mansfield Street, Division Street and Shelton Avenue, is the former site of 45 large factory buildings for Winchester and Olin Corporation. Currently, part of the site is extensive parking lots or abandoned structures, but there is also a large redeveloped and functioning building site (leased primarily by a private developer) that houses numerous Yale employees, financial services and biotech companies.

**Question 0**

Yale and New Haven are working together to make the area a research hub for which two industries?

**Question 1**

What large area of land is managed by Yale in partnership with New Haven and the state, and located three blocks from Yale's Science Hill campus?

**Question 2**

To which company did the Science Park multi-block area previously belong?

**Question 3**

In addition to Yale employees and financial services, what other industries can be found in the areas currently operating in the Science Park?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the collaboration between Yale University, the State of Connecticut and the City of New Haven?

**Question 5**

What was the Science Park area originally filled with?

**Question 6**

Although part of the Science Park site is occupied by several institutions and groups, what remains of Winchester and Olin?

**Text number 60**

Another biotech site is planned for the middle lane of Frontage Road, land cleared for the never-built Route 34 extension. In late 2009, a Pfizer drug testing clinic, a medical laboratory building serving Yale-New Haven Hospital and a multi-use building with parking, housing and office space were built on this corridor. The former SNET phone building at 300 George Street is currently being converted into laboratory space and has so far been successful in attracting biotech and medical companies.

**Question 0**

On which road median is New Haven planning to create a biotech district?

**Question 1**

What was originally planned to be built on the site of the proposed biotech site?

**Question 2**

Which major pharmaceutical company is currently operating a pharmaceutical clinic in New Haven on a new biotech corridor?

**Question 3**

Where is the former SNET building in New Haven currently being converted to attract new medical or biotech companies?

**Question 4**

Where is the second planned biotech site located?

**Question 5**

What was the former name of the place that is now a biotech building at 300 George Street?

**Question 6**

When did the first building open on the second biotech site?

**Text number 61**

The HVDC Cross Sound Cable static inverter plant is located near New Haven. The City of New Haven has three PureCell Model 400 fuel cells - one in New Haven Public Schools and the newly constructed Roberto Clemente School, one in the mixed-use 360 State Street building, and one at City Hall. According to Giovanni Zinn, the city's Office of Sustainability, each fuel cell could save the city up to $1 million in energy costs over a decade. The fuel cells were supplied by ClearEdge Power, formerly UTC Power.

**Question 0**

Which static inverter factory is located near New Haven?

**Question 1**

How many PureCell Model 400 fuel cells are there in New Haven?

**Question 2**

How much money will each PureCell Model 400 fuel cell save the City of New Haven in energy costs over a decade?

**Question 3**

Which company supplied New Haven with the fuel cells that are currently in use across the city?

**Question 4**

What kind of building does Cross Sound Cable have near New Haven?

**Question 5**

How many Model 400 fuel cells are located in New Haven?

**Question 6**

What was the former name of the company that supplied fuel cells to the city?

**Question 7**

What is the estimated budget saving of using a fuel cell system?

**Text number 62**

New Haven has been portrayed in several films. The scenes in All About Eve (1950) are set in the Taft Hotel (now the Taft Apartments) on the corner of College and Chapel Streets, and the history of New Haven theatres as Broadway 'audition venues' is depicted in Fred Astaire's The Band Wagon (1953). The city was fictionally depicted in Steven Spielberg's film Amistad (1997), which dealt with events surrounding the trial of rebel prisoners who opposed the rebellion. New Haven was also fictionalised in The Skulls (2000), which focused on conspiracy theories surrounding the Skull and Bones secret society in New Haven.

**Question 0**

Where in a former New Haven boarding house were scenes from the 1950s classic All About Eve filmed?

**Question 1**

Which Fred Astaire film depicts the reported history of New Haven theatres as Broadway "auditions"?

**Question 2**

In which Spielberg film was there a fictional account of the slave ship mutiny in New Haven?

**Question 3**

Which 2000 film explored the conspiracy theories surrounding the notorious Skull and Bone Society in New Haven?

**Question 4**

What is now the site of the old Taft Hotel in New Haven?

**Question 5**

What was the name of the film that was once shot at the corner of College and Chapel streets?

**Question 6**

The film Amistad refers to New Haven, who was the director of Amistad?

**Question 7**

In which film about conspiracy and conspiracy theories was New Haven involved?

**Text number 63**

Several recent films have been shot in New Haven, including Mona Lisa Smile (2003) directed by Julia Roberts, The Life Before Her Eyes (2007) directed by Uma Thurman and Indiana Jones and the Kingdom of the Crystal Skull (2008) directed by Steven Spielberg and starring Harrison Ford, Cate Blanchett and Shia LaBeouf. The Crystal Skull filming included an extensive chase sequence through the streets of New Haven. Several downtown streets were closed to traffic and 'modified' to look like the streets of 1957, the year the film is set. The film used 500 locals as extras. In Everybody's Fine (2009), Robert De Niro gets a close-up of what was thought to be a Denver train station, filmed at New Haven's Union Station.

**Question 0**

Which 2003 film starring Julia Roberts was shot in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Which Spielberg film series was filmed in New Haven in 2008?

**Question 2**

In what year were the streets of downtown New Haven redesigned for the filming of Crystal Skull?

**Question 3**

How many New Haven residents were involved as extras in the filming of the Crystal Skull?

**Question 4**

Where was Robert De Niro's 2009 film Everybody's Fine filmed in a New Haven landmark?

**Question 5**

What was the name of a popular film in New Haven that starred Julia Roberts?

**Question 6**

How many local citizens are in the latest Indiana Jones film?

**Question 7**

Union Station was part of the set of a film, what was the name of the film?

**Text number 64**

New Haven is repeatedly referred to by Nick Carraway in F. Scott Fitzgerald's literary classic The Great Gatsby and by C. Montgomery Burns, a fictional Yale alumnus and character in the Simpsons TV series. Alex Welch, a fictional character from New Haven, is the subject of the short story The Odd Saga of the American and a Curious Icelandic Flock. The television series Gilmore Girls is set (but not filmed) in New Haven and Yale University, as are scenes in the movie The Sisterhood of the Traveling Pants 2 (2008).

**Question 0**

In which Fitzgerald classic does the fictional protagonist repeatedly refer to New Haven?

**Question 1**

Who is the fictional Yale University alumni and former New Haven resident in The Simpsons?

**Question 2**

Which fictional New Haven resident appears in the short story The Odd Saga of the American and a Curious Iceland Flock?

**Question 3**

Where is the University of New Haven hypothetically set in The Gilmore Girls, at least in part?

**Question 4**

The city of New Haven was often referred to on several occasions by a character in a very popular novel called?

**Question 5**

The Simpsons has a character who was set to graduate from Yale University, can you guess his name?

**Question 6**

What does the Gilmore Girls TV series have to do with the city of New Haven?

**Text number 65**

One of Jim Morrison's most notorious arrests was made in New Haven while he was fronting the rock band The Doors. Morrison recalled a near riot and arrest at the New Haven Arena in 1967 in the lyrics of the song Peace Frog, which includes the line "...blood in the streets in the town of New Haven...". This was the first time a rock star had ever been arrested at a concert." The event is depicted in the film The Doors (1991), starring Morrison as Val Kilmer and filmed at the New Haven Arena, a concert hall in Los Angeles.

**Question 0**

Which infamous Doors frontman was once arrested in New Haven?

**Question 1**

Where was Jim Morrison arrested in New Haven?

**Question 2**

Which Morrison song pays tribute to his arrest in New Haven and mentions the city by name?

**Question 3**

Which 1991 film depicts Morrison's arrest in New Haven in 1979?

**Question 4**

A popular 70s rock band once played in New Haven, leading to an accident in which one of its members, a man named?

**Question 5**

What was the song that led to Morrison's arrest?

**Question 6**

Which film was inspired by an event that happened in 1967 in 1991?

**Question 7**

The Doors film was not shot in New Haven, but where did they shoot the reconstruction?

**Document number 251**

**Text number 0**

The region was part of Lorraine, part of the Holy Roman Empire, and was gradually incorporated into France in the 1700s, becoming one of the French provinces. The Calvinist factory republic of Mulhouse, known as the Stadtrepublik Mülhausen, became part of Alsace after its inhabitants voted on 4 January 1798. Alsace is often mentioned together with and as part of Lorraine and the former Duchy of Lorraine, because it was an important part of the Duchy and because the German-controlled Imperial Province (Elsass-Lorraine, 1871-1918) was disputed in the 19th and 20th centuries; France and Germany exchanged parts of Lorraine (including Alsace) four times in 75 years.

**Question 0**

When did the Stadtrepublik become part of Alsace?

**Question 1**

How many years did Germany hold Lorrain-Alscace?

**Question 2**

What other country ruled Alsace?

**Question 3**

How many times did Germany and France swap and take control of Alaska?

**Question 4**

When did the Holy Roman Empire begin?

**Question 5**

When was Lorraine voted as Alsace?

**Question 6**

What was the former Duchy of Alsace?

**Question 7**

How many times did Germany and the Holy Roman Empire exchange Lorraine?

**Question 8**

What is Alsace's middle name?

**Text number 1**

With the decline of the Roman Empire, Alsace became the territory of the Germanic Low Countries. The Alemanni were a farming people, and their Germanic language formed the basis of the dialects spoken along the Upper Rhine today (Alsatian, Alemannic, Swiss, Swiss). The Alemanni were defeated by the Clovis and Franks in the 5th century AD, culminating in the Battle of Tolbian, and Alsace became part of the Kingdom of Austrasia. Under the Merovingian successors of Clovis, the inhabitants were Christianised. Alsace remained under Frankish rule until the Frankish kingdom was formally dissolved after the 842 Oath of Strasbourg in 843 by the Treaty of Verdun; the grandsons of Charlemagne divided the kingdom into three parts. Alsace formed part of Central Francia, ruled by the youngest grandson, Lothar I. Lothar died early in 855, and his kingdom was divided into three parts. The part known as Lotharingia or Lorraine was given to Lothar's son. The remainder was divided between Lothar's brothers Charles the Bald (ruler of the West Frankish kingdom) and Louis the Saxon (ruler of the East Frankish kingdom). The Kingdom of Lotharingia was short-lived, however, as it became, after the Treaty of Ribemont in 880, the Variscan Duchy of Lorraine in East Francia. Alsace was merged with the other Low Countries east of the Rhine to form the ancestral duchy of Swabia.

**Question 0**

Which three areas make up the Upper Rhine?

**Question 1**

Who forced Christianity on the inhabitants of Alsace?

**Question 2**

What happened in the Treaty of Verdun?

**Question 3**

What year did Lothar die?

**Question 4**

Which languages were common in the Roman Empire?

**Question 5**

When did the Alemanni conquer the Franks?

**Question 6**

Who did the Alemanni ally with to defeat Clovis?

**Question 7**

Who was the leader of the Franks?

**Question 8**

When was Lothar I born?

**Text number 2**

Around the same time, in the surrounding areas, there were repeated dissolutions and reorganisations between various secular and ecclesiastical feudal principalities, a common process in the Holy Roman Empire. Alsace experienced great prosperity in the 1200s and 1300s under the Hohenstaufen emperors. Frederick I established Alsace as a province (procuratio, not provincia), ruled by ministeriales, non-noble officials. The idea was that such men would be easier to deal with and less likely to alienate the fief from the crown through their own greed. The province had one provincial court (Landgericht) and a central administration, based in Hagenau. Frederick II appointed a bishop of Strasbourg to administer Alsace, but the Habsburg Count Rudolf, who had received his rights from Frederick II's son Conrad IV, challenged the bishop's authority. Strasbourg began to grow into the most populous and commercially important city in the region. In 1262, after a long struggle with the ruling bishops, its inhabitants were granted the status of a free imperial city. Strasbourg became the political and economic centre of the region, being a stopping point on the trade route between Paris, Vienna and Orient, and a port on the Rhine route linking southern Germany and Switzerland with the Netherlands, England and Scandinavia. Cities such as Colmar and Hagenau also began to grow in economic importance, and were granted a form of autonomy in the "Decapolis" or "Decapolis", which consisted of ten free cities.

**Question 0**

What was considered common practice during the Holy Roman Empire?

**Question 1**

During whose reign did Elsass flourish?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the Provincial Court of Alsace?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the route connecting Germany, Switzerland, the Netherlands and England?

**Question 4**

Which other two cities also started to grow economically?

**Question 5**

Which emperors were responsible for the increased fragmentation?

**Question 6**

In which century did Frederick I make Alsace a province?

**Question 7**

Which noble class ruled Alsace?

**Question 8**

What was the name of the central administration in Hagenau?

**Question 9**

Who questioned Count Rudolph's authority?

**Text number 3**

Like much of Europe, Alsace's prosperity ended in the 13th century as a result of several harsh winters, poor harvests and black death. The Jews were blamed for these hardships, leading to pogroms in 1336 and 1339. In 1349, the Jews of Alsace were accused of poisoning wells with plague, leading to the massacre of thousands of Jews during the Strasbourg pogrom. The Jews were then banned from settling in the city. Another natural disaster was the 1356 Rhine Rift earthquake, one of the worst in Europe, which left Basel in ruins. Prosperity returned to Alsace under Habsburg rule during the Renaissance.

**Question 0**

When did Alsace lose its wealth?

**Question 1**

Why is the recession in Alsace a prosperous region?

**Question 2**

Which group of people was wrongly blamed for all the disasters that hit the region?

**Question 3**

What were the Jews accused of in Alsace?

**Question 4**

When did the Rhine Rift earthquake occur?

**Question 5**

What year were the Jews blamed for the bad harvest?

**Question 6**

Which regime destroyed Alsace in the late 1300s?

**Question 7**

When was Basel rebuilt?

**Question 8**

Which earthquake occurred in 1336?

**Question 9**

Who was acquitted of the Rhine Rift earthquake?

**Text number 4**

The central power of the Holy Roman Empire had begun to weaken after years of imperial adventures in the Italian lands, often ceding the hegemony of Western Europe to France, which had long since centralised power. France began its aggressive policy of expansion eastwards, first to the Rhône and Meuse rivers, and once these frontiers had been reached, it sought the Rhine. In 1299, the French proposed a marriage between Blanche, sister of Philip IV of France, and Rudolph, son of Albert I of Germany, and Alsace was to have been a dowry; however, the agreement never materialised. In 1307, the first town of Belfort was founded by the Counts of Montbéliard. In the following century, France was crushed militarily by the Hundred Years' War, which put a stop for a time to any efforts in this direction. After the end of the war, France was again free to pursue its efforts to reach the Rhine, and in 1444 the French army appeared in Lorraine and Alsace. It set up a winter camp, demanded the subjugation of Metz and Strasbourg and attacked Basle.

**Question 0**

What were the names of the first two rivers used aggressively by France as it expanded eastwards?

**Question 1**

Between which two people did the French propose marriage?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the period when France was crushed militarily?

**Question 3**

What year did the French arrive in Alsace?

**Question 4**

To whom did Western Europe give up its land?

**Question 5**

Which rivers did Italy reach first?

**Question 6**

Who was successfully married in 1299?

**Question 7**

When did the earls map Alsace?

**Question 8**

When did the French reach the Rhine?

**Text number 5**

In 1469, the Archduke of Austria Sigismund sold Upper Alsace to Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, after the Treaty of St. Omer. Although Charles was the nominal owner of the land, taxes were paid to the Holy Roman Emperor Frederick III. The latter was able to take advantage of this tax and the dynastic marriage to regain full control of Upper Alsace (excluding the free towns, but including Belfort) in 1477, when it became part of the hereditary lands of the Habsburg family, who were also the rulers of the Empire. In 1515, the town of Mulhouse joined the Swiss Confederation, where it remained until 1798.

**Question 0**

In what year was the Archduke of Upper Elsass sold to Sigismund?

**Question 1**

Why did Frederick III use tax and marriage in Upper Alsace?

**Question 2**

When did Mulhouse join the Swiss Confederation?

**Question 3**

What did Charles the Bold sell Archduke Sigismund?

**Question 4**

When did Frederick III become Holy Emperor?

**Question 5**

What is the name of one free city?

**Question 6**

What was the town of Mulhouse annexed to in 1798?

**Question 7**

When did Belfort join the Swiss Confederation?

**Text number 6**

At the time of the Protestant Reformation in the 1500s, Strasbourg was a prosperous community, and its inhabitants embraced Protestantism in 1523. Martin Bucer was a major Protestant reformer in the region. The Roman Catholic Habsburgs opposed his efforts and tried to stamp out heresy in Upper Alsace. As a result, Alsace became a mosaic of Catholic and Protestant regions. On the other hand, Mömpelgard (Montbéliard) in south-western Alsace, which had belonged to the Count of Württemberg since 1397, remained a Protestant enclave in France until 1793.

**Question 0**

When did Strasbourg adopt Protestantism?

**Question 1**

Who was known as a reformer in Strasbourg?

**Question 2**

What were the names of the two groups that strongly dominated Alsace during this period?

**Question 3**

When was Martin Bucer born?

**Question 4**

When did Strasbourg convert to Catholicism?

**Question 5**

What is south-west of Mompelgard?

**Question 6**

Which famous reformer was from Mompelgard?

**Question 7**

What was the predominant religion in Alsace?

**Text number 7**

This situation prevailed until 1639, when France conquered most of Alsace to keep it out of the hands of the Spanish Habsburgs, who wanted a free road to their valuable and rebellious possessions in the Spanish Netherlands. Beset by their enemies and in order to gain a free hand in Hungary, the Habsburgs sold their Sundgau territory (mostly in Upper Alsace) in 1646 to France, which had occupied it, for 1.2 million thalers. When hostilities ended in 1648 with the Peace of Westphalia, most of Alsace was recognised as part of France, although some towns remained independent. The treaty provisions for Alsace were complex; although the King of France was granted sovereignty, the rights and customs of the inhabitants were largely retained. France maintained the customs frontier along the Vosges mountains where it had been, and Alsace's economic orientation towards its German-speaking neighbours was even stronger. German continued to be used in local government, schools and the (Lutheran) University of Strasbourg, which continued to receive students from other German-speaking countries. The Edict of Fontainebleau of 1685, by which the King of France ordered the suppression of French Protestantism, was not applied in Alsace. However, France did make efforts to promote Catholicism; for example, Strasbourg Cathedral, which had been Lutheran from 1524 to 1681, was returned to the Catholic Church. Compared with the rest of France, however, Alsace was characterised by a climate of religious tolerance.

**Question 0**

When did the Habsburgs sell the Sundgau region to France?

**Question 1**

How much did France pay Sundgau?

**Question 2**

In 1685, the King of France ordered in the Edict of Fontainebleau what was to be done?

**Question 3**

When did the Spanish conquer Alsace?

**Question 4**

How much did the Habsburgs buy Sundgau for?

**Question 5**

When was the University of Strasbourg founded?

**Question 6**

What was the name of the treaty between the French and the Germans?

**Question 7**

When was Strasbourg Cathedral built?

**Text number 8**

1789 brought the French Revolution and the first division of Alsace into the Haut and Bas-Rhin departments. Alsace played an active role in the French Revolution. On 21 July 1789, on hearing the news of the Bastille's storming of Paris, a mob stormed Strasbourg City Hall, forcing the city authorities to flee and symbolically putting an end to the feudal system in Alsace. In 1792, in Strasbourg, Rouget de Lisle composed the revolutionary marching song "La Marseillaise" (as the marching song of the Army of the Rhine), which later became the French anthem. "La Marseillaise was first played in April of that year before the Mayor of Strasbourg, Philippe-Frédéric de Dietrich. Some of the most famous generals of the French Revolution were also from Alsace, notably Kellermann, the victor of Valmy, Kléber, who led the army of the French Republic in Vendée, and Westermann, who also fought in Vendée.

**Question 0**

In what year did the Alsace allocation take place?

**Question 1**

Which song was first played in Strasbourg and later became the French national anthem?

**Question 2**

Who led the armies of the French Republic at Vendee and Westermann?

**Question 3**

Which department did Rouget de Lisle belong to?

**Question 4**

Which song did Philippe-Frederic de Dietrich write?

**Question 5**

What was the name of the mayor who had to flee in July 1789?

**Question 6**

Who led the crowd that stormed the town of Strasburg?

**Question 7**

Where did Rouget de Lisle lead the armies of the French Republic to victory?

**Text number 9**

At the same time, some Alsacians were opposed to the Jacobins and sympathetic to the invading forces of Austria and Prussia, which were trying to crush the budding revolutionary republic. Many Sundgau residents made 'pilgrimages', for example to the Swiss monastery of Mariastein, near Basel, for baptisms and weddings. When the French Rhine Revolutionary Army won, tens of thousands fled eastward to escape it. When they were later allowed to return (in some cases as late as 1799), they often found their land and homes confiscated. These circumstances led hundreds of families to migrate to the liberated lands of the Russian Empire in 1803-4 and again in 1808. A moving account of this event, based on Goethe's personal testimony, is found in his long poem Hermann and Dorothea.

**Question 0**

Which two countries are trying to crush the nascent republic?

**Question 1**

What had happened to most of the people who fled Sungau during the war when they were allowed to return home?

**Question 2**

What was the title of Goethe's poem?

**Question 3**

Who was sympathetic to the Jacobins?

**Question 4**

Where did the Austrian and Prussian armies make pilgrimages?

**Question 5**

When did the French Revolutionary Army win?

**Question 6**

When was Hermann and Dorothea published?

**Question 7**

How many inhabitants made pilgrimages?

**Text number 10**

The population grew rapidly, from 800 000 in 1814 to 914 000 in 1830 and 1 067 000 in 1846. The combination of economic and demographic factors led to hunger, housing shortages and a lack of jobs for young people. It is therefore not surprising that people left Alsace not only for Paris - where the Alsace community was growing in numbers and included famous members such as Baron Haussmann - but also further afield, such as Russia and the Austrian Empire, to take advantage of new opportunities there: Austria had conquered Eastern European countries from the Ottoman Empire and offered generous conditions to the emigrants as a means of consolidating its grip on new territories. Many Alsatians also began to sail to the United States and settled in many areas between 1820 and 1850. In 1843 and 1844, sailing ships arrived in New York harbour with Alsace immigrant families. Some settled in Illinois, many to farm or seek success in commercial enterprises: for example, the sailing ships Sully (May 1843) and Iowa (June 1844) brought families to settle in northern Illinois and northern Indiana. Some Alsace immigrants played a significant role in the economic development of 19th century America. Others ventured into Canada and settled in southwestern Ontario, particularly Waterloo County.

**Question 0**

What was the population of Alsace in 1846?

**Question 1**

What were the reasons why people started to leave Alsace?

**Question 2**

Between what years did the Alatians begin to sail towards the United States?

**Question 3**

What was the population of Paris in 1846?

**Question 4**

When did Baron Haussmann move to Paris?

**Question 5**

Which famous member of the Alsace family lived in Russia?

**Question 6**

What was the name of the ship that brought the Alsatians to the United States in 1820?

**Question 7**

How were Canadian settlers known?

**Text number 11**

By 1790, the Jewish population of Alsace was around 22 500, or about 3% of the population of the province. They were very segregated and subject to long-standing anti-Semitic regulations. They retained their customs, Yiddish language and historical traditions in their close-knit ghettos; they followed the Talmudic law enforced by their rabbis. Jews were forbidden to enter most cities and instead lived in villages. They concentrated on trade, services and especially money lending. They financed about a third of the mortgages in Alsace. Official tolerance increased during the French Revolution, and in 1791 the Jews were completely emancipated. However, local anti-Semitism also increased, and Napoleon turned hostile in 1806 by imposing a one-year moratorium on all debts owed to Jews. In the 1830s and 1870s, most Jews moved to the cities, where they integrated and acculturated as anti-Semitism declined sharply. By 1831 the state began to pay salaries to official rabbis, and in 1846 the special statutory oath for Jews was abolished. Local anti-Semitic riots occurred occasionally, especially during the 1848 revolution. The incorporation of Alsace into Germany between 1871 and 1918 reduced anti-Semitic violence.

**Question 0**

What was the population of Alsace in 1790?

**Question 1**

The Jews were banned from the towns of Alsace, where were they forced to settle?

**Question 2**

what did the Jews get from the French in 1791?

**Question 3**

Which country was Alsace annexed to between 1871 and 1918?

**Question 4**

Who reduced anti-Semitism in 1806?

**Question 5**

What was the number of Jews in 1831?

**Question 6**

What proportion of the population was anti-Semitic in 1790?

**Question 7**

Who did Elsass divorce in 1871?

**Question 8**

What was the primary role of the rabbis?

**Text number 12**

France started the Franco-Prussian War (1870-71), which was won by the Kingdom of Prussia and other German states. The end of the war led to the unification of Germany. Otto von Bismarck incorporated Alsace and North Lorraine into the new German Empire in 1871; unlike the other German federated states, which had their own governments, the new imperial territory of Alsace-Lorraine was under the exclusive authority of the Emperor and directly administered by the imperial government in Berlin. Some 100 000 to 130 000 Alsatians (out of a total population of about one and a half million) decided to remain French citizens and leave the Alsace-Lorraine Empire, many of whom settled in French Algeria as Pieds-Noirs. It was only in 1911 that Alsace-Lorraine was granted a degree of autonomy, which was also reflected in its flag and anthem (Alsässisches Fahnenlied). However, the Saverne Incident of 1913 showed that this new tolerance of Alsace's identity was limited.

**Question 0**

Which country defeated the French in 1871?

**Question 1**

Which companies merged after the end of the war?

**Question 2**

Who annexed Alsace to the new German Empire in 1871?

**Question 3**

Which war did Prussia start in 1870?

**Question 4**

Who allied with France against Germany?

**Question 5**

What was the population of Lorraine?

**Question 6**

Who granted autonomy to Alsace-Lorraine in 1911?

**Question 7**

What does Alsatian Fahnenlied mean in French?

**Text number 13**

During the First World War, many Alsatians served as sailors in the Kaiserliche Marine to avoid land battles between the brothers and took part in the naval rebellions that led to the abdication of the Emperor in November 1918, leaving Alsace-Lorraine without a nominal head of state. The sailors returned home and tried to establish a republic. While Jacques Peirotes, then deputy Landrat of Alsace-Lorraine and newly elected mayor of Strasbourg, proclaimed the dissolution of the German Empire and the birth of the French Republic, the self-appointed government of Alsace-Lorraine declared its independence under the name 'Republic of Alsace-Lorraine'. French troops invaded Alsace less than two weeks later to suppress the workers' strikes and remove the newly established Soviets and revolutionaries from power. Upon the arrival of the French soldiers, many Alsatian and local Prussian-German administrators and bureaucrats rejoiced at the restoration of order (as shown and described in detail in the reference video below). Although US President Woodrow Wilson had insisted that the region was legally self-governing, since its constitution stated that it was bound by the exclusive authority of the Emperor and not by the German state, France did not tolerate the referendum that the League of Nations had granted to some East German territories at the time, because the French considered the Alsatians to be French compatriots freed from German rule. Germany ceded the territory to France in the Treaty of Versailles.

**Question 0**

What did the powers that be do to avoid conflict with each other during the First World War?

**Question 1**

Who was the mayor who declared Alsace-Lorraine independent from the German Empire?

**Question 2**

Who invaded Alsace just two weeks after it declared independence?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the treaty under which Germany ceded land to France?

**Question 4**

During which war were Alsatians primarily ground troops?

**Question 5**

What was the name of the emperor in 1918?

**Question 6**

How long did it take from the US to reach Alsace?

**Question 7**

Who led the League of Nations?

**Question 8**

By what treaty was Alsace given to Germany?

**Text number 14**

Germany occupied Alsace-Lorraine in 1940 during the Second World War. Although Germany never formally annexed Alsace-Lorraine, it was incorporated into the Greater German Reich, which was reorganised into the Reichsgaue. Alsace was merged with Baden and Lorraine with Saarland into the planned Westmark. During the war, 130,000 young men from Alsace and Lorraine were recruited against their will (malgré-nous) into the German army and in some cases into the Waffen SS. Some of the latter were involved in war crimes, such as the massacre at Oradour-sur-Glane. Most of them died on the Eastern Front. The few who escaped fled to Switzerland or joined the Resistance. In July 1944, 1500 Malgré women were released from Soviet captivity and sent to Algiers, where they joined the Free French forces.

**Question 0**

In which year did Germany occupy Alsace-Lorraine?

**Question 1**

How many men from Alsace and Lorraine were forced into the German army during the Second World War?

**Question 2**

Which group of people did the Russians liberate in Algeria?

**Question 3**

When did Germany formally annex Alsace?

**Question 4**

Baden and Saarland merged to form what?

**Question 5**

How many men from Alsace alone were recruited into the German army?

**Question 6**

Which massacre involved 130 000 men?

**Question 7**

How many soldiers managed to join the resistance?

**Text number 15**

Alsace is one of the most conservative regions in France. It is one of only two regions in France where the conservative right won the 2004 regional elections and thus controls the Alsace Regional Council. Conservative leader Nicolas Sarkozy got his best result in Alsace (over 65%) in the second round of the French presidential elections in 2007. The Regional Council is chaired by Philippe Richert, a member of the League of the People's Movement, who was elected in the 2010 regional elections. The region's frequently changing role throughout history has left its mark on contemporary politics, with a particular interest in issues of national identity. Alsace is also one of the most pro-EU regions in France. It was one of the few French regions to vote in favour of the European Constitution in 2005.

**Question 0**

Which Conservative leader got the highest score in the second round of the 2007 election?

**Question 1**

Who is the chair of the RAC?

**Question 2**

Alsace was one of the few that voted for this French measure, what was it?

**Question 3**

What was Philippe Richert's score in Alsace?

**Question 4**

Which constitution was voted on in 2010?

**Question 5**

What was one of the few regions that voted against the European Constitution?

**Question 6**

Alsace is anti-what?

**Question 7**

Who was elected President of the Alsace Regional Council in 2007?

**Text number 16**

The majority of the population of Alsace is Roman Catholic, but the region's German heritage also means that there is a significant Protestant community: today, EPCAAL (the Lutheran Church) is the second largest Protestant church in France, which also forms an administrative union (UEPAL) with the much smaller Calvinist EPRAL. In contrast to the rest of France, local legislation in Alsace-Moselle still respects the Concordat of 1801 and its organic articles, which provide for public subsidies for the Roman Catholic, Lutheran and Calvinist churches and for Jewish synagogues; religious education is compulsory in public schools. This departure from the French majority policy is due to the fact that the region was part of Imperial Germany when the 1905 law on the separation of church and state was introduced (for a fuller history, see Alsace-Lorraine). Disputes regularly arise over the appropriateness of this legal arrangement and the exclusion of other religions from it.

**Question 0**

Which group or religion dominates the population of Aslatia?

**Question 1**

What other major religions are also present in Alsace because of the German presence?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the union created by the second largest Protestant church in France?

**Question 3**

What is the name of the second largest Roman Catholic Church?

**Question 4**

When was the Calvinist EPRAL founded?

**Question 5**

Which religion does not receive public subsidies?

**Question 6**

When did Alsace secede from Imperial Germany?

**Question 7**

What did Germany save in 1905?

**Text number 17**

After the Protestant Reformation promoted by the local reformer Martin Bucer, the principle of cuius regio, eius religio led to a certain religious diversity in the highlands of northern Alsace. Landowners, who as 'local lords' had the right to decide which religion was allowed on their land, wanted to attract residents from the more attractive lowland areas to live and develop their property. Many accepted Catholics, Lutherans, Calvinists, Jews and Anabaptists without discrimination. Multi-church villages sprang up, particularly in the Alsace chiefdom. Alsace became one of the regions of France with a thriving Jewish community and the only region with a significant Anabaptist population. The schism of the Amish led by Jacob Amman from the Mennonites occurred in 1693 in Sainte-Marie-aux-Mines. The strongly Catholic Louis XIV tried in vain to expel them from Alsace. When Napoleon imposed conscription without religious exemption, most emigrated to the American continent.

**Question 0**

What were the names of the landowners who had the right to decide which religion was allowed on their land?

**Question 1**

Which groups or religions were highly accepted in Alsace?

**Question 2**

Which group did Louis XIV try to push out of Alsace?

**Question 3**

When did the Anabaptists split?

**Question 4**

Who tried to remove the Jews from Alsace?

**Question 5**

What was Napoleon's primary religion?

**Question 6**

What was the name of the Amish reformer?

**Question 7**

What was the decree issued by Louis XIV that prompted many to move to the United States?

**Text number 18**

The recognition of the flag of Alsace is disputed. The authentic historical flag is the Rot-un-Wiss ; red and white are commonly found on the coats of arms of the cities of Alsace (Strasbourg, Mulhouse, Sélestat...) and many Swiss cities, especially in the Basle region. The Hesse region of Germany uses a flag similar to that of Rot-un-Wiss. Because it emphasises the region's Germanic roots, it was replaced in 1949 by a new "Union Jack-like" flag representing the union of two départements. However, it has no real historical significance. It has since been replaced by a slightly different flag, also representing the two departments. Because of the 'Frenchification' of the region, Paris has not recognised the flag of Rot-un-Wiss. Some enthusiastic statesmen have called it a Nazi invention, although its origins date back to the 11th century and the red and white flag of Gérard de Lorraine (also known as d'Alsace). Still considered by the majority of the population and the departmental parliaments as the true historical symbol of the region, the Rot-un-Wiss flag has been widely used in demonstrations against the creation of a new "super-region" uniting Champagne-Ardennes, Lorraine and Alsace, namely the Statue of Liberty of Colmar.

**Question 0**

What is the name of the historical flag of Alsace?

**Question 1**

What replaced the German flag, which was similar to the Rot-un-Wiss?

**Question 2**

What does the "Union Jack-like" flag represent?

**Question 3**

Which French city did not recognise the flag of Rot-un-Wiss?

**Question 4**

Who created the flag that resembles a Union Jacket?

**Question 5**

The Union Jack flag represented the union of which two departments?

**Question 6**

Who hasn't recognised a flag like the Union Jack?

**Question 7**

Which flag is of French origin?

**Question 8**

When did the protests against the super zone take place?

**Text number 19**

From the annexation of Alsace to France in the 17th century and the language policy of the French Revolution until 1870, French language skills in Alsace increased considerably. With the educational reforms of the 19th century, the middle classes began to speak and write French well. However, the French language never managed to win over the masses, the vast majority of whom still spoke and wrote in their dialect of German (which today would be called "standard German")[citation needed].

**Question 0**

When did the annexation of Alsace take place?

**Question 1**

What did this lead to with the educational reforms in Alsace in the 19th century?

**Question 2**

Which dialects of German are being referred to?

**Question 3**

When did French become the most widely spoken language?

**Question 4**

When did Germany annex Alsace?

**Question 5**

When did writing French in the middle class go out of fashion?

**Question 6**

During which revolution did the standard German system become a policy?

**Question 7**

What helped German literacy in the 19th century?

**Text number 20**

During the restoration of Germany (1940-1945), High German was reintroduced as the language of instruction. The population was forced to speak German, and 'French' surnames were Germanised. After the Second World War, the 1927 decree was not reinstated, and the teaching of German in primary schools was suspended by a temporary headmaster's decree, with the aim of giving French a chance to regain its lost status. However, the teaching of German became a major issue as early as 1946. After the Second World War, the French government, in line with its traditional language policy, continued its campaign to suppress the use of German as part of a wider campaign of francophoneisation.

**Question 0**

In which period of time did the re-unification of Germany take place?

**Question 1**

What did French families have to do during the German reconquest?

**Question 2**

When did the suspension of German teaching in schools take place?

**Question 3**

When did teaching German stop being a problem?

**Question 4**

What did the French government force French surnames to change?

**Question 5**

What became the language of education in 1927?

**Question 6**

What did the French do that went against their typical language policy?

**Question 7**

For how long was the campaign running?

**Text number 21**

It was not until 9 June 1982, when the Vice-Chancellor of the Académie Pierre Deyon published the Circulaire sur la langue et la culture régionales en Alsace (Memorandum on the regional language and culture in Alsace), that the teaching of German in Alsace primary schools really began to take on a more official status. A ministerial memorandum of 21 June 1982, known as the Circulaire Savary, introduced a three-year period of financial support for the teaching of regional languages in schools and universities. However, this memorandum was implemented rather loosely.

**Question 0**

What was the name of the memorandum that made German language teaching in Alsace schools more official?

**Question 1**

What is the title of the memorandum of 21 June 1982?

**Question 2**

What Circulair Savary introduced?

**Question 3**

When was the Vice-Chancellor elected?

**Question 4**

How long did it take to introduce Circulair Savary?

**Question 5**

Who wrote Circulaire Savary?

**Question 6**

What was delivered with high expectations?

**Question 7**

What was the second name of the Vice-Chancellor of the Academy?

**Text number 22**

Both Alsatian German and standard German were banned from public life for a time (including street and town names, official administration and the education system). Although this ban has long since been lifted and street signs are now often bilingual, the language and culture of Alsace-Lorraine is now very much French-speaking. Today, few young people speak Alsatian, although there are still one or two enclaves in Sundgau where some older residents do not speak French and where Alsatian is still the mother tongue. The Alemannic German family has survived on the opposite bank of the Rhine, in Baden and especially in Switzerland. Although French is the main language of the region, the Alsace dialect is nevertheless heavily influenced by German and other languages such as Yiddish in terms of phonology and vocabulary.

**Question 0**

Which two dialects were banned from public life?

**Question 1**

What did the denial of these two dialects entail?

**Question 2**

Even though Aslación is rarely used nowadays, in which region is Aslación still used as a mother tongue?

**Question 3**

Which languages other than French and German are part of the current dialect of Aslación French?

**Question 4**

Which language is currently banned?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the area where Yiddish is mainly spoken?

**Question 6**

Which region is predominantly Standard German in terms of culture?

**Question 7**

Which German language do most young people speak?

**Question 8**

What is the primary influence of Yiddish?

**Text number 23**

According to the Constitution of the Fifth Republic, the official language of the Republic is exclusively French. However, the French government has recognised Alsace as one of the other regional languages on the list of official languages of France. A 1999 INSEE survey counted 548 000 adult speakers of Alsatian in France, making it the second most widely spoken regional language in the country (after Oxitan). However, like all French regional languages, the spread of Alsatian is declining. Alsace is spoken by 39% of the adult population, but only one in four children speak it, and only one in ten children use it regularly.

**Question 0**

What does the French Constitution say about the Aslace language?

**Question 1**

How many adult speakers speak Alsatian according to the INSEE 1999 survey?

**Question 2**

With the decline of the Alsatian language, what is the percentage of children using the language regularly today?

**Question 3**

Where is it stated that Alsace is an official language?

**Question 4**

How many adult speakers of Oxitan are there?

**Question 5**

What percentage of adults did not speak the Alsatian language in 1999?

**Question 6**

How many children speak French?

**Question 7**

What language do 548 000 children speak?

**Text number 24**

The gastronomic symbol of the region is undoubtedly the Choucroute, a local variety of sauerkraut. The Alsatian word for 'sauerkraut' is sûrkrût, as in other south-west German dialects, and means 'sauerkraut', as in its standard German equivalent. This word was incorporated into French as choucroute. To make it, the cabbage is finely chopped, layered with salt and juniper and left to ferment in wooden barrels. Sauerkraut can be served with poultry, pork, sausages or even fish. Traditionally, sauerkraut is served with Strasbourg sausages or frankfurters, bacon, smoked pork or smoked Morteau or Montbéliard sausages or other pork products. It is often accompanied by roasted or steamed potatoes or dumplings.

**Question 0**

What does sauerkraut mean in Alsatian?

**Question 1**

What can you serve sauerkraut with?

**Question 2**

What is sauerkraut usually served with in Alsace?

**Question 3**

Where does the word Choucroute come from?

**Question 4**

What is the dialect of the Alsatian word for sauerkraut?

**Question 5**

Which meats should not be served with sauerkraut?

**Question 6**

What does choucroute mean?

**Question 7**

Where are pork products left to ferment?

**Text number 25**

"Alsatia", the Latin form of the name of Alsace, has long since been translated into English as "outlaw place" or "place without jurisdiction" - because the English considered Alsace as such. Until the 20th century, it was used as a term for a shabby market place 'protected by old custom and the independence of its patrons'. As of 2007, the word is still used in the English and Australian courts in the sense of a place where the law does not extend: 'In establishing the Serious Organised Crime Agency, the State has sought to create Alsatia - an executive area free from judicial control', Lord Justice Sedley in UMBS v. SOCA 2007.

**Question 0**

What is the meaning of the name Aslatia in English?

**Question 1**

What was the meaning or term used by the English in the 20th century for Aslace?

**Question 2**

Which nationalities are still calling it, as of 2007, Alslace "a shabby market place"?

**Question 3**

What is Lord Sedley's nationality?

**Question 4**

Who invented the word "Alsatia"?

**Question 5**

Alsatia is the English form of what?

**Question 6**

When did the use of the word "Alsatia" fall out of practice?

**Question 7**

What does UMBS stand for?

**Text number 26**

Plans are under consideration to build a new dual carriageway motorway to the west of Strasbourg, which would reduce traffic congestion in the area by concentrating northbound and southbound vehicles and removing congestion from outside Strasbourg. The line will link the Hœrdt junction north of Strasbourg with Innenheim to the south-west. The line is due to open at the end of 2011 and will have an average daily capacity of 41 000 vehicles. However, the French commissioner's estimates raised doubts about the attractiveness of the project, which would take only about 10% of the traffic on the A35 in Strasbourg. Paradoxically, this reversed the situation in the 1950s. At that time, the French trunk road to the left of the Rhine had not yet been built, so traffic would have been routed through Germany via the Karlsruhe-Basel motorway.

**Question 0**

What is currently being planned for the west of Strasbourg?

**Question 1**

What would a new carriageway do in Alsace?

**Question 2**

What is the name of a German motorway that would have intersected with a French lorry road?

**Question 3**

The new alignment is (roadway) would connect which other intersections?

**Question 4**

What plans have been cancelled?

**Question 5**

Which intersection is connected by a two-lane road to the left of the Rhine?

**Question 6**

What is the name of the new carriageway?

**Question 7**

What percentage of traffic used the motorway between Karlsruhe and Basel?

**Question 8**

How many vehicles travelled on the Karlsruhe-Basel motorway per day in 1950?

**Document number 252**

**Text number 0**

Carnival (see other spellings and names) is a Christian holiday that precedes the Christian Lent. The main events usually take place in February or early March, when Carnival is historically known as Shrovetide (or Pre-Lent). Carnivals usually involve a public party and/or parade, combining elements of circus, masks and public street parties. People wear masks and costumes at many parties, which allow them to lose their everyday individuality and experience a strong sense of social unity. Excessive consumption of alcohol, meat and other foods forbidden during Lent is very common. Other common features of carnivals include mock battles such as food fights, social satire and mockery of authorities, grotesque bodies with exaggerated features, especially large noses, stomachs, mouths and phalluses or animal parts, offensive language and degrading acts, depictions of illness and joyful death, and a general subversion of everyday rules and norms.

**Question 0**

What is the name of the Christian festival that precedes Lent?

**Question 1**

When are the main events of the Christian festival?

**Question 2**

Who is the carnival open to?

**Question 3**

What do carnival participants perceive as increased?

**Question 4**

What do you overindulge in during Lent?

**Text number 1**

The term carnival is traditionally used in areas with a large Catholic population. However, in the Philippines, a predominantly Roman Catholic country, Carnival is no longer celebrated, as the Manila Carnival was abolished after 1939, when it was the last carnival in the country. In historically Lutheran countries, the celebration is known as Fastelavn, and in areas with a large Anglican and Methodist population, pre-Lenten celebrations and penitential services are held on Lent Tuesday. In Eastern Orthodox countries, Maslenitsa is celebrated in the last week before Great Lent. In German-speaking Europe and the Netherlands, the Carnival season traditionally opens on 11 November (often at 11.11 a.m.). This dates back to the celebrations preceding Advent or the St Martin's Day harvest festival.

**Question 0**

The term carnival is very common in areas with a large population of which religious sect?

**Question 1**

Which countries no longer celebrate Carnival?

**Question 2**

After which year was the Manila Carnival abolished?

**Question 3**

What is Carnival known as in countries that are mostly Lutheran?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the feast celebrated in the Eastern Orthodox nations in the last week before Lent?

**Text number 2**

Traditionally, the carnival celebrations were the last chance to eat well before the food shortage at the end of winter, during which food was limited to the bare essentials. Nowadays, what is known as the vastenavond (days before Lent) was the day when all the remaining winter fat, butter and meat were eaten, as they would soon begin to rot and decompose. In fact, the selected cattle had already been slaughtered in November and the meat was no longer preserved. Any food that survived the winter had to be eaten to ensure that everyone had enough food to survive until the coming spring would provide new sources of food.

**Question 0**

Why were carnival celebrations usually the last chance to eat well?

**Question 1**

What were you limited to during the winter?

**Question 2**

What does "vastenavond" mean?

**Question 3**

Why should all the stocks of lard, butter and meat left in Vastenavond be eaten?

**Question 4**

When would new food sources be available for winter survivors?

**Text number 3**

Several Germanic tribes are celebrating the return of daylight. During this celebration, one reigning deity was driven in a noisy procession on a wheeled ship. Winter was driven away so that fertility could return in the spring. The central figure was possibly the fertility goddess Nerthus. There are also indications that the image of Nerthus or Freyri was placed on a wheeled ship and followed by a procession of people dressed as animals and men dressed as women. On board the ship, a man and a woman were married as a fertility rite.

**Question 0**

What are a bunch of Germanic tribes celebrating?

**Question 1**

How was the ship carrying the ruling deity moved during the Jubilee Year?

**Question 2**

Why was winter driven away?

**Question 3**

What goddess is Nerthus?

**Question 4**

How would a man and woman marrying on a ship work as a fertility ritual?

**Text number 4**

Tacitus wrote in Germania 9.6: Ceterum nec cohibere parietibus deos neque in ullam humani oris speciem adsimulare ex magnitudine caelestium arbitrator - "The Germans, however, do not consider it consistent with the greatness of heavenly beings to enclose the gods within walls or to compare them with the form of any human face. '" Germania 40: mox vehiculum et vestis et, si credere velis, numen ipsum secreto lacu abluitur - "Then car, clothes and, if you want to believe, the deity himself are purified in a secret lake."

**Question 0**

Who wrote Germania?

**Question 1**

Where do the Germans think it is inconsistent to include the gods?

**Question 2**

Don't the Germans compare gods to whose face?

**Question 3**

When is the car used in the ritual cleaned?

**Question 4**

Where is the deity himself purified?

**Text number 5**

Traditionally, the feast was also about sexual desires, which were to be suppressed during the next fast. Before Lent began, all the rich food and drink was consumed in a huge feast attended by the whole community, which is believed to be the origin of the carnival. The Lenten period of the liturgical calendar, the six weeks immediately before Easter, was originally marked by fasting and other pious or penitential practices. During Lent, there were no feasts or celebrations, and people abstained from eating rich foods such as meat, dairy products, fat and sugar.

**Question 0**

What desires were expected to be suppressed during Lent?

**Question 1**

All the sumptuous food and drink was enjoyed before the event?

**Question 2**

What is the origin of a giant feast that involved the whole community?

**Question 3**

How long is the fasting period in the liturgical calendar?

**Question 4**

What kind of rich food did people abstain from eating during Lent?

**Text number 6**

Although Christian festivals, such as the corpus Christi, were church-approved celebrations, carnival was also an expression of European popular culture. In the Christian tradition, the purpose of fasting is to remember the 40 days that Jesus fasted in the wilderness according to the New Testament, and also to reflect on Christian values. Like many other Christian festivals, such as Christmas, which was originally a pagan midwinter celebration, the Christian Church has found it easier to turn the pagan carnival into a Catholic tradition than to abolish it. Unlike today, in the Middle Ages Carnival did not last only a few days, but covered almost the entire period between Christmas and the beginning of Lent. During those two months, the Catholic population seized several Catholic holidays to vent their daily frustrations.

**Question 0**

What was one of the celebrations accepted by the Church?

**Question 1**

The carnival was also the result of the popular culture of which region?

**Question 2**

How many days is Jesus traditionally said to have fasted in the wilderness?

**Question 3**

Which pagan midwinter festival was easier for the Church to abolish than to abolish?

**Question 4**

Why do Catholics confiscate several feast days?

**Text number 7**

In 743, the Synod of Leptines (Leptines is near Binche in Belgium) spoke out vehemently against the excesses of February. The phrase: "Whoever in February tries to banish winter by various less honourable acts is not a Christian but a pagan." Confession books dating back to around 800 provide further evidence of people dressing up as animals or old women during the festivities of January and February, even though this was a sin for which there was not the slightest repentance. Also in Spain, San Isidoro de Sevilla has a written complaint from the seventeenth century that people coming out into the streets disguised in many cases as the opposite sex.

**Question 0**

What year did the Synod of Leptines condemn the excesses of the feast?

**Question 1**

In which month did the crossings take place?

**Question 2**

Which books from around 800 contain more information about people's traditions at that time?

**Question 3**

What was the sin for which there was no small punishment for dressing up?

**Question 4**

Where would some people in Spain go out in disguise?

**Text number 8**

Although carnivals are an integral part of the Christian calendar, especially in Catholic areas, many carnival traditions hark back to pre-Christian traditions. The Italian carnival is sometimes believed to have its origins in the ancient Roman festivals of Saturnalia and Bacchanalia. Saturnalia, on the other hand, may be based on the Greek Dionysia and oriental festivals. At the start of the Roman Saturnalia on 17 December, the authorities chose an enemy of the Roman people to represent the lord of the revolution in each community. These men and women were forced to indulge in food and physical pleasures throughout the week and were horribly murdered on 25 December: 'to destroy the forces of darkness'.

**Question 0**

Many carnival traditions are an integral part of whose calendar?

**Question 1**

From which two ancient Roman festivals is Carnival believed to have originated?

**Question 2**

Saturnalia is possibly based on which Greek festival?

**Question 3**

In which month and on which day did Saturnalia begin?

**Question 4**

What happened to the men and women who were chosen to represent the Lord of Misrule?

**Text number 9**

Although medieval feasts and festivals, such as Corpus Christi, were sanctioned by the church, carnival was also an expression of medieval popular culture. Many local carnival customs are said to derive from local pre-Christian rituals, such as the elaborate rituals of the Swedish-Alemannic Fastnacht, involving masked figures. However, there is insufficient evidence to show a direct origin from Saturnalia or other ancient festivals. No complete descriptions of Saturnalia have survived, and the common features of celebration, role reversal, temporary social equality, masks and permitted rule-breaking do not necessarily form a single festival or unite these festivities. These similarities may represent a reservoir of cultural resources that can contain multiple meanings and functions. For example, Easter begins with the resurrection of Jesus, followed by a liminal period, and ends with the rebirth. Carnival reverses this with the resurrection of King Carnival, followed by a liminal period before his death. Both celebrations are counted according to the lunar calendar. Both Jesus and King Carnival can be seen as atoning figures who, by their deaths, make a gift to the people. For Jesus, the gift is eternal life in heaven, and for King Carnival it is the recognition that death is a necessary part of the cycle of life. In addition to Christian anti-Semitism, the similarities between the rituals and images of the Church and Carnival suggest a common root. The suffering of Christ is itself grotesque: since early Christianity, Christ has been depicted as a victim of summary judgment, tortured and executed by the Romans in front of a crowd of Jews ("His blood is our blood and the blood of our children!" Matthew 27:24-25). In Spanish Holy Week processions, crowds of people loudly insult the figure of Jesus. Irreverence, parody, degradation and laughter at the tragicomic image of God can be seen as an intensification of the holy order. In 1466, the Catholic Church, under the leadership of Pope Paul II, reintroduced the customs of the Saturnalia carnival: Jews were forced to run naked in a race through the streets of Rome. "Before the race, the Jews were fed liberally to make the race more difficult for them and at the same time more fun for the spectators. They ran... amidst the mocking shouts and shrieks of laughter in Rome, while the Holy Father stood on a richly decorated balcony and laughed heartily," says an eyewitness.

**Question 0**

What is not enough to show a direct origin from ancient festivals to carnivals?

**Question 1**

For which festival has no complete description survived?

**Question 2**

How do both Jesus and King Carnival give a gift to the people?

**Question 3**

What is the gift of King Carnival?

**Question 4**

Who did Pope Paul II force to run naked through the streets of Rome?

**Text number 10**

Some of the best-known traditions, such as carnal parades and masquerades, were first recorded in medieval Italy. The Venice Carnival was for a long time the most famous carnival (although it was abolished by Napoleon in 1797 and the tradition was not restored until 1979). From Italy, carnival traditions spread to Spain, Portugal and France, and from France to New France in North America. From Spain and Portugal, it spread to the Caribbean and Latin America with colonialism. In the German Rhineland and southern Holland in the early 19th century, a weakened medieval tradition was also revived. Continuously in the 1700s and 1800s AD, as part of the annual Saturnalia celebrations of the Roman carnival, carnival abuses forced ghetto rabbis to march through the city streets in silly costumes, and they were mocked and thrown from the crowd with various missiles. An appeal by the Jewish community in Rome in 1836 to Pope Gregory XVI to stop the annual anti-Semitic abuse of Saturnalia was met with a negative response: "It is not appropriate to make any reforms."

**Question 0**

Where were some of the most famous traditions first recorded?

**Question 1**

Which city's carnival was long the most famous?

**Question 2**

What was the first place in North America to have a carnival tradition?

**Question 3**

What did the rabbis of the ghettos have to march through the city streets wearing?

**Question 4**

Who rejected the Jewish community's appeal to end their exploitation?

**Text number 11**

Portuguese immigrants brought the carnival to the market. The festival is celebrated on each of the nine inhabited islands of the archipelago. In Mindelo, in the town of São Vicente, groups compete for the annual prize. It has brought with it a variety of Brazilian carnival traditions. São Nicolau's celebrations are more traditional, with established groups passing through Ribeira Brava and gathering in the town square, although the drums, floats and costumes are imported from Brazil. In São Nicolás, three groups, Copa Cabana, Estrela Azul and Brilho Da Zona, build a painted float using fire, newspaper for the mould and iron and steel for the structure. The São Nicolau Carnival is celebrated over three days: Saturday morning, Sunday afternoon and Tuesday.

**Question 0**

What nationality were the settlers who brought the carnival to the market?

**Question 1**

How many inhabited islands celebrate Carnival?

**Question 2**

What do Mindelo's teams challenge each other on?

**Question 3**

Three groups in São Nicolau use fire to build which vehicle?

**Question 4**

How many days is the São Nicolau Carnival celebrated?

**Text number 12**

In India, Carnival is celebrated only in the state of Goa and in the Roman Catholic tradition, where it is known as Intruz, meaning trickster, while Entrudo is the Portuguese word for carnival. The biggest celebrations are held in the town of Panjim, which was part of the Velha Conquista, Goa, but are now celebrated throughout the state. The tradition was introduced by the Portuguese, who ruled Goa for more than four centuries. On the Tuesday before Ash Wednesday, the European tradition of Fat Tuesday is celebrated by eating crepes, also known as 'AleBelle'. The crepes are filled with fresh shredded coconut and heated coconut juice, which turns successively into a brown sweet molasses, and an additional concentration of heat solidifies it into a jaggery. The carnival celebrations last for three days and nights, and precede Ash Wednesday. When the legendary King Momo takes over the state. All-night parades with bands, dances and floats are held throughout the state, and large dances are held in the evenings.

**Question 0**

Which is the only state in India that celebrates Carnival?

**Question 1**

What does the Indian word "Intruz" mean?

**Question 2**

Which city has the biggest carnival?

**Question 3**

What to eat on meatless day to join in the celebrations?

**Question 4**

Which legendary king will eventually take power in the country?

**Text number 13**

Malmedy's carnival is locally known as Cwarmê. Although Malmedy is located in eastern Belgium, close to the German-speaking area, Cwarmê is a purely Walloon and Latin carnival. The celebrations take place 4 days before May Day. Cwarmê Sunday is the most important and most interesting. All the old traditional costumes are paraded in the streets. Cwarmê is a "street carnival" and not just a parade. Masked people walk through the crowd and show off some of their traditional costumes. The famous traditional costumes of the Malmedy Cwarmê are Haguète, Longuès-Brèsses and Long-Né.

**Question 0**

Whose carnival is known locally as Cwarmê?

**Question 1**

Although the Malmedy Carnival is in eastern Belgium, it originated in which region?

**Question 2**

How many days does the Malmedy Festival take place before Midsummer's Eve?

**Question 3**

Where will all the traditional costumes be on display on the Sunday of the festival?

**Question 4**

What will masked people be wearing during the festival?

**Text number 14**

In some Belgian cities, carnivals are organised during Lent. One of the most famous is Stavelot, where the Carnival de la Laetare takes place on Laetare Sunday, the fourth Sunday of Lent. Among the participants are the Blancs-Mousses, who dress in white, wear long red noses and parade through the town attacking bystanders with confetti and dried pig bladders. The town of Halle also celebrates Laetare Sunday. Belgium's oldest parade is the Maaseik carnival procession, which also takes place on Laetare Sunday and dates back to 1865.

**Question 0**

What do some Belgian cities do during Lent?

**Question 1**

What carnivals take place on Laetare Sunday?

**Question 2**

Which group of participants will attack bystanders with confetti and dried pig bladders?

**Question 3**

On what day does the city of Halle celebrate?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the oldest parade in Belgium?

**Text number 15**

Many towns in the Kvarner region of Croatia (and other parts of the country) celebrate carnival time with local traditions and culture. Just before the end of the carnival, each town in Kvarner burns a human doll called "Jure Piškanac", who is blamed for all the disputes of the previous year. The Zvončars, or bell ringers, wear bells and large headdresses representing their home regions (for example, the people of Halubje wear animal-headed hats). The traditional carnival food is fritule, a pastry. This celebration can also be called Poklade.

**Question 0**

In which Croatian region do many towns and cities celebrate carnival time?

**Question 1**

What does every town on Kvarner burn just before the end of Carnival?

**Question 2**

Who will be blamed for all the disputes last year?

**Question 3**

What does a bell-ringer's headdress represent?

**Question 4**

What is traditional carnival food?

**Text number 16**

Carnival has been celebrated for centuries. The tradition probably originated during the reign of Venice around the 1500s. It may have been inspired by Greek traditions, such as the celebration of deities like Dionysus. Originally, the celebration involved dressing up in costumes and holding masked balls or visiting friends. In the twentieth century it became an organised event, taking place during the 10 days preceding Lent (according to the Greek Orthodox calendar). The feast is celebrated almost exclusively in the city of Limassol.

**Question 0**

How long has Carnival been celebrated?

**Question 1**

Under whose authority was Carnival established in the 1500s?

**Question 2**

Dionysus was a deity in whose tradition?

**Question 3**

In which century did carnival become an organised event?

**Question 4**

In which city is carnival celebrated almost exclusively?

**Text number 17**

Three main processions will take place during the carnival. The first takes place on the first day, when the "carnival king" (either a person in costume or an imaginary character) rides through the city in a float. The second takes place on the first Sunday of the festival and is mainly attended by children. The third and biggest event takes place on the last day of the carnival and involves hundreds of people dressed in costumes walking along the longest street in the city. The latter two parades are open to all.

**Question 0**

How many parades are held during Carnival?

**Question 1**

Who goes through the city in a trolley?

**Question 2**

Which festivals are mainly made up of children?

**Question 3**

Where do people walk along the longest street in the city?

**Question 4**

Who are the last two parades you can participate in?

**Text number 18**

In Norway, students who had seen parties in Paris brought carnival parades, masked balls and carnival dances to Christiana in the 1840s and 1850s. From 1863, the artists' association kunstnerforeningen organised annual carnival balls in the old Masonic lodge, which inspired Johan Svendsen's compositions 'Norsk Kunstnerkarneval' and 'Karneval in Paris'. The following year, Svendsens Festpolonaise was composed for the opening parade. Edvard Grieg took part in the festival and wrote the piece "aus dem Karneval" (folkelivsbilleder Op. 19). Since 1988, the student organisation Tårnseilerne has organised an annual masquerade in Oslo, with masks, costumes and a procession after the opera performance. The carnival season also includes Fastelavens søndag (cream bun) and fastelavensris with decorated branches.

**Question 0**

Where did Norwegian students first see the party?

**Question 1**

Where did the Artists' Union hold its annual dance party?

**Question 2**

Who wrote the song "Karneval in Paris"?

**Question 3**

Which organisation has been organising annual masquerades in Oslo since 1988?

**Question 4**

When will the processions take place?

**Text number 19**

Rheinische carnivals are celebrated in the western part of Germany, mainly in the states of North Rhine-Westphalia, Rhineland-Palatinate or Rhineland-Palatinate, but also in Hesse [including Oberhessen], Bavaria and other states. Some cities are better known for festivities such as parades and costume balls. Cologne or Cologne Carnival and the carnivals in Mainz and Düsseldorf are the largest and most famous. Other cities have their own, often lesser-known festivals, parades and parties, such as Worms am Rhein, Speyer, Kaiserslautern, Frankfurt, Darmstadt, Mannheim, Ludwigshafen, Stuttgart, Augsburg and Munich [München] Nürnberg. On Carnival Thursday (called 'Old Ladies' Day' or 'Women's Day'), to commemorate the 1824 revolt of the washerwomen, women storm town halls, break men's ties and are allowed to kiss all passing men.

**Question 0**

Which carnivals take place in the west of Germany?

**Question 1**

Cologne Carnival is one of the biggest carnivals and also the biggest what?

**Question 2**

What is known colloquially as Old Ladies' Day?

**Question 3**

Who rebelled in 1824?

**Question 4**

What can women storming city halls do to any man passing by?

**Text number 20**

In Greece, Carnival is also known as Apokriés (Greek Αποκριές, "farewell to the flesh") or the season of the "Opening of the Triodion", named after the liturgical book used by the Church from then until Holy Week. One of the highlights of the season is the Tsiknopempti, when celebrants enjoy a roast beef meal; the ritual is repeated the following Sunday. The following week, the last before Lent, is called Tyrinē (Greek: Τυρινή, 'cheese week'), as meat is forbidden but dairy products are not. The fasting period begins on 'Clean Monday', the day after 'Cheese Sunday'. Throughout the carnival season, people dress up as maskarádes ('costumes') and take part in pranks and celebrations.

**Question 0**

What is the name of the Greek Carnival?

**Question 1**

Where does the opening of Triodion come from?

**Question 2**

What is one of the highlights of the festival season?

**Question 3**

What kind of dinners do people enjoy during the peak of the season?

**Question 4**

What do people do after they have been masked?

**Text number 21**

In other regions, such as Tyrnavos (Thessaly), Kozani (West Macedonia), Rethymno (Crete) and Xanthi (East Macedonia and Thrace), smaller celebrations are organised, focusing on the reproduction of traditional carnival customs. In Tyrnavos, an annual phallus festival is held, a traditional "phallus-skloric" event, which features giant, garishly painted images of phalluses made of papier-mâché, which women are invited to touch or kiss. The prize is a drink of the famous local gin and tonic. Every year, from 1 to 8 January, carnival celebrations and festivals are held, mainly in the regions of West Macedonia. The most famous of these is the Kastorian Carnival, or "Ragoutsaria" (Gr. "Ραγκουτσάρια") [tags: Kastoria, Kastorian Carnival, Ragoutsaria, Ραγκουτσαρια, Καστοριά]. The carnival will take place from 6 to 8 January and will be attended by a large number of people accompanied by brass bands, pipes, Macedonian and grand casa drums. It is an ancient celebration of the rebirth of nature (the feast of Dionysus (Dionysia) and Cronus (Saturnalia)), which ends on the third day with dancing in the medieval Ntoltson Square, where orchestras play at the same time.

**Question 0**

Who organises the annual phallus festival?

**Question 1**

What are giant, garishly painted phallus figures made of?

**Question 2**

What do women get rewarded with for kissing giant traps?

**Question 3**

What is the ancient festival for?

**Question 4**

In which square do the bands all play at the same time?

**Text number 22**

Carnival in the Netherlands is called Carnaval, Vastenavond or Vastelaovend(j) and is most often celebrated in traditionally Catholic areas, mainly in the southern provinces of North Brabant and Limburg. Carnival in the Netherlands is officially celebrated on the Sunday before Ash Wednesday, from Sunday to Tuesday. Although traditions vary from town to town, Dutch carnival generally includes a parade, a 'prince' plus cortège ('jester/adjutant and council of 11'), a peasant wedding (boerenbruiloft) and a herring-eating (haring happen) on Ash Wednesday.

**Question 0**

In which provinces in the Netherlands is Carnival mainly celebrated?

**Question 1**

Until which Wednesday is the Dutch Carnival?

**Question 2**

What varies from city to city in terms of carnivals?

**Question 3**

What to consume on Ash Wednesday?

**Question 4**

What is the Dutch term for "peasant wedding"?

**Text number 23**

The Strumica Carnival (Macedonian Струмички Карневал, translated as Strumichki Karneval) has been held since at least 1670, when the Turkish writer Evlija Chelebija wrote during his stay there: 'I came to the town at the foot of a high hill, and that night I saw masked people running from house to house, accompanied by laughter, shouting and singing.' The carnival took on an organised form in 1991; in 1994 Strumica became a member of the FECC and in 1998 it hosted the XVIII International Congress of Carnival Cities. Strumica's carnival opens on Saturday evening with a costume ball to choose a prince and princess; the main carnival night is on Tuesday, when masked participants (including foreign groups) compete in various themes. Since 2000, a festival of caricatures and aphorisms has been organised as part of the Strumica Carnival.

**Question 0**

How long has the Strumica Carnival been running?

**Question 1**

What nationality was Evlija Chelebija?

**Question 2**

Who ran from house to house laughing, shouting and singing?

**Question 3**

Which day is the most important carnival night?

**Question 4**

What year was the Festival of Caricatures and Aphorisms added to the Strumica Carnival?

**Text number 24**

In the Slovenian countryside there are various masked groups and individual figures, the most popular and typical of which is the kurentti (plural: kurenti), a monstrous and demon-like, but fluffy figure. The most important festival takes place in Ptuj (see Kurentovanje). Its main feature is the kurents themselves, magical beings from another world who visit major events across the country to try to banish winter and herald the arrival of spring, fertility and new life through noise and dance. The origin of the Kurents is a mystery, and little is known about the times, beliefs or purposes of their first appearance. The origin of the name itself is obscure.

**Question 0**

In which rural areas are there several groups and individuals in disguise?

**Question 1**

Kurent is monstrous and demonic, but also what?

**Question 2**

Where is the biggest festival in Slovenia?

**Question 3**

Who are the magical creatures from another world?

**Question 4**

What are the couriers trying to expel?

**Text number 25**

The best-known groups are chirigotas, choirs and comparsas. The chirigotas are well-known witty, satirical folk groups who sing about politics, new times and household topics, and wear the same outfit they prepare all year round. Choruses (coros) are larger groups that parade in the streets on open carriages and sing with a guitar and lute orchestra. Their signature song is the 'carnival tango', which alternates between comic and serious songs. Comparsas are the serious counterpart of the Cádiz chirigota, with poetic lyrics and criticism as their main ingredients. They have a more developed polyphony, easily recognisable from the typical countertenor sound.

**Question 0**

What are the most famous chirigotas, choirs and comparsas?

**Question 1**

What do chirigotes sing about?

**Question 2**

How long does it take a chirigota to make a suit?

**Question 3**

Which group is using open trolleys on the streets?

**Question 4**

Who has the most advanced polyphony?

**Text number 26**

In Catalonia, people dress up in masks and costumes (often in themed groups) and organise a week-long series of parties, pranks, bizarre activities such as bedding competitions, catudramas satirising public figures and boisterous processions to welcome the arrival of Sa Majestat el Rei Carnestoltes (His Majesty the King's Carnival). He is known by many different titles, such as el Rei dels poca-soltes (King of the Fools), Princep etern de Cornudella (Eternal Cuckold Prince), Duc de ximples i corrumputs (Duke of Fools and Corrupt), Marquès de la bona mamella (Marquis of the Beautiful Breasts), Comte de tots els barruts (The Count of the Pompous), Baró de les Calaverades (The Baron of the Nocturnal Debauchery), and Senyor de l'alt Plàtan florit, dels barraquers i gamberrades i artista d'honor dalt del llit (The Lord of the Flowering Tall Banana, the Spies and Punkers and the Artist of Honor on the Bed).

**Question 0**

Where do people wear masks and suits?

**Question 1**

What is being raced as part of the celebrations?

**Question 2**

What is the Cantonese term for Eternal Prince of Cuckoldry?

**Question 3**

Who has a beautiful breast?

**Question 4**

Who's on the bed?

**Text number 27**

The king controls bad governance, allowing traditional social rules to be broken and reckless behaviour to be encouraged. The festivities take place outdoors and begin with a cercavila, a ritual procession through the city in which everyone is invited to participate. Lines of masked celebrants dance along. Thursday is the Dijous Gras (Fat Thursday), also known as 'the day of the omelette' (el dia de la truita), when coques (de llardons, butifarra d'ou, butifarra) and omelettes are eaten. The festivities end on Ash Wednesday with a solemn funeral rite to mark the death of the Carnival king. The carnival king is usually burnt at the stake in what is known as the sardine funeral (enterrament de la sardina), or l'enterro in Vilanova.

**Question 0**

When can traditional social rules be broken?

**Question 1**

Who will police the period of reckless behaviour?

**Question 2**

What is the ritual procession through the city that invites everyone to take part?

**Question 3**

Fat Tuesday is also known as what day?

**Question 4**

Who is usually burned at the stake?

**Text number 28**

The history of the Vilanova i la Geltrún carnival has been documented since 1790, and is one of the richest carnivals because of the variety of performances and rituals. The carnival follows the old style, where satire, grotesque bodies (especially cross-dressing and the display of exaggerated bellies, noses and phalluses) and, above all, active participation are more important than the glamorous, media-friendly spectacles that the Vilanovs deride as 'thighs and feathers'. It is best known for Sunday's Les Comparses, where at least 12 000 dancers, organised into competing groups, throw 75 tonnes of hard candy at each other. Women protect their faces with Mantons de Manila (Manila scarves), but eye patches and broken hands are common the following week. The Vilanovians organise l'Arrivo for the arrival of the Royal Carnival, which changes every year. It includes a boisterous procession of floats and dancers mocking current events or public figures, and a bitingly satirical sermon (el sermo) delivered by the king himself. On Dijous Gras day, Vilanov children are released from school to take part in the Merengada, an all-day scene of eating and fighting over sticky sweet meringue.

**Question 0**

Which city's carnival has a documented history dating back to 1790?

**Question 1**

Where do the Vilanovins mock media-friendly carnivals from?

**Question 2**

In which dance do participants throw over 75 tonnes of hard candy at each other?

**Question 3**

What are the dancers mocking in a ritual that heralds the arrival of King Carnival?

**Question 4**

What's the name of the all-day programme to eat and fight meringues?

**Text number 29**

At midnight, adults engage in a melee in the historic Plaça de les Cols. In the mysterious sortida del Moixo Foguer (Little Bird and Jabberer outing), a Xerraire (jabberer) is involved, insulting the audience. At the King's presentation ceremony, he and his concubine scandalise the town with their sexual behaviour. Correfoc (fire run) or devil's dance (Ball de diables), in which young people dance amid sparks and explosions in a ritual devil's dance. Other attractions include bedding contests in the streets, debauchery Nit dels Mascarots, karaoke sausage fights, xatonads, children's parties, Vidalet, the last night of the party, Vidalot, the ball of mismatched couples (Ball de Malcasats) and the children's king Caramel, whose massive belly, long nose and sausage-like hair hint at his insatiable appetite.

**Question 0**

What kind of battle do adults fight at midnight?

**Question 1**

Who throws insults at the public?

**Question 2**

What behaviour scandalises the city?

**Question 3**

Who creates sparks and explosions?

**Question 4**

Who is the king of children?

**Text number 30**

For the king's funeral, people dress in elaborate mourning costumes, many of them cross-dressing men carrying bouquets of fancy vegetables. At the funeral home, the king's body is surrounded by a guard of honour and weeping concubines, who weep for the loss of sexual pleasure caused by his death. The king's body is carried to the Plaça de la Vila, where a satirical eulogy is given while the townspeople eat savoury grilled sardines with bread and wine, a reference to the symbolic cannibalism of the communion ritual. Finally, the king's body is burnt amidst rockets and explosions at a huge pyre.

**Question 0**

What do people wear to a king's funeral?

**Question 1**

Who carries flower arrangements of penis-shaped vegetables?

**Question 2**

Who weeps around the king's body?

**Question 3**

What kind of eulogy for the King?

**Question 4**

Which ritual refers to symbolic cannibalism?

**Text number 31**

The Carnaval de Solsona takes place in Solsona, Lleida. It is one of the longest; free events and nightly concerts take place in the streets for over a week. The carnival is famous for the legend of how a donkey was hung from the bell of the tower - because the animal wanted to eat the grass growing at the top of the tower. In honour of this legend, locals hang a stuffed donkey from the tower, which 'pisses' above the excited crowd with a water pump. This is the main event, and it takes place on Saturday night. For this reason, residents are called 'matarruce' ('donkey-killers').

**Question 0**

What is one of the longest running free events on the streets?

**Question 1**

How long can evening concerts last?

**Question 2**

Where, according to local legend, was the donkey hung?

**Question 3**

How does a donkey piss on the crowd below?

**Question 4**

What does "matarrucs" mean?

**Text number 32**

Tarragona has one of the most complete ritual series in the region. The events begin with the construction of a huge barrel and end with its burning with portraits of the king and queen. Saturday sees the main procession, with masked groups, zoomorphic figures, music and percussion bands and firework groups (devils, dragon, bull, female dragon). The carnival groups stand out in the Saturday and Sunday parades with their elegant costumes, featuring superb examples of weaving. The parade groups include around 5 000 people.

**Question 0**

Who has one of the most complete ritual programmes?

**Question 1**

Where do the events in Tarragona start?

**Question 2**

On what day will the main parade take place?

**Question 3**

What are carnival groups wearing?

**Question 4**

How many people are in the different parade groups?

**Text number 33**

Carnival means weeks of events, with colourfully decorated floats, infectiously pulsating music, lavishly costumed groups of revelers of all ages, elections for king and queen, electrifying jumps and torchlight processions, Jouvert morning: children's parades and finally the grand parade. Aruba's biggest celebration is a month-long event consisting of festive "jump-ups" (street parades), spectacular parades and creative competitions. Music and flamboyant costumes play a central role from the Queen's election to the Grand Parade. Street parades continue in different parts of the city throughout the month to the beat of brass bands, steel drums and road marches. The carnival ends on the night before Lent with the symbolic burning of King Momo.

**Question 0**

What's the catchy beat of the event week?

**Question 1**

How long does Aruba's biggest party last?

**Question 2**

Which costumes play a key role in the Queen's election?

**Question 3**

What goes on in different parts of the city throughout Carnival month?

**Question 4**

When is King Mother symbolically burned?

**Text number 34**

The carnival is known as Crop Over and is the largest festival in Barbados. The carnival originated on sugar cane plantations in colonial times. Crop Over began in 1688 and featured singing, dancing and accompaniment with shak-shak, banjo, triangle, fiddle, guitar, water-filled bottles and bones. Other traditions included climbing a greased pole, feasting and drinking contests. Originally marking the end of the annual sugar cane harvest, it evolved into a national celebration. In the late 20th century, Crop Over began to closely resemble Trinidad's Carnival. Starting in June, Crop Over runs until the first Monday in August, culminating in the Grand Kadooment.

**Question 0**

What is Carnival known as in Barbados?

**Question 1**

Where did the Barbados Festival come from?

**Question 2**

What year did Crop Over start?

**Question 3**

What activities are performed using a greased pole?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the Crop Over final?

**Text number 35**

One of the main events is the calypso competition. Originating in Trinidad, calypso music uses syncopated rhythms and topical lyrics. It provides a vehicle for satirising local politics in the midst of a general bacchanal. Calypso tents, also originating from Trinidad, feature musicians making biting social commentary, political revelations or inspiring calls to "wuk dah waistline" and "roll dat bumper". The groups compete for the Calypso Monarch award, and during the Bridgetown Market Street Fair the air is filled with the smell of Bajan food. The Cohobblopot Festival combines dance, drama and music to crown the king and queen of the costume bands. Every night, a 'Pic-o-de-Crop' show is performed after the King of Calypso is finally crowned. The festival culminates in Kadooment Day, a national holiday when costume bands fill the streets with pulsating Barbadian rhythms and fireworks.

**Question 0**

What kind of competition is at the heart of the festival?

**Question 1**

Where did calypso music originate?

**Question 2**

Who makes biting social comments?

**Question 3**

What do music groups compete on?

**Question 4**

What is the culmination of the festival?

**Text number 36**

Comparsas take place throughout the week and consist of large groups of 'dancers' who dance and parade through the streets, accompanied by a carrosa (trolley) in which musicians play. Comparsa evolved from African processions, in which groups of believers follow a particular saint or deity during a particular religious festival'. One of the most popular comparsas at Fiesta de Carnaval is the male comparsa group, usually made up of prominent men from the community who dress up in strange costumes or cross-dress and dance to compete for money and prizes. Other popular activities include body painting and flour fights. "On the last day of the carnival, painters flood the streets to paint each other. This simply means using a mixture of watercolour and water or raw eggs to paint people in the streets, with the aim of painting as many people as possible. "

**Question 0**

What is the name of the vehicle in which the musicians play?

**Question 1**

What do believers observe during a particular religious festival?

**Question 2**

Who are usually involved in the group comparsa?

**Question 3**

What is used in some ceremonial battles?

**Question 4**

What is the aim of carnival painters?

**Text number 37**

Haiti's carnival began in 1804 in the capital Port-au-Prince after the declaration of independence. The Port-au-Prince Carnival is one of the largest in North America. It is known in Creole as Kanaval. The carnival begins in January, when it is known as "Pre-Kanaval", while the main carnival events begin in February. In July 2012, Haiti had another carnival called Kanaval de Fleur. Beautiful costumes, floats, raa parades, masks, food and popular rasin music (such as Boukman Eksperyans, Foula Vodoule, Tokay, Boukan Ginen, Eritaj etc.) and kompa bands (such as T-Vice, Djakout No. 1, Sweet Micky, Kreyòl La, D.P. Express, Mizik Mizik, Ram, T-Micky, Carimi, Djakout Mizik and Scorpio Fever) play to dancers in the streets of the Champ-de-Mars square. An annual singing competition is organised.

**Question 0**

What year did the carnival start in Haiti?

**Question 1**

What event triggered the start of the carnival in Haiti?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the carnival in Creole?

**Question 3**

What kind of bands play for dancers on the streets?

**Question 4**

What kind of annual competition is organised during Kanavel?

**Text number 38**

J'ouvert or "Dirty Mas" takes place before dawn on the Monday before Ash Wednesday (known as Carnival Friday). It means 'opening of the day'. Partygoers dress up in costumes with puns on current affairs, especially political and social events. "Clean Mud" (clay mud), oil paints and body paints are familiar during J'ouvert. A common character is the "Jab-jabs" (blue, black or red devils) with throwing forks, sharp horns and tails. The king and queen of J'ouvert are chosen based on a clever political/social message.

**Question 0**

When is the Dirty Mas on the Monday before Ash Wednesday?

**Question 1**

What do the costumes of the celebrants tell us?

**Question 2**

What is "pure mud"?

**Question 3**

What are "jab-jabs"?

**Question 4**

How are the King and Queen of J'ouvert chosen?

**Text number 39**

The main events take place on Carnival Tuesday. The carnival is a full costume event, including make-up and body paint/decorations. Usually 'mas boots' are used to complement the costumes. Each ensemble has a costume design based on a particular theme, and includes different sections (some with thousands of revellers) that reflect these themes. There will be a street parade and a costume competition for bands. The mas bands will finally gather at Queen's Park Savannah to walk to "The Stage" for judging. The singer of the most played song is crowned Road March King or Queen, who receives prize money and usually a car.

**Question 0**

On what day will you wear a full suit?

**Question 1**

What is usually worn on legs to complement suits?

**Question 2**

What does each band base their costume show on?

**Question 3**

Where will mas bands eventually converge?

**Question 4**

Who will be crowned Road March King or Queen?

**Text number 40**

In Mexico, Carnival is celebrated in around 225 cities. The most popular are in Mazatlán and Veracruz, but also in Baja California and Yucatán. In the larger cities, carnivals involve costumes, the election of queens and parades with floats, but in smaller and rural areas carnivals vary greatly depending on the extent of European influence in colonial Mexico. The largest is in Huejotzingo, Puebla, where most of the townspeople take part in a show battle with rifles firing blanks, roughly based on the Battle of Puebla. Other important states with local traditions are Morelos, Oaxaca, Tlaxcala and Chiapas.

**Question 0**

How many cities in Mexico celebrate Carnival?

**Question 1**

What influences the variation of festivals in rural areas?

**Question 2**

Where do people engage in battles with empty rifles?

**Question 3**

What is the battle model based on?

**Question 4**

Morelos, Oaxaca, Tlaxcala and Chiapas are important states that also have their own what?

**Text number 41**

Carnival celebrations, usually referred to as Mardi Gras (Fat Tuesday in French), were first celebrated on the Gulf Coast, but are now celebrated in many states. The custom originated in the French colonial capitals of Mobile (now Alabama), New Orleans (Louisiana) and Biloxi (Mississippi), all of which have celebrated Mardi Gras for years with street parades and costume dances. Other major American cities celebrating the festival include Washington, DC, St. Louis, Missouri, San Francisco, San Diego, Galveston, Texas, and Miami, Pensacola, Tampa and Orlando in Florida.

**Question 0**

What does Mardi Gras mean in French?

**Question 1**

Where was Carnival first celebrated?

**Question 2**

What comes from the former colonial capitals of France?

**Question 3**

What has been part of the celebrations for years?

**Question 4**

Washington, D.C. and Galveston, Texas are some of the big American cities with what?

**Text number 42**

Carnival is celebrated in Brooklyn, New York. As in the UK, the timing of Carnival broke away from the Christian calendar and is celebrated on a Labour Monday in September. It is known as the Labor Day Carnival, West Indian Day Parade or West Indian Day Carnival, and was founded by immigrants from Trinidad. In the mid-19th century, the West Indians moved the event from Lent to Labour Day weekend. The carnival is one of New York's largest parades and street festivals, attracting over a million people. A parade of steel bands, floats, elaborate carnival costumes and sound trucks runs along Brooklyn's Eastern Parkway in the Crown Heights neighborhood.

**Question 0**

Which borough of New York City celebrates Carnival?

**Question 1**

What American holiday is celebrated on Carnival Day?

**Question 2**

Which country hosts one of the biggest carnivals in the Caribbean?

**Question 3**

How many people usually attend the New York version of Carnival?

**Question 4**

Which neighbourhood has the privilege of bearing the main responsibility for the celebrations?

**Text number 43**

The most representative carnival in Argentina is the so-called Murga, although other famous carnivals, more similar to Brazilian carnivals, are held in Mesopotamia and the Northeast of Argentina. Gualeguaychú, in the eastern part of the province of Entre Ríos, is the main carnival town and hosts one of the largest parades. The musical background of the carnival is similar to that of a Brazilian or Uruguayan carnival. Corrientes is another city with a carnival tradition. Chamame is a popular musical style. All major cities and many towns around the country celebrate carnival.

**Question 0**

Which of the Argentinian carnivals best represents the nature of carnival?

**Question 1**

Which town in the eastern part of Entre Rios province is considered the most important carnival?

**Question 2**

What kind of tradition does the city of Corrientes have?

**Question 3**

What is Chamame?

**Question 4**

Where is the carnival?

**Text number 44**

The La Diablada carnival takes place in Oruro, in central Bolivia. It is celebrated in honour of Vírgen de Socavon (Virgin of the Tunnels), the patron saint of miners. More than 50 parade groups dance, sing and play music along a five-kilometre route. Participants dress up as demons, devils, angels, Incas and Spanish conquistadors. Dances include caporales and tinkus. The parade lasts from dawn until late at night, 18 hours a day, three days before Ash Wednesday. It was declared a UNESCO Masterpiece of the Oral and Intangible Heritage in 2001. Celebrations are held throughout the country, including traditional rhythms and water festivals. In Santa Cruz de la Sierra, in the east of the country, the tropical weather allows for a Brazilian-style carnival, with Comparsas dancing traditional songs in matching uniforms.

**Question 0**

Which carnivals are held in Oruro, Bolivia?

**Question 1**

Who is the patron saint of miners?

**Question 2**

How many parade groups will take part in the celebrations?

**Question 3**

How many hours a day does the parade run?

**Question 4**

What does the tropical weather in eastern Bolivia allow?

**Text number 45**

Samba schools are large, social entities with thousands of members that sing and organise an annual themed song and parade. At the Rio Carnival, samba schools perform on the Sambadrome (Portuguese for "sambódromo"). The most famous are GRES Estação Primeira de Mangueira, GRES Portela, GRES Imperatriz Leopoldinense, GRES Beija-Flor de Nilópolis, GRES Mocidade Independente de Padre Miguel and, more recently, Unidos da Tijuca and GRES União da Ilha do Governador. Depending on the costume, local tourists pay between $500 and $950 to buy a samba costume and dance in the parade. Blocos are small informal groups whose samba has a specific theme, usually satirising the political situation. Around 30 schools in Rio gather hundreds of thousands of participants. There are more than 440 blocos in Rio. Bandas are samba music ensembles, also known as 'street carnival bands', usually formed within a single district or musical background. The carnival industry chain collected almost USD 1 billion in revenues in 2012.

**Question 0**

How many members are there in Samba schools?

**Question 1**

How much does a samba costume cost for an ordinary tourist?

**Question 2**

What is the name for small, somewhat random groups with a particular theme in their samba?

**Question 3**

How many samba schools are there in Rio?

**Question 4**

How much money did the carnival industry make in US dollars in 2012?

**Text number 46**

Carnivals continued to develop in small/insignificant towns beyond the reach of the rulers. The result was the uninterrupted celebration of the Barranquilla Carnival Festival (see Barranquilla Carnival), now recognised as one of the masterpieces of humanity's oral and intangible heritage. The Barranquilla Carnival consists of a series of parades on Friday and Saturday evenings, starting on 11 January and ending with a six-day continuous festival that starts on the Wednesday before Ash Wednesday and ends at midnight on Tuesday. Other celebrations are held in villages along the lower Magdalena River in northern Colombia and in Pasto, Nariño (see Black and White Carnival) in the south of the country. In the early 1900s, the government rejected attempts to introduce carnivals in Bogotá. Bogotá's carnival was reformed in the 2000s.

**Question 0**

At what point was the carnival born outside the rules?

**Question 1**

The uninterrupted celebration of carnival festivals in Barranquilla is now recognised as what?

**Question 2**

How many days does a non-stop festival last?

**Question 3**

Who abandoned attempts to introduce carnival in Bogota?

**Text number 47**

The most famous carnival celebrations are in Guaranda (Bolivar province) and Ambato (Tungurahua province). In Ambato, the festivities are called Fiesta de las Flores y las Frutas (Festival of Flowers and Fruits). Other towns have revived their carnival traditions with colourful parades, as in Azogues (Cañar province). In Azogues and the southern Andes in general, the Taita carnival is always indigenous to Cañar. More recently, the celebrations have taken off in the Chota valley of Imbabura, north of the Sierra Sierra, where there is a strong Afro-Ecuadorian population, so the carnival is celebrated to the tune of bomba del chota music.

**Question 0**

Where are the most famous carnival celebrations?

**Question 1**

What is the name of the party in Ambato?

**Question 2**

Where have the parties recently gained popularity?

**Question 3**

What is the population of the Chota Valley?

**Question 4**

What kind of music is used to celebrate Carnival in the Chota Valley?

**Text number 48**

A unique Creole tradition is touloulous. These women wear ornate robes, gloves, masks and headdresses that cover them completely, making them unrecognisable even down to their skin colour. On Friday and Saturday nights of Carnival, touloulou dances are held in the so-called universities, which are in fact large ballrooms open only during Carnival. Touloulous are admitted free of charge and are even given condoms to promote the sexual health of the community. Men attend the balls, but they pay an entrance fee and are not disguised. Touloulous choose their dance partners, who are not allowed to refuse. The arrangements are designed to make it easy for a woman to establish a temporary relationship with a man in complete anonymity. Unmasked women are not welcome. According to tradition, if such a woman gets up to dance, the orchestra stops playing. Alcohol is served in bars - masked women whisper "touloulou thirsty" to men, with the expectation of a round of drinks being sipped through straw to protect their anonymity.

**Question 0**

What is a tradition specific to the Creole people?

**Question 1**

Why does Touloulouloulous get free condoms?

**Question 2**

What do men have to do to get to the balls?

**Question 3**

What are Touloulous' dance partners not allowed to do?

**Question 4**

Why do women drink through a straw?

**Text number 49**

The Peruvian carnival contains elements of violence and reflects the urban violence in Peruvian society after the internal conflict in Peru. Traditionally, the Peruvian Andean festivals were held every year during this period because it is the rainy season. It was already violent in the 19th century, but the government restricted the practice. In the early 20th century, the celebrations consisted of parties and parades, while in the second half of the 20th century they took on violent characteristics that continued to this day. The Prado government first banned it from the streets in 1958 and then completely in 1959. It consisted mainly of water fights in the traditional manner,[clarification needed] while in later years it also included playing with dirty water, mud, oil and dyes - and also included fights and sometimes looting of private property and sexual assaults on women. It has become an excuse for criminal gangs to rob people pretending to party. As of 2010, it had become so violent that the government imposed prison sentences of up to eight years for violence during the Games (the Games themselves are not banned, but using violence during the Games or forcing others to participate is).

**Question 0**

What are the elements of the Peruvian carnival combined with?

**Question 1**

Why do festivals take place in Peru when they do?

**Question 2**

When did the party get violent?

**Question 3**

What is an element of the Peruvian carnival that is not found in any other country's festivities?

**Question 4**

How many years in prison can someone serve if they are violent while having fun?

**Text number 50**

Uruguay's carnival lasts over 40 days, usually starting in late January and running until mid-March. Montevideo has the biggest celebrations. The festival is organised in the European parade style, incorporating elements of the Bantu and Angolan Benguela cultures brought with slaves during the colonial period. The main attractions of the Uruguayan carnival include two colourful parades called Desfile de Carnaval (Carnival Parade) and Desfile de Llamadas (Invitation Parade, Candombe Cheer Parade).

**Question 0**

How many days does the Uruguayan Carnival last?

**Question 1**

What style of parade does the Uruguayan festival monkey with?

**Question 2**

What stylistic elements were used to introduce the parade during the colonial period?

**Question 3**

What are the main attractions of the Uruguayan Carnival?

**Question 4**

What is the Desfile de Llamadas parade?

**Text number 51**

During the celebrations, tablados theatres are built in many cities, especially in Montevideo. The various carnival groups (Murgas, Lubolos or Parodistas), which have traditionally been made up of men and are now beginning to open up to women, perform a kind of popular opera in tablados, singing and dancing songs usually related to the social and political situation. Calls groups, made up mainly of tamboril drummers, perform candombe rhythmic patterns. Partygoers dress up in their festival clothes. Each group has its own theme. Women in elegant, bright dresses are called vedettes and add a sensual touch to the parade.

**Question 0**

What is being built in many places through cities?

**Question 1**

What will the different carnival groups perform together?

**Question 2**

What topics are typically covered in tablado presentations?

**Question 3**

What kind of rhythmic patterns do tamboril drummers play?

**Question 4**

What kind of touch do vedettes give to parades?

**Document number 253**

**Text number 0**

Baptists are individuals who form a group of Christian denominations and churches that hold the doctrine that baptism should be for believers only (believer's baptism, as opposed to infant baptism) and that it must be performed by full immersion (as opposed to baptism or sprinkling). Other doctrines of the Baptist churches include the doctrines of the indwelling of the soul (liberty), salvation by faith alone, the Bible alone as the rule of faith and practice, and the autonomy of the local church. Baptists recognize two ministries, elders and deacons. Baptist churches are generally regarded as Protestant churches, although some Baptists deny this identity.

**Question 0**

Which individuals support the doctrine that baptism should only be administered to professing believers?

**Question 1**

Soul competence (freedom), salvation by faith alone, the Bible alone as the rule of faith and practice, and the autonomy of the local church, what are some examples of what?

**Question 2**

Which two ministries do Baptists recognise?

**Question 3**

Baptist churches are generally considered to be what?

**Question 4**

Which individuals support the doctrine that baptism should only be administered to non-believers?

**Question 5**

What two ministries do Baptists no longer recognise?

**Question 6**

Baptist churches are rarely held in what?

**Question 7**

Which group never visits Protestant churches?

**Question 8**

Which church includes salvation by faith and reason?

**Text number 1**

Historians trace the earliest "Baptist church" to 1609 in Amsterdam, pastored by an English separatist, John Smyth. According to his reading of the New Testament, he rejected the baptism of infants and instituted baptism only for believing adults. Baptist practice spread to England, where General Baptists believed that Christ's atonement extended to all people, while Particular Baptists believed it extended only to the elect. In 1638, Roger Williams established the first Baptist church in the North American colonies. The First Great Awakening in the mid-1700s fueled the growth of Baptists in both New England and the South. The Second Great Awakening in the early 1800s in the South increased church membership, as did the fact that preachers reduced their support for the abolition of slavery and manumission, which had been part of the teachings of the 1700s. Baptist missionaries have spread their church to every continent.

**Question 0**

When was the earliest church called "Baptist"?

**Question 1**

Where was the earliest church called "Baptist" traced back to?

**Question 2**

Who was the pastor of the earliest church to be called "Baptist"?

**Question 3**

Who believed that Christ's atonement was only for the elect?

**Question 4**

When did Roger Williams plant the first Baptist church in the North American colonies?

**Question 5**

When was the earliest church called "Christian"?

**Question 6**

Where was the earliest church called "Christian" traced back to?

**Question 7**

Who was the pastor of the earliest church to be called "Christian"?

**Question 8**

Who believed that Christ's atonement extended to all of life?

**Question 9**

When did Roger Williams plant the first Baptist church in South America?

**Text number 2**

Baptist historian Bruce Gourley outlines four main views on the origins of Baptists: (1) the modern scholarly consensus that the movement originated in the 17th century with English separatists, (2) the view that it was an outgrowth of Anabaptist traditions, (3) the perpetuity view that Baptist faith and practice have existed since the time of Christ, and (4) the perpetuity view or "Baptist heredity" that Baptist churches have existed as an unbroken chain since the time of Christ.

**Question 0**

Who outlined the four main beliefs about the origins of Baptists?

**Question 1**

The origin of the Baptists was thought to be due to what?

**Question 2**

What does a perpetuity view require?

**Question 3**

What does the successionist view require?

**Question 4**

Who outlined the three main beliefs about the origins of Baptists?

**Question 5**

The Baptist origin was considered an extension of what?

**Question 6**

According to which view have Baptist churches existed in a broken chain since the time of Christ?

**Question 7**

Which movement originated in the 1500s with English separatists?

**Text number 3**

Modern Baptist churches have their roots in the English separatist movement, which emerged in the century after the original Protestant denominations. This view of Baptist origins has the most historical support and is the most widely accepted. Proponents of this position consider the influence of Anabaptists on early Baptists to be minimal. This was a time of considerable political and religious turmoil. Both individuals and congregations were willing to abandon their theological roots if they were convinced that a more biblical "truth" had been discovered.

**Question 0**

Where do modern Baptist churches have their roots?

**Question 1**

Proponents of this position consider the influence of Anabaptists on early Baptists to be what?

**Question 2**

Modern Baptist churches have their roots in the English separatist movement, which arose in the century after the rise of which church?

**Question 3**

What movement are the roots of modern Christian churches?

**Question 4**

There is little historical support for the view of what origin?

**Question 5**

Who was never ready to give up his theological roots?

**Question 6**

Who was convinced that there is no "truth" in the Bible?

**Text number 4**

During the Protestant Reformation, the Church of England (Anglicans) split from the Roman Catholic Church. There were some Christians who were not happy with the mainstream achievements of the Protestant Reformation. There were also Christians who were disappointed that the Church of England had not corrected what some felt were errors and abuses. Of those who were most critical of the Church's direction, some chose to stay and try to make constructive changes within the Anglican Church. They were known as 'Puritans', and Gourley describes them as cousins of the English separatists. Others decided to leave the church out of dissatisfaction and were known as 'separatists'.

**Question 0**

When did the Church of England split from the Roman Catholic Church?

**Question 1**

Who separated from the Roman Catholic Church during the Protestant Reformation?

**Question 2**

During the Protestant Reformation, the Church of England (Anglicans) split from whom?

**Question 3**

How does Gourley describe the Puritans?

**Question 4**

Others decided to leave the church because of their dissatisfaction and became known as the what?

**Question 5**

When did the Church of England merge with the Roman Catholic Church?

**Question 6**

Who joined the Roman Catholic Church during the Protestant Reformation?

**Question 7**

Who did Gourley describe as the brothers of the English separatists?

**Question 8**

Which group never disappointed the Church of England?

**Text number 5**

Historians trace the earliest Baptist church to 1609 in Amsterdam, with John Smyth as its pastor. Three years earlier, while a member of Christ's College in Cambridge, he had severed his ties with the Church of England. Raised in the Church of England, he became a 'Puritan, an English Separatist and then a Baptist Separatist', and ended his days working with Mennonites. He began meeting with 60-70 English separatists in England at a time of 'great danger'. The persecution of religious non-conformists in England led Smyth to go into exile in Amsterdam with other fellow separatists from a congregation he had gathered in Lincolnshire, separate from the established church (Anglican). Smyth and his lay supporter Thomas Helwys and the people they led separated from the other English exiles because Smyth and Helwys were convinced that they should be baptised as believers. In 1609, Smyth baptised first himself and then the others.

**Question 0**

When will historians trace the earliest Baptist church?

**Question 1**

Historians trace the origins of the earliest Baptist church to where?

**Question 2**

Who was the pastor of the earliest Baptist church?

**Question 3**

John Smyth cut his ties with which church?

**Question 4**

Where did John Smyth go into exile?

**Question 5**

Who was the pastor of the earliest Christian church?

**Question 6**

Where was the first Christian church pastored by John Smyth located?

**Question 7**

What year did Smyth get wet for the second time?

**Question 8**

Where did John Smyth retire?

**Question 9**

Where do historians trace the oldest Protestant church?

**Text number 6**

In 1609, while there, Smyth wrote a treatise entitled "The Nature of the Beast" or "The False Constitution of the Church". In it he made two arguments: firstly, infants must not be baptised and secondly, 'converted anti-Christians must be received into the true church by baptism'. His conviction was therefore that the biblical church should consist only of born-again believers baptised on the basis of a personal confession of faith. He rejected the Separatist doctrine of infant baptism (paedobaptism). Soon afterwards Smyth left the group, and the layman Thomas Helwys took over the leadership and led the church back to England in 1611. Eventually Smyth committed himself to believer's baptism as the only biblical baptism. He was convinced, based on his interpretation of the Bible, that infants would not be damned if they died in infancy.

**Question 0**

Smyth wrote a treatise entitled what?

**Question 1**

What was his first suggestion?

**Question 2**

What was his second suggestion?

**Question 3**

Smyth believed that the biblical church should consist only of born-again believers who have been what?

**Question 4**

What is child baptism?

**Question 5**

Smyth read a treatise entitled What?

**Question 6**

Who suggested that all infants should be baptised?

**Question 7**

What year did Smyth join the church with Thomas Helwys?

**Question 8**

Which movement believes that infants should never be baptised?

**Text number 7**

Smyth, convinced that his self-baptism was invalid, applied for Mennonite membership. He died while waiting for membership, and some of his followers became Mennonites. Thomas Helwys and others kept their baptism and Baptismal vows. The modern Baptist denomination is an outgrowth of the Smyth movement. Baptists rejected the name Anabaptist when opponents called them by that name in derision. McBeth writes that as late as the 1700s, many Baptists still referred to themselves as 'Christians, commonly, though erroneously, called Anabaptists'.

**Question 0**

Who thought that their self-defence was invalid?

**Question 1**

Smyth applied for membership from whom?

**Question 2**

What is the consequence of Smyth's move?

**Question 3**

What name did the Baptists reject?

**Question 4**

Who wrote that Baptists called themselves "Christians, commonly - though erroneously - called Anabaptists"?

**Question 5**

Who thought their self-deception was valid?

**Question 6**

Smyth was denied membership with whom?

**Question 7**

What name did Baptist change?

**Question 8**

Who died after becoming a member of the Mennonites?

**Question 9**

Who lost their Baptist commitment?

**Text number 8**

Another milestone in the early development of Baptist doctrine came in 1638, when John Spilsbury, a Calvinist minister, helped promote the strict practice of believer's baptism by immersion. According to Tom Nettles, professor of historical theology at Southern Baptist Theological Seminary, "Spilsbury's persuasive arguments that a disciplined congregation of believers baptized by immersion constituted a New Testament church expressed and built on insights that had been born in separatism, advanced in the life of John Smyth and the suffering church of Thomas Helwyn, and matured in Particular Baptists."

**Question 0**

When did John Spilsbury promote the strict practice of immersion?

**Question 1**

Who promoted the tight embedding sauce?

**Question 2**

Tom Nettles was a professor at which seminar?

**Question 3**

What was Tom Nettles a professor of?

**Question 4**

When did John Spilsbury create a strict immersion policy?

**Question 5**

Who destroyed the strict immersion dew?

**Question 6**

Tom Nettles was a student at which seminar?

**Question 7**

What did Tom Nettles study?

**Text number 9**

A minority view is that the Baptists of the early 17th century were influenced by (but not directly connected to) the Anabaptists of continental Europe. According to this view, the General Baptists shared similarities with the Dutch Waterlander Mennonites (one of several Anabaptist groups), including baptism for believers only, religious liberty, separation of church and state, and Arminian views on salvation, predestination and original sin. Representative authors include A.C. Underwood and William R. Estep. Gourley wrote that among some contemporary Baptist scholars who emphasize communal faith over soul liberty, Anabaptist influence theory is making a comeback.

**Question 0**

Who was believed to have been influenced by the continental Anabaptists?

**Question 1**

Who was thought to have influenced the Baptists of the early 1600s?

**Question 2**

With whom did the General Baptists have similarities?

**Question 3**

Who are the two representative authors?

**Question 4**

What were the Dutch Waterlander mennonites?

**Question 5**

Who was thought to be under the control of the continental Anabaptists?

**Question 6**

Early sixteenth-century Baptists were believed to have been inspired by whom?

**Question 7**

The Anabaptists had similarities with whom?

**Question 8**

Who were the Dutch water mennonites avoiding?

**Question 9**

Which theory lost credibility?

**Text number 10**

Both Roger Williams and John Clarke, his compatriot and fellow religious freedom fighter, are variously credited with founding the earliest Baptist church in North America. In 1639, Williams founded a Baptist church in Providence, Rhode Island, and Clarke started a Baptist church in Newport, Rhode Island. According to an extensively researched Baptist historian, "There has been much debate over the centuries as to whether the Providence or Newport church deserved to be the 'first' Baptist church in America. There are no accurate records for either church."

**Question 0**

Who founded the earliest Baptist church in North America?

**Question 1**

When was the first American Baptist church founded?

**Question 2**

Where did Roger Williams start a Baptist church?

**Question 3**

Where did John Clarke found a Baptist church?

**Question 4**

What was Clarke to Williams?

**Question 5**

Who founded the earliest Baptist church in South America?

**Question 6**

Where did Roger Williams lose his Baptist church?

**Question 7**

Where did John Clarke start the Anabaptist Church?

**Question 8**

When was the last American Anabaptist church founded?

**Text number 11**

Baptist missionary work in Canada began in the British colony of Nova Scotia (now Nova Scotia and New Brunswick) in the 1760s. The first official record of a Baptist church in Canada was the Horton Baptist Church (now Wolfville) in Wolfville, Nova Scotia on 29 October 1778. The congregation was established with the help of Henry Alline, an evangelist of the New Light. Many of Alline's followers were converted after his death and strengthened the Baptist presence in the Atlantic region. 2 large Baptist groups formed the basis of the Maritimes churches. These were called Regular Baptists (Calvinistic in doctrine) and Free Will Baptists.

**Question 0**

Which Canadian colony started the missionary work?

**Question 1**

When did missionary work in Canada start?

**Question 2**

What was the first Baptist church in Canada?

**Question 3**

Where was Canada's first Baptist church located?

**Question 4**

When was the first Baptist church in Canada founded?

**Question 5**

Which American colony started the missionary work?

**Question 6**

When did missionary work begin in America?

**Question 7**

What was the first church of any kind in Canada?

**Question 8**

Where was the first Anabaptist church in Canada located?

**Question 9**

When was the first American Baptist church founded?

**Text number 12**

In May 1845, Baptist churches in the United States separated from slavery and missionary work. The Home Missionary Society prevented slave owners from appointing missionaries. The split gave birth to the Southern Baptist Convention, while northern churches formed their own umbrella organization, now known as American Baptist Churches USA (ABC-USA). The Southern Methodist Episcopal Church had recently seceded over the slavery issue, and Southern Presbyterians would do so soon after.

**Question 0**

When did Baptist churches disperse because of slavery?

**Question 1**

Why did American Baptist churches split?

**Question 2**

Slave owners were prevented from appointing what?

**Question 3**

Who prevented slave owners from appointing missionaries?

**Question 4**

The northern congregations formed which organisation?

**Question 5**

When did Baptist churches join forces against slavery?

**Question 6**

Why do American Baptist churches work together?

**Question 7**

Slave owners were typically appointed to what?

**Question 8**

Who encouraged slave owners to become missionaries?

**Question 9**

What was the organisation of the southern congregations?

**Text number 13**

Many Baptist churches want to join organised groups that offer unsupervised fellowship. The largest such group is the Southern Baptist Convention. There are also a significant number of smaller cooperative groups. There are also Baptist churches that wish to remain autonomous and independent of any denomination, organization or association. It has been suggested that the primary principle of Baptists is that local Baptist churches are independent and self-governing, and if this is the case, the term "Baptist denomination" may be considered somewhat inappropriate.

**Question 0**

What is the largest community without control?

**Question 1**

It has been suggested that the primary principle of Baptists is that local Baptist churches are what?

**Question 2**

What term is considered somewhat inappropriate in an autonomous church?

**Question 3**

What is the smallest community without controls?

**Question 4**

Which churches will never become independent?

**Question 5**

What has never been proposed as a Baptist first principle?

**Question 6**

What term is not considered inappropriate?

**Text number 14**

Baptists, like other Christians, are defined by doctrine - some of it common to all orthodox and evangelical groups and some of it specific to Baptists. Over the years, different Baptist groups have published confessions of faith - without considering them to be confessions of faith - to express their own particular doctrinal distinctions in relation to other Christians and in relation to other Baptists. Most Baptists are evangelical in doctrine, but Baptist beliefs may vary due to the congregational system of government, which gives autonomy to individual local Baptist churches. Historically, Baptists have played a key role in promoting religious freedom and the separation of church and state.

**Question 0**

What defines Baptists?

**Question 1**

What have Baptists published without considering them to be creeds?

**Question 2**

What doctrines do most Baptists stand for?

**Question 3**

Where have Baptists played a key role?

**Question 4**

What group of Christians is not defined by doctrine?

**Question 5**

What have Baptists published when they consider them to be creeds?

**Question 6**

Most Baptists exclude which doctrine?

**Question 7**

Where have Baptists played a small role?

**Text number 15**

Common doctrines include beliefs in one God, virgin birth, miracles, atonement for sins through Jesus' death, burial and resurrection, the Trinity, and the need for salvation (believing in Jesus Christ as the Son of God, his death and resurrection, and confessing Christ as Lord); grace; the kingdom of God; the last things (eschatology) (Jesus Christ returning in person and visibly in glory to earth, the dead being raised to life, and Christ judging all in righteousness); and evangelism and mission. Historically significant Baptist doctrinal documents include the London Baptist Confession of Faith of 1689, the Philadelphia Baptist Confession of Faith of 1742, the New Hampshire Baptist Confession of Faith of 1833, the Southern Baptist Convention Baptist Faith and Message, and written church covenants that some individual Baptist churches adopt as their statement of faith and belief.

**Question 0**

Beliefs in one God, virgin birth, miracles, atonement for sins through Jesus' death, burial and bodily resurrection are examples of what?

**Question 1**

When was the London Baptist Confession of Faith written?

**Question 2**

When was the Philadelphia Baptist Confession written?

**Question 3**

When was the New Hampshire Baptist Confession of Faith written?

**Question 4**

When was the London Baptist confession of faith abolished?

**Question 5**

When was the Philadelphia Baptist Confession abolished?

**Question 6**

What belief is not shared by the doctrines?

**Question 7**

Who was considered the father of God?

**Text number 16**

In their 400-year history, Baptists have faced many controversies that have reached crisis proportions. Baptist historian Walter Shurden says the word "crisis" comes from the Greek word meaning "to decide". Shurden writes that, contrary to the supposed negative view of crises, some disputes that reach crisis level can actually be "positive and highly productive". He argues that even schism, while never ideal, has often produced positive results. In his view, the crises that have occurred among Baptists have each become defining moments that have shaped their future. Some of the controversies that have shaped Baptists include the "mission crisis", the "slavery crisis", the "landmark crisis" and the "modernism crisis".

**Question 0**

"Crisis" comes from the Greek word for what?

**Question 1**

Who wrote that some disputes that reach crisis levels can actually be "positive and highly productive"?

**Question 2**

What Shurden argued was never ideal, has often produced positive results?

**Question 3**

What controversies have shaped Baptists?

**Question 4**

"Crisis" comes from a Latin word meaning what?

**Question 5**

Who wrote that some disputes that reach crisis levels can actually be "negative and unproductive"?

**Question 6**

Which group has faced many disputes in its 300-year history?

**Question 7**

What has never helped shape Baptists?

**Text number 17**

In the run-up to the American Civil War, Baptists became embroiled in a dispute over slavery in the United States. While Methodists and Baptist missionaries during the first Great Awakening had opposed slavery and called for the emancipation of slaves, over the decades they became more aligned with the institution. They worked with southern slave owners for a paternalistic institution. Both denominations appealed directly to slaves and free blacks to convert. Baptists in particular allowed them an active role in churches. By the mid-19th century, Northern Baptists generally opposed slavery. As tensions rose, the Home Mission Society refused in 1844 to appoint as a missionary a slave owner who had been proposed by Georgia. It stated that missionaries could not take servants with them and that the board of trustees also did not want to appear to tolerate slavery.

**Question 0**

When did Baptists get involved in the slavery controversy in the United States?

**Question 1**

When did the Methodists and Baptist missionaries oppose slavery and call for the liberation of people?

**Question 2**

They worked with the slave owners in the south to push for what?

**Question 3**

Which denomination allows blacks to play an active role in the church?

**Question 4**

What refused to appoint a slave owner as a missionary?

**Question 5**

When were Baptists excluded from the slavery controversy in the United States?

**Question 6**

When did Methodist and Baptist women promote slavery and call for the emancipation of people?

**Question 7**

What did the Baptists working with slave owners in the North urge?

**Question 8**

Which denomination denied blacks an active role in the church?

**Question 9**

In what year did the Home Mission Society appoint a slave owner as a missionary?

**Text number 18**

As early as the late 1700s, black Baptists began to organise separate churches, associations and missionary organisations, especially in the northern states. Blacks established some independent congregations in the South before the American Civil War, and after the war those who were freed quickly separated from white churches and associations. They wanted to be free from white control. In 1866, the Consolidated American Baptist Convention, formed by black Baptists from the South and West, helped southern associations to establish black state conventions, and this was done in Alabama, Arkansas, Virginia, North Carolina and Kentucky. In 1880, the black state conventions merged into a national foreign missionary convention to support black Baptist missionary work. Two other national black conventions were formed, and in 1895 they merged into the National Baptist Convention, an organisation that later underwent its own changes and other conventions broke away. It is the largest black religious organisation and the second largest Baptist organisation in the world. Baptists are the most numerically dominant in the Southeast. A 2007 Pew Research Center study of the religious landscape found that 45 percent of all African Americans identify with Baptist denominations, the vast majority of which are in historically black traditions.

**Question 0**

When did black Baptists begin to organise separate churches, associations and missionary organisations?

**Question 1**

Who left white churches and associations after the war?

**Question 2**

Who wanted to free themselves from white subjugation?

**Question 3**

In which states are there black conventions?

**Question 4**

What percentage of African-Americans profess Baptist denominations?

**Question 5**

When did black Baptists start to organise united churches, associations and missionary organisations?

**Question 6**

Who left black churches and associations after the war?

**Question 7**

Who wanted to be free from black control?

**Question 8**

Which states have white conventions?

**Question 9**

What percentage of all Americans identify themselves as Baptist denominations?

**Text number 19**

Elsewhere in the Americas, especially in the Caribbean, Baptist missionaries were active in the anti-slavery movement. In Jamaica, for example, William Knibb, a prominent British Baptist missionary, sought to promote the emancipation of slaves in the British West Indies (which took place in 1838). Knibb also promoted the establishment of 'free villages', rural communities centred around a Baptist church where freed slaves could cultivate their own land. Baptists were also active in promoting the education of former slaves; for example, the Calabar High School in Jamaica, named after the slave port of Calabar, was founded by Baptist missionaries. At the same time during and after slavery, slaves and freedmen formed their own Baptist spiritual movements - breakaway spiritual movements that often expressed resistance to oppression.

**Question 0**

Where did Baptist missionaries take an active role in the anti-slavery movement?

**Question 1**

Who was a prominent British Baptist missionary in Jamaica?

**Question 2**

Where did William Knibb work to free slaves?

**Question 3**

Knibb was also involved in the creation of what?

**Question 4**

What was named after the slave port of Calabar?

**Question 5**

Where did Baptist missionaries not participate in the anti-slavery movement?

**Question 6**

Who was a prominent British Baptist missionary in America?

**Question 7**

What was the slave port of Calabar named after?

**Question 8**

What was William Knibb the protagonist of the disaster?

**Text number 20**

On June 20, 1995, the Southern Baptist Convention passed a resolution renouncing its racist roots and apologizing for its past advocacy of slavery. More than 20,000 Southern Baptists registered for the convention in Atlanta. The resolution declared that the messengers, as SBC delegates are called, "unwaveringly condemn racism in all its forms as a deplorable sin" and "deplore and reject the historic evils of slavery, which continue to reap a bitter harvest." It apologized to all African-Americans for "tolerating and/or perpetuating individual and systemic racism in our lifetime" and expressed remorse for "racism we have consciously or unconsciously committed." Although Southern Baptists have denounced racism before, this was the first time that a predominantly white convention specifically addressed the issue of slavery.

**Question 0**

When did the Southern Baptist Convention vote on a resolution renouncing its racist roots?

**Question 1**

How many Baptists registered for the Atlanta meeting?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the SBC representatives?

**Question 3**

When did the Southern Baptist Convention vote to pass a resolution declaring its racist roots?

**Question 4**

How many Baptists did not register for the Atlanta meeting?

**Question 5**

SBC representatives are never invited why?

**Question 6**

Who has not condemned racism in the past?

**Text number 21**

Southern Baptist Landmarkism sought to restore the ecclesiastical separation that had characterized the old Baptist churches, in an era when interdenominational covenants were commonplace. James Robinson Graves was an influential Baptist of the 19th century and the main leader of this movement. Although some Landmarkers eventually seceded from the Southern Baptist Convention, the movement's influence on the Convention continued into the 20th century. Its influence continues to influence convention policy. In 2005, the Southern Baptist International Mission Board banned its missionaries from baptizing strangers at baptism.

**Question 0**

What was done to restore the ecclesiastical separation that had characterized the old Baptist churches?

**Question 1**

Who was an influential Baptist in the 19th century and the main leader of this movement?

**Question 2**

When did the Southern Baptist International Mission Board prohibit its missionaries from administering foreign baptisms at baptism?

**Question 3**

What was the attempt to incorporate the ecclesiastical distinctiveness that had characterized the old Baptist churches?

**Question 4**

Who was an influential Baptist in the 1700s and the main leader of this movement?

**Question 5**

When did the Southern Baptist International Mission Board encourage its missionaries to baptise non-Christians?

**Question 6**

What influence no longer influences Convention policy?

**Text number 22**

After similar controversies over modernism, the Southern Baptist Convention held conservative theology as its official position. Two new Baptist groups were formed by moderate Southern Baptists who disagreed with the direction the Southern Baptist Convention was taking: the Alliance of Baptists in 1987 and the Cooperative Baptist Fellowship in 1991. Members of both groups initially identified themselves as Southern Baptists, but over time the groups "became permanent new Baptist families."

**Question 0**

What was the official position of the Southern Baptist Convention?

**Question 1**

What groups were founded by moderate Southern Baptists?

**Question 2**

When was the Baptist Union founded?

**Question 3**

When was Cooperative Baptist Fellowship founded?

**Question 4**

Conservative theology was the official position of what?

**Question 5**

The Southern Baptist Convention has never held what as its official position?

**Question 6**

When did the Baptist Union end?

**Question 7**

When was the Cooperative Baptist Fellowship destroyed?

**Question 8**

Conservative theology was never what official position?

**Question 9**

Which Baptist group embraced modernism?

**Document number 254**

**Text number 0**

Child labour is defined as the employment of children in any work that deprives children of their childhood, prevents them from attending regular schooling and is mentally, physically, socially or morally dangerous and harmful. Many international organisations consider this practice to be exploitation. Child labour is prohibited by law throughout the world. These laws do not consider all work performed by children to be child labour; exceptions include work performed by child artists, family work, supervised internships, certain types of work such as that performed by Amish children, certain forms of child labour common among Native American children, and others.

**Question 0**

What does child labour deprive children of?

**Question 1**

Are child artists exempt from child labour laws?

**Question 2**

Is the work done by Amish children an exception?

**Question 3**

Where is the legislation prohibiting child labour?

**Question 4**

Is all child labour child labour?

**Text number 1**

In developing countries with high levels of poverty and poor schooling opportunities, child labour is still widespread. In 2010, sub-Saharan Africa had the highest rate of child labour, with more than 50% of children aged 5-14 working in several African countries. Globally, agriculture is the largest employer of child labour. The vast majority of child labourers work in rural and informal urban households, and children work mainly for their parents rather than in factories. Poverty and lack of schools are considered to be the primary causes of child labour.

**Question 0**

In which year was sub-Saharan Africa the region with the highest incidence of child labour?

**Question 1**

What is the largest employer of child labour?

**Question 2**

Who are the children mainly employed by?

**Question 3**

Lack of schooling and education are the primary causes of child labour.

**Text number 2**

Child labour was important in pre-industrial societies, as children had to provide labour for their own and their group's survival. Pre-industrial societies were characterised by low productivity and short life expectancy, so preventing children from participating in productive work would be more detrimental to their and their group's long-term well-being. In pre-industrial societies, the need for children to attend school was low. This was particularly the case in illiterate societies. Most pre-industrial skills and knowledge could be passed on through direct instruction or apprenticeships by qualified adults.

**Question 0**

Was the use of child labour necessary?

**Question 1**

Was there a great need for child education in pre-industrial society?

**Question 2**

Who taught children the skills they need for work?

**Question 3**

In pre-industrial societies, was human lifespan considered long or short?

**Text number 3**

The Victorian era in particular was notorious for child labour conditions. Children as young as four were employed in factories and mines, where they worked long hours in dangerous, often fatal working conditions. In coal mines, children crawled in tunnels too narrow and shallow for adults. Children also worked as errand boys, street sweepers, shoe polishers or sold matches, flowers and other cheap goods. Some children became apprentices in respectable trades, such as construction, or domestic servants (there were over 120 000 domestic servants in London in the mid-1700s). Working hours were long: builders worked 64 hours a week in summer and 52 hours in winter, while domestic servants worked 80-hour weeks.

**Question 0**

How many hours per week did the domestic worker work on average?

**Question 1**

How many domestic servants were there in London in the mid-1700s?

**Question 2**

What was the youngest age of a child working in a factory?

**Question 3**

How many hours did the builders work during the winter?

**Question 4**

Were the children able to take an apprenticeship?

**Text number 4**

Child labour played an important role in the industrial revolution from its inception, often due to economic hardship. In 19th century Britain, a third of poor families were without a breadwinner due to death or abandonment, forcing many children to work from a young age. In England and Scotland in 1788, two-thirds of the workers in 143 hydroelectric cotton mills were children. A large number of children also worked as prostitutes. The writer Charles Dickens worked in a black factory at the age of 12, and his family was in debt bondage.

**Question 0**

How many families were without a breadwinner?

**Question 1**

How many water-powered cotton mills in England and Scotland used child labour in 1788?

**Question 2**

Was the number of children working in prostitution low or high?

**Question 3**

Where did Charles Dickens work as a child?

**Question 4**

What was the main driving force behind child labour during the industrial revolution?

**Text number 5**

In the second half of the 19th century, the use of child labour began to decline in industrialised societies due to regulatory and economic factors. The regulation of child labour began in the early stages of the industrial revolution. The first law regulating child labour was passed in Britain in 1803. As early as 1802 and 1819, the Factory Acts were passed, regulating the working hours of working children in factories and cotton mills to 12 hours a day. These laws were largely ineffective, and after radical agitation by groups such as the Short Time Committees in 1831, the Royal Commission recommended in 1833 that children aged 11-18 should work no more than 12 hours a day, children aged 9-11 no more than 8 hours, and that children under 9 should no longer be allowed to work. However, this law only applied to the textile industry, and further agitation led to a second law in 1847 limiting both adults and children to 10-hour working days. Lord Shaftesbury was an outspoken advocate of regulating child labour.

**Question 0**

Were there advocates for working children in the 19th century?

**Question 1**

At what age was it allowed to work in a textile mill in 1833?

**Question 2**

In what year were both adults and children only allowed to work 10 hours a day?

**Question 3**

Did the need for child labour increase or decrease in the 19th century?

**Question 4**

In what year did the UK first introduce child labour legislation?

**Text number 6**

In the early 1900s, thousands of boys worked in the glass-making industry. Glassmaking was dangerous and hard work, especially without modern technology. The glassmaking process involves melting glass at high temperatures (3133°F). When boys are at work, they are exposed to this heat. This can cause eye problems, lung disease, heat exhaustion, cuts and burns. Since workers were paid a piece rate, they had to work productive hours without a break. As the ovens had to be constantly fired, night shifts were between 17.00 and 03.00. Many factory owners favoured boys under 16 years of age.

**Question 0**

When were young boys employed in the glass industry?

**Question 1**

Were children exposed to heating elements under glass manufacturing conditions?

**Question 2**

Were the boys in the glass industry paid an hourly wage?

**Question 3**

Do the glass industry favour older working-class boys?

**Text number 7**

In 1910, there were more than 2 million children of the same age working in the United States. Children rolled cigarettes, did factory work, worked as spinners in textile mills, worked in coal mines and worked in canneries. Lewis Hine's photographs of child labourers in the 1910s evoked vividly the plight of working-class children in the American South. Hines took these photographs between 1908 and 1917 as a staff photographer for the National Child Labor Committee.

**Question 0**

Where did photographer Lewis Hine work?

**Question 1**

What year did more than 2 million children work in the US?

**Question 2**

What did the children do in the factory?

**Question 3**

What did a child do in textile mills in the US?

**Text number 8**

Factories and mines were not the only places where child labour was used in the early 20th century. Domestic production in the United States and Europe also employed children. Governments and reformers argued that factory labour had to be regulated and that the state had a duty to provide welfare for the poor. Subsequent legislation led to a shift of work from factories to urban homes. Families and women in particular liked it because it allowed them to earn an income while doing domestic work.

**Question 0**

Why would families prefer to work at home rather than in a factory?

**Question 1**

At the beginning of the 20th century, states began to have a responsibility to look after whom?

**Question 2**

Did children work at home, in factories and elsewhere in the 20th century?

**Text number 9**

Domestic manufacturing activity was active throughout the year. Families were happy to employ their children in these income-generating home-based businesses. In many cases, men worked from home. In France, more than 58% of garment workers worked from home; in Germany, the number of full-time home-based businesses nearly doubled between 1882 and 1907; and in the United States, millions of families worked at home seven days a week, year-round, to produce clothing, shoes, artificial flowers, feathers, matchboxes, toys, umbrellas and other products. Children aged 5-14 years worked alongside their parents. Domestic work and child labour were common in Australia, Britain, Austria and other parts of the world. Families in rural areas also used their children in agriculture. In 1946, Frieda Miller - then head of the US Department of Labor - told the International Labour Organization that these cottage industries offered 'low wages, long working hours, child labour, unhealthy and unsanitary working conditions'.

**Question 0**

When were home preparation activities for children organised?

**Question 1**

Who did the children work alongside?

**Question 2**

Where did children in rural areas work?

**Question 3**

How were the working conditions of children working at home described?

**Question 4**

Who was the head of the US Department of Labor in 1946?

**Text number 10**

Child labour is still widespread in many parts of the world. The amount of child labour varies. It ranges from 250 million to 304 million, if you include children aged 5 to 17 who are involved in any economic activity. If light casual labour is excluded, the ILO estimates that there were 153 million child labourers aged 5-14 worldwide in 2008. This is about 20 million less than the ILO estimate of child labourers in 2004. Around 60% of child labour was involved in agricultural activities such as farming, dairy farming, fishing and forestry. Another 25 per cent of child labourers worked in service activities such as retail trade, merchandising, restaurants, loading and moving goods, warehousing, garbage collection and recycling, shoe shining, domestic work and other services. The remaining 15% worked in assembly and manufacturing jobs in the informal economy, home-based businesses, factories, mines, packing salt, operating machinery and other similar jobs. Two out of three child workers work alongside their parents in unpaid family work. Some children work as tourist guides, sometimes combined with acquiring business in shops and restaurants. Child labour is mainly used in rural areas (70%) and in the informal urban sector (26%).

**Question 0**

Does child labour exist in the 21st century?

**Question 1**

Where is child labour currently most prevalent?

**Question 2**

How many children in today's world work alongside their parents?

**Question 3**

A child acting as a guide for whom?

**Text number 11**

Child labour accounts for 22% of the labour force in Asia, 32% in Africa, 17% in Latin America and 1% in the United States, Canada, Europe and other rich countries. The share of child labourers varies widely across countries and even regions. Africa has the highest number of children aged 5-17 in child labour, with more than 65 million. Asia, with its larger population, has the highest number of child labourers, around 114 million. Latin America and the Caribbean has a lower population density, but also has a high child labour rate, with 14 million child workers.

**Question 0**

Which country has the highest child labour rate?

**Question 1**

How many millions of children work in Asia?

**Question 2**

What percentage of children are currently working in the US?

**Question 3**

In the Caribbean and where else is the number of child workers low?

**Text number 12**

Accurate current child labour data is difficult to obtain due to disagreements between data sources on what constitutes child labour. Government policies in some countries contribute to this difficulty. In China, for example, the overall extent of child labour   
is unclear because the government classifies child labour data as 'highly confidential'. China has enacted regulations to prevent child labour, yet child labour is reported to be a persistent problem in China, usually in agriculture and low-skilled service sectors, as well as in small workshops and manufacturing enterprises.  
 The US Department of Labor published a list of products produced using child labor or forced labor, in which China is listed as having 12 products, most of which are produced by underage children and forced laborers. Among the products listed in the report were electronics, clothing, toys and coal.

**Question 0**

Where are the current child labour statistics unclear?

**Question 1**

When did the United States draw up a list of products made mainly with child labour in China?

**Question 2**

What is the reason for the diaggregation of child labour today?

**Question 3**

Chinese children are known to make electronics, toys and what else?

**Text number 13**

According to the Maplecroft Child Labour Index 2012, 76 countries pose extreme child labour risks to global companies. The top 10 countries at greatest risk in 2012 were, in descending order, Myanmar, North Korea, Somalia, Sudan, Democratic Republic of Congo, Zimbabwe, Afghanistan, Burundi, Pakistan and Ethiopia. Among the high-growth economies, Maplecroft ranked the Philippines as the 25th riskiest, India 27th, China 36th, Vietnam 37th, Indonesia 46th and Brazil 54th - all of which were judged to pose extreme risks related to child labour uncertainties for companies seeking to invest in emerging markets and import products from emerging markets.

**Question 0**

According to the Maplecroft Child Labour Index, in how many countries is child labour unsafe?

**Question 1**

Which country ranks second in the Maplecroft Child Labour Index for child labour?

**Question 2**

What was the Philippines' ranking?

**Question 3**

Was Brazil on the list?

**Text number 14**

According to the ILO, the lack of meaningful alternatives such as affordable schools and quality education is another major factor driving children into harmful work. Children work because they have nothing better to do. Many communities, especially in rural areas where 60-70% of child labourers work, lack adequate schooling opportunities. Even when schools are sometimes available, they are too far away, difficult to access, expensive or of such poor quality that parents question whether schooling is really worth it.

**Question 0**

What is the main reason why children are in work today?

**Question 1**

Do poor families value education?

**Question 2**

In which communities is child labour most prevalent?

**Text number 15**

Throughout European history, when child labour was common, and in the modern world, certain cultural beliefs have rationalised and thus encouraged the use of child labour. Some believe that work is good for the development of children's character and skills. In many cultures, especially where the informal economy and small household enterprises flourish, it is a cultural tradition for children to follow in their parents' footsteps; child labour is then a means of learning and practising this trade from a very early age. Similarly, in many cultures, girls' education is less valued or girls are simply not expected to need formal schooling, and these girls are forced into child labour, such as providing domestic services.

**Question 0**

Has child labour been seen as a positive thing throughout European history?

**Question 1**

Are boys or girls more likely to be involved in child labour in some cultures?

**Question 2**

How do working parents benefit from having their children working alongside them?

**Question 3**

Do many cultures value a young girl's education?

**Text number 16**

Biggeri and Mehrotra have studied the macroeconomic factors contributing to child labour. They focus their research on five Asian countries: India, Pakistan, Indonesia, Thailand and the Philippines. They find that child labour is a serious problem in all five countries, but it is not a new problem. Macroeconomic reasons have encouraged the widespread use of child labour throughout the world for most of human history. They argue that the causes of child labour are both demand and supply-side. Poverty and lack of good schools explain the supply side of child labour, while demand side causes include the growth of a low-wage informal economy rather than a higher-wage formal economy. Other researchers also argue that inflexible labour markets, the high importance of the informal economy, the inability of industry to expand and the lack of modern production technology are important macroeconomic factors that influence the demand for and acceptability of child labour.

**Question 0**

Biggeri and Mehrotra mainly study Asian countries such as India, Pakistan, Indonesia, the Philippines and what other country?

**Question 1**

Is child labour a new problem in these Asian countries?

**Question 2**

Supply and what else causes child labour to persist?

**Question 3**

What contributes to child labour around the world?

**Text number 17**

The systematic use of child labour was common in the colonies of the European superpowers between 1650 and 1950. In Africa, the colonial administration encouraged traditional family-based production methods, i.e. employing the household rather than just adults to work. Millions of children worked on colonial agricultural plantations, in mines and in domestic service industries. In these colonies, sophisticated systems were developed whereby children aged 5-14 were hired as apprentices without pay in exchange for learning a craft. The Pauper Apprenticeship system was introduced in the 19th century, when a colonial master did not need the consent of the native parents or the child to allow the child to work for his parents on a distant farm owned by another colonial master. Other schemes included 'earn and learn' programmes, where children worked and thus learned. For example, in 1899 Britain passed the Masters and Servants Act, followed by the Tax and Pass Law, which promoted child labour in the colonies, particularly in Africa. These laws provided indigenous people with legal title to a portion of indigenous land in exchange for the labour of their wives and children for colonial administration, for example on farms and as picannins.

**Question 0**

How many children worked on colonial plantations?

**Question 1**

Were young apprentices hired for a wage?

**Question 2**

Was child labour widespread in the European colonies?

**Question 3**

How old were the child labourers in the colonial era?

**Question 4**

In which century did apprenticeships start?

**Text number 18**

In Southeast Asian colonies such as Hong Kong, child labour, such as Mui Tsai (妹仔), was considered a cultural tradition and was ignored by the British government. Officials of the Dutch East India Company justified child labour abuses by saying that "it is a way to save these children from a worse fate". Christian mission schools in areas from Zambia to Nigeria also required children to work in return for religious instruction, not secular education. Elsewhere in the Dominican Republic of Canada, the so-called Breaches of Contract Act imposed prison sentences on uncooperative child workers.

**Question 0**

Where did the British turn a blind eye to child labour?

**Question 1**

Which schools require child labour?

**Question 2**

Did child workers receive anything from Christian mission schools?

**Question 3**

What did Canadians do to children who didn't want to work?

**Text number 19**

Children working at a young age has been a consistent theme across Africa. Many children first started working at home to help their parents run the family farm. In today's Africa, children are often forced into exploitative labour due to family debt and other economic factors, leading to persistent poverty. Other forms of domestic child labour include working on commercial plantations, begging and other forms of sales work such as shining boots. In total, an estimated five million children are currently working in agriculture, and the number continues to rise at harvest time. Of the children who pick coffee, 30% work year-round, and an estimated 25 000 children of school age.

**Question 0**

Where do African children get their first job?

**Question 1**

What do African children mainly do when they work at home?

**Question 2**

How many children in Africa work in the ariculture sector?

**Question 3**

How many children in Africa pick coffee?

**Question 4**

How many children work all year round in Africa?

**Text number 20**

The sectors in which children work depend on whether they grew up in rural or urban areas. Children born in urban areas often work as street vendors, wash cars, help on construction sites, weave clothes and sometimes even work as exotic dancers. Children who grew up in rural areas, on the other hand, worked on farms doing manual labour, working with animals and selling crops. Of all child workers, the most serious cases involved street children and children who were victims of trafficking because they were physically and mentally abused by their employers. To tackle the problem of child labour, the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child was implemented in 1959. However, due to poverty, lack of education and ignorance, legislative measures have not been fully implemented or adopted in Africa.

**Question 0**

Where did children in urban areas mainly work?

**Question 1**

Where did children in rural areas work?

**Question 2**

When was the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child law implemented?

**Question 3**

What were the most serious consequences of child labour?

**Text number 21**

Other legal measures taken to end and reduce child labour include global action, which came into force in 1979 with the declaration of the International Year of the Child. Together with the United Nations Human Rights Committee, these two declarations work at many levels to eliminate child labour. Although many measures have been taken to end this epidemic, child labour in Africa remains a problem because of the unclear definition of puberty and the time children have to engage in activities that are crucial to their development. Another problem that often arises is the use of child labour in the household, as it is accepted in the culture that children help run the family business. Ultimately, the national government faces the ongoing challenge of strengthening its political grip on child labour and raising education and awareness about children working below the legal age. While children play an important role in Africa's economy, child labour continues to play an important role for many in the 20th century.

**Question 0**

In which countries is child labour still a problem?

**Question 1**

What is the problem with the definition of child labour in Africa?

**Question 2**

What is the cultural acceptance of child labour in Africa?

**Text number 22**

After European settlement in 1888, child prisoners were sometimes sent to Australia, where they were forced to work. Child labour in Australia was not as unreasonable as in the UK. Because of the small population, agricultural productivity was higher and families were not threatened with starvation as in established industrialised countries. Australia also did not have a significant industry until the late 20th century, when child labour laws and compulsory education had developed under British influence. From the 1870s onwards, child labour was restricted by the school curfew.

**Question 0**

In 1888, which country sent the most child prisoners?

**Question 1**

What limited the use of child labour in Australia in the 1870s?

**Question 2**

Was child labour common in Australia?

**Question 3**

When did industrialisation start in Australia?

**Text number 23**

Child labour has been a constant struggle for children in Brazil since Pedro Álvares Cabral settled the country on 22 April 1550. The work in which many children were involved was not always visible, legal or paid. Free or slave labour was common for many young people and was part of their daily lives as they grew up. In the absence of a clear definition of how to classify a child or young person, there is little historical documentation of child labour in the colonial period. This lack of documentation makes it difficult to determine how many children were used in what types of work before the 1800s. The earliest documentation of child labour in Brazil dates back to the indigenous and slave labour era, when it was observed that children were forcibly employed in tasks that exceeded their mental and physical limits. For example, Armando Dias died in November 1913, when he was still very young, as the victim of an electric shock when he entered the textile industry where he was working. Boys and girls were victims of accidents at work every day.

**Question 0**

When was Brazil settled?

**Question 1**

Who colonised Brazil?

**Question 2**

Who were the victims of industrial accidents?

**Question 3**

When was child labour in Brazil first documented?

**Question 4**

How did Armando Dias die?

**Text number 24**

In Brazil, the minimum working age has been set at fourteen years due to continuous constitutional amendments in 1934, 1937 and 1946. With the change to a military dictatorship in the 1980s, the minimum age limit was lowered to twelve, but was revised in 1988 following reports of dangerous and hazardous working conditions. This led to the minimum age being raised again to 14. In 1998, a second restriction was adopted, limiting the types of work allowed for young people, such as work considered hazardous, such as the use of construction machinery, or certain types of factory work. Although many measures have been taken to reduce the risk and incidence of child labour, there are still many children and young people under 14 working in Brazil. Only recently, in the 1980s, was it discovered that nearly nine million Brazilian children work illegally and do not participate in traditional childhood activities that help develop important life experiences.

**Question 0**

What is the minimum working age in Brazil?

**Question 1**

What year did Brazil restrict dangerous working conditions to children?

**Question 2**

Are there underage children working in Brazil?

**Question 3**

How many children worked illegally in Brazil in the 1980s?

**Text number 25**

According to Brazilian census data (PNAD, 1999), 2.55 million 10-14 year olds were working illegally. They were joined by 3.7 million 15-17 year olds and about 375,000 5-9 year olds. Due to the increased age limit of 14 years, at least half of young workers were employed illegally, with the result that many of them were not protected by important labour laws. Although much time has passed since the regulation of child labour, Brazil still has a large number of children working illegally. Many children are used by drug cartels to sell and transport drugs, weapons and other illegal substances, believing themselves to be innocent. This type of work involving young people is very dangerous because of the physical and psychological consequences associated with such work. However, despite the dangers associated with working with drug traffickers, employment in this sector has increased throughout the country.

**Question 0**

How many children were working illegally in Brazil in 1999?

**Question 1**

What do drug cartels do to child workers?

**Question 2**

What are the risks of child labour in drug cartels?

**Question 3**

Have these dangers caused an increase or decrease in the use of child labour in drug cartels?

**Text number 26**

Many factors, such as the industrial revolution of the late 17th century and the significant presence of child labour during the industrial period, played a role in Britain's long-term economic growth. Children who worked at an early age were often not forced to do so, but did so because they needed to help their families survive economically. As employment opportunities were poor for many parents, sending children to work on farms and in factories was a way of helping to feed and support the family. The use of child labour began in England when household enterprises were turned into local labour markets, where previously home-made products were mass-produced. Since children often helped produce goods in their homes, working in factories to make the same goods was an easy change for many of these young people. Although there are several figures for children under the age of ten working in factories, the majority of child workers were between the ages of ten and fourteen. This age was an important time for many young people, as they were first helping to support their families, while also moving into saving for their own future families.

**Question 0**

If you don't have to, why do children?

**Question 1**

What was the age of most child workers in Britain?

**Question 2**

Why was this age distribution important?

**Question 3**

What kind of job opportunities did parents have during this period?

**Text number 27**

In addition to the obligation, many children had to help their families financially; another factor affecting child labour was the demographic changes that occurred in the 1700s. By the end of the eighteenth century, 20% of the population was made up of children aged between 5 and 14. This significant change in the size of the workforce and the development of the industrial revolution meant that children began to work in businesses outside the home at an earlier stage in their lives. While the use of child labour increased in factories such as cotton textile mills, agricultural and domestic production continued to employ large numbers of children.

**Question 0**

What kind of support did the child give his/her family by working?

**Question 1**

In which factories did the need for child labour increase?

**Question 2**

Did the agricultural sector increase or decrease?

**Text number 28**

As a large proportion of children worked, illiteracy and lack of formal education was a widespread problem for many children who worked to support their families. Because of this problematic trend, many parents changed their minds when deciding whether or not to send their children to work. Other factors that led to the decline in child labour were economic changes in the economy, changes in technological advances, rising wages and continued factory regulations.

**Question 0**

Where did the problem of the working child come from?

**Question 1**

Was illiteracy a factor in changing the minds of child labourers' parents?

**Question 2**

What are the reasons leading to a reduction in child labour?

**Text number 29**

The first legislative measures to end child labour were taken more than fifty years ago. In 1966, the nation adopted the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights at the UN General Assembly. However, 23 years later, in 1989, the Convention on the Rights of the Child was adopted, helping to reduce child exploitation and requiring safe working environments. All these measures were aimed at ending the most problematic forms of child labour.

**Question 0**

When did the UN General Assembly adopt the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights?

**Question 1**

What caused this act?

**Question 2**

When was the legislation on safe working environments for child workers adopted?

**Question 3**

What did it help to do?

**Text number 30**

On 23 June 1757, the British East India Company defeated the Bengal Nawab Siraj-ud-Daulan at the Battle of Plassey. Thus the British became the rulers of East India (Bengal, Bihar, Orissa) - a prosperous region where agriculture, industry and trade flourished. This led to large numbers of children being forced into forced labour as the need for cheap labour increased to produce large quantities of goods. Many multinational companies often employed children because they could be hired at lower wages and because they had more sustainability to exploit in a factory environment. Another reason why many Indian children were hired was that they did not know their basic rights, they did not cause problems or complain, and they were often more reliable. Many took advantage of their childhood innocence in the pursuit of profit, encouraged by the need for family income.

**Question 0**

When did the British East India Company defeat Siraj-ud-Daula?

**Question 1**

Who was the Lord of the East of India?

**Question 2**

Why were many children at work?

**Question 3**

What was the primary reason for the employment of Indian children?

**Question 4**

How do child workers in India work?

**Text number 31**

Several Indian social scientists and NGOs have conducted extensive studies on the quantitative figures of child labour in India and have found that India accounts for one-third of Asian child labour and one-quarter of global child labour. Given the large number of children working illegally, the Indian government took extensive steps to reduce child labour and focus on promoting the proper growth and development of children.

**Question 0**

How much of the world's child labour is due to Indian workers?

**Question 1**

How many Asian child workers are from India?

**Question 2**

Has the Indian government taken action against child labour?

**Text number 32**

International influences encourage legal action in India, such as the 1924 Geneva Declaration on the Rights of the Child Act. This Act was followed by the Universal Declaration of Human Rights in 1948, which incorporated the basic human rights and needs of children to enable them to develop and grow properly in their adolescent years. These international instruments spurred significant changes in India's working life, which took place in 1986 with the introduction of the Child Labour (Prohibition and Regulation) Act. This Act prohibited the employment of children under the age of 14 and prohibited them from working in hazardous conditions.

**Question 0**

When was the Geneva Declaration on the Rights of the Child adopted?

**Question 1**

What did international actors do?

**Question 2**

What is the age limit for child workers in India today?

**Question 3**

What child labour conditions are they protected from?

**Text number 33**

From the 1950s onwards, students were also used for unpaid work in schools, cleaning and doing repairs. This practice has continued in the Russian Federation, where up to 21 days of the summer holiday are sometimes set aside for school work. By law, this is only allowed as part of special vocational training and with the permission of students and parents, but these provisions are not generally respected. In 2012, an accident near the town of Naltshik killed several students who were cleaning a motorway siding during their "holiday work", and the teacher who was supervising them.

**Question 0**

When were students used as employees?

**Question 1**

How many summer days did Russian student workers work?

**Question 2**

Did they need parental consent?

**Question 3**

What year were students killed as part of a road clean-up project?

**Text number 34**

Of the former Soviet republics, Uzbekistan continued and expanded the use of child labour on an industrial scale to increase profits from Islam Karimov's main source of income, the cotton harvest. In September, when school usually starts, education is suspended and children are sent to work in the cotton fields, where they are assigned daily quotas of 20-60 kilos of raw cotton to be harvested. This process is repeated in the spring, when the collected cotton has to be harvested and weeded. In 2006, an estimated 2.7 million children were forced to work in this way.

**Question 0**

Which former Soviet Union continued its child labour programmes?

**Question 1**

What was Islam Karimov's main source of income?

**Question 2**

Did they have daily cotton quotas?

**Question 3**

What are the estimates for child labour in cotton picking in 2016?

**Text number 35**

As in many other countries, child labour in Switzerland included the so-called Kaminfegerkinder children ("chimney sweep children") and children working in spinning mills, factories and agriculture in 19th century Switzerland, but also in the 1960s the so-called Verdingkinder children (literally "contract children" or "forced child labourers"), children taken from their parents, often for reasons of poverty or morality - usually the mothers were unmarried, very poor citizens, of Gypsy-Jeniz descent, the so-called Kinder der Landstrasse, etc. - and were sent to live with new families, often poor farmers who needed cheap labour.

**Question 0**

What is Kaminfegerkinder?

**Question 1**

What kind of child labour was used in Switzerland?

**Question 2**

Where did the children go to work, mainly in Switzerland?

**Text number 36**

There were even Verdingkinder auctions, where children were handed over to the farmer who asked the authorities for the least money, thus providing cheap labour for his farm and relieving the authorities of the financial burden of caring for the children. In the 1930s, 20% of the agricultural workers in the canton of Berne were children under the age of 15. The guardianship authorities of the Swiss municipalities acted in this way, with the general tolerance of the federal authorities, until the 1960s, not all of them of course, but usually communities suffering from low taxes in some Swiss cantons. Swiss historian Marco Leuenberger has researched that in 1930 there were some 35,000 forced labour children, and between 1920 and 1970 more than 100,000 are believed to have been placed in families or homes. 10,000 Verdingkinder are still alive. This is why the so-called Wiedergutmachungsinitiative was launched in April 2014. In April 2014, the collection of signatures from 100,000 Swiss citizens started and has yet to be collected until October 2015.

**Question 0**

What happened at the Verdingkinder auctions?

**Question 1**

How many enslaved children were there in the 1930s?

**Question 2**

How many signatures of Swiss citizens were collected?

**Text number 37**

In 1999, the ILO helped to draft Convention 182 (C182) on worst forms, which has so far been signed and ratified by 151 countries, including the United States. This international law prohibits the worst forms of child labour, defined as all forms of slavery and slavery-like practices such as child trafficking, debt bondage and forced labour, including the forced recruitment of children into armed conflict. The law also prohibits the use of children for prostitution or the production of pornography, the use of child labour in illegal activities such as drug production and trafficking, and hazardous work. Both the Worst Forms Convention (C182) and the Minimum Age Convention (C138) are examples of international labour standards on child labour implemented through the ILO.

**Question 0**

How many countries have signed Convention 183 (C182) on the worst forms?

**Question 1**

What kind of child labour is prohibited?

**Question 2**

What other international laws address child labour?

**Text number 38**

In addition to strengthening international legislation, the United Nations launched the International Programme on the Elimination of Child Labour (IPEC) in 1992. This initiative aims to progressively eliminate child labour by strengthening national capacities to address some of the causes of child labour. One of the most important initiatives is the so-called time-limited programme countries, where child labour is most prevalent and where access to education is poor. IPEC has expanded to at least the following target countries: Bangladesh, Brazil, China, Egypt, India, Indonesia, Mexico, Nigeria, Pakistan, Democratic Republic of Congo, El Salvador, Nepal, Tanzania, Dominican Republic, Costa Rica, Philippines, Senegal, South Africa, South Africa and Turkey.

**Question 0**

What did the United Nations take responsibility for with regard to child labour?

**Question 1**

What is the aim of this?

**Question 2**

What are some of the target countries?

**Question 3**

What do they want to do about the schooling of young children?

**Text number 39**

In 2004, the United States passed an amendment to the Fair Labour Standards Act of 1938. The amendment allows certain children between the ages of 14 and 18 to work on or off the premises using woodworking machinery. The law seeks to respect the religious and cultural needs of the Amish community in the United States. The Amish believe that one effective way to educate children is through work. The new law allows Amish children to work with their families after they have completed eighth grade in school.

**Question 0**

What did the United States approve in 2004?

**Question 1**

At what age are US children allowed to work outside the home?

**Question 2**

Which culture in the US will benefit from this law?

**Question 3**

What grade do Amish children have to pass to be able to work for their families?

**Text number 40**

Similarly, in 1996, the Member States of the European Union agreed in Directive 94/33/EC that their legislation on child labour contained a number of exceptions for young people. Under these rules, children of different ages may work in cultural, artistic, sporting or advertising activities if authorised by the competent authority. Children over 13 years of age may work light work for a limited number of hours per week in other economic activities, to be determined at the discretion of each country. In addition, an exception in EU law allows children aged 14 and over to work as part of a work or training programme. The EU Directive clarifies that these exceptions do not allow child labour where children may be exposed to hazardous substances. Nevertheless, many children under the age of 13 work even in the most developed countries of the EU. For example, a recent study found that more than a third of children aged 12 in the Netherlands were in work, the most common being babysitting.

**Question 0**

What happened in the European Union in 1996?

**Question 1**

At what age were children allowed to do light work?

**Question 2**

At what age were children able to participate in European education programmes?

**Question 3**

What is the most common occupation for young people in the Netherlands?

**Text number 41**

Some researchers [who?] believe that work by children under 18 is wrong because it promotes illiteracy, inhuman work and reduces investment in human capital. Child labour, according to these activists, also leads to poor labour standards for adults, lowers adult wages in developing and developed countries, and condemns third world economies to low-skilled jobs that can only produce low-quality, cheap exports. The more children work in poor countries, the fewer and lower paid jobs adults in those countries will have. In other words, there are moral and economic reasons to justify a blanket ban on children aged 18 and under working anywhere in the world.

**Question 0**

What does child labour do to adults?

**Question 1**

What will happen to adult wages?

**Question 2**

What is the impact of child labour in third world countries?

**Question 3**

Does ending child labour have global value?

**Text number 42**

Other researchers [who?] argue that these arguments are flawed, that they ignore history and that more laws do more harm than good. They argue that child labour is just a symptom of a larger disease, poverty. If laws prohibit all legal work that enables the poor to survive, the black economy, illegal activities and black business will flourish. These contribute to the exploitation of children. Poor countries with very high rates of child labour - such as Ethiopia, Chad, Niger and Nepal - have no schools, and the few that do exist provide poor quality education or are unaffordable. Studies show that children who are currently working have worse options: grinding subsistence farming, militias or prostitution. Child labour is not a choice, it is a necessity, the only option for survival. It is currently the least desirable option of the many very bad options.

**Question 0**

What do some researchers consider to be the "disease" of child labour?

**Question 1**

Are these researchers for or against ending child labour?

**Question 2**

What do these researchers argue in favour of maintaining child labour?

**Text number 43**

Based on their economic and social data, these researchers argue that the use of child labour in Europe and the United States in the early 20th century largely ended as a result of the formal regulated economy, technological advances and general prosperity. Child labour laws and ILO conventions came later. According to Edmonds, child labour in Vietnam has declined rapidly with economic reforms and GDP growth, even in modern times. These scholars suggest economic engagement, an emphasis on opening quality schools rather than increasing laws, and expanding opportunities for developing economically relevant skills in the Third World. International legal measures, such as trade sanctions, increase the use of child labour.

**Question 0**

Why did child labour decline in the 20th century?

**Question 1**

What caused the decline in child labour in Vietnam?

**Question 2**

What do these researchers propose to reduce child labour?

**Question 3**

According to these researchers, what is international action doing?

**Text number 44**

In 1998, UNICEF reported that Ivorian farmers were using enslaved children - many from surrounding countries. In late 2000, a BBC documentary reported on the use of enslaved children in the production of cocoa - the main ingredient in chocolate - in West Africa. Other media subsequently reported on widespread child slavery and child trafficking in cocoa production. In 2001, the US State Department estimated that there were 15,000 child slaves on cocoa, cotton and coffee farms in Côte d'Ivoire, and the Chocolate Manufacturers Association admitted that child slavery was used to harvest cocoa.[not cited in quote][better source needed].

**Question 0**

Who reported the use of child labour by farmers in Côte d'Ivoire?

**Question 1**

What do child labourers do in West Africa?

**Question 2**

How many child slaves were reported on cocoa, coffee and cotton farms?

**Text number 45**

Malian migrants have long worked on cocoa farms in Côte d'Ivoire, but in 2000 cocoa prices had fallen to a 10-year low and some farmers stopped hiring workers. A Mali adviser had to rescue some boys who had not been paid for five years and were beaten if they tried to escape. The Mali authorities believed that 15 000 children were working in Côte d'Ivoire in 2001, some as young as 11. These children were often from poor families or slums and were sold to work in other countries. Parents were told that the children would find work and send money home, but when the children left home, they often worked in conditions resembling slavery. In other cases, children begging for food were lured from bus stations and sold as slaves. In 2002, there were 12 000 children in Côte d'Ivoire with no relatives nearby, suggesting that they were victims of trafficking, probably from neighbouring Mali, Burkina Faso and Togo.

**Question 0**

Which migrants worked in Côte d'Ivoire?

**Question 1**

What did some farmers resort to after 10 years of price depression?

**Question 2**

Where were the children mainly from?

**Question 3**

Where were beggar children often victimised by beggar children who were sold into slavery?

**Text number 46**

The cocoa industry was accused of profiting from child slavery and trafficking. The European Cocoa Association dismissed these allegations as "false and exaggerated" and the industry said the reports were not representative of all regions. The industry later admitted that working conditions for children were unsatisfactory and that children's rights were sometimes violated, and admitted that the allegations could not be ignored. In an interview with the BBC, the Ivorian Ambassador to the UK called these reports of widespread slave child labour by 700 000 cocoa farmers absurd and inaccurate.

**Question 0**

Which industry was accused of profiting from child labour?

**Question 1**

Who rejected the allegations?

**Question 2**

What are the numbers of cocoa farmers using child labour?

**Question 3**

Who claimed these reports were inaccurate?

**Text number 47**

In 2001, the international cocoa and chocolate industry adopted a voluntary agreement known as the Harkin-Engel Protocol, which aims to eliminate the worst forms of child labour in West Africa, as defined by ILO Convention 182. On the basis of this agreement, a foundation called the International Cocoa Initiative was set up in 2002. The Foundation claims that by 2011 it has active programmes in 290 cocoa farming communities in Côte d'Ivoire and Ghana and has reached a total of 689 000 people to help eliminate the worst forms of child labour in the cocoa industry. Other organisations say progress has been made, but the 2005 Protocol deadlines have not yet been met.

**Question 0**

What was the 2001 Harkin-Engel Protocol agreement?

**Question 1**

What was the basis that was a direct consequence of the agreement?

**Question 2**

How many active programmes does the Foundation have?

**Question 3**

What happened to the 2005 deadlines?

**Text number 48**

In 2008, Bloomberg claimed that child labour was used in copper and cobalt mines in the Congo that supplied Chinese companies. The children are crusaders, meaning they dig ore by hand, carry bags of ore on their backs, and these companies then buy it. Of the 75 processing plants in Katanga, more than 60 are owned by Chinese companies, and 90% of the minerals in the region go to China. A report by an African NGO claimed that 80 000 child labourers under the age of 15, or around 40% of all miners, supply ore to Chinese companies in this part of Africa. Amnesty International claimed in 2016 that some of the cobalt sold by Congo's Dongfang Mining was produced by child labour and used to make lithium-ion batteries that power electric cars and mobile devices worldwide.

**Question 0**

Who supplied copper and cobalt to China?

**Question 1**

What are child crusaders?

**Question 2**

What percentage of materials go to China?

**Question 3**

What is cobalt used for?

**Text number 49**

In 2012, the BBC accused Glencore of using child labour in its mining and smelting operations in Africa. Glencore denied using child labour and said it had a strict policy of not using child labour. The company claimed that it has a strict policy that all copper is mined correctly, placed in bags with numbered seals and then sent to the smelter. Glencore said it was aware of child miners, part of a group of small-scale miners who had been trespassing on the company's concession without permission since 2010. Glencore has appealed to the government to remove the artisanal miners from the concession.

**Question 0**

What did the BBC say that Glencore used child labour in 2012?

**Question 1**

What has Glencore said about the allegations?

**Question 2**

What did Glencore admit about child labour?

**Text number 50**

Small-scale artisanal gold mining is another source of hazardous child labour in poor rural areas in parts of the world. This mining uses labour-intensive and low-tech methods. It is an informal sector of the economy. Human Rights Watch estimates that around 12% of the world's gold production comes from small-scale mines. In West Africa, in countries such as Mali - Africa's third largest gold exporter - between 20 000 and 40 000 children work in artisanal mining. Known locally as orpaillage, children as young as 6 years old work with their families. These children and families are chronically exposed to toxic chemicals such as mercury, and do dangerous work such as digging shafts and working underground, lifting, transporting and crushing ore. Poor working practices harm children's long-term health and release hundreds of tonnes of mercury into local rivers, groundwater and lakes every year. Gold is important to the economies of Mali and Ghana. For Mali, it is the second largest source of export revenue. For many poor families with children, it is the primary and sometimes sole source of income.

**Question 0**

What is another source of mining that is dangerous for child workers?

**Question 1**

What is Africa's third largest gold exporter?

**Question 2**

Why is gold vital to the people of Mali?

**Question 3**

What is the gold production income of poor families in Mali?

**Text number 51**

In early August 2008, Iowa Labor Commissioner David Neil announced that his department had found that Agriprocessors, a kosher meatpacking company in Postville that had recently been raided by Immigration and Customs Enforcement, had employed 57 minors, some as young as 14, in violation of a state law that prohibits the employment of minors under 18 in meatpacking companies. Neil announced that he was turning the case over to the state attorney general for prosecution, claiming that his department's investigation had found "egregious violations of virtually every aspect of Iowa's child labor laws." Agriprocessors claimed to be baffled by the allegations. Agriprocessors' CEO was arraigned in state court on May 4, 2010. After a five-week trial, a jury in Black Hawk County District Court in Waterloo, Iowa, found him not guilty on June 7, 2010, of all 57 counts of child labor violations.

**Question 0**

How many underage employees did Agriprocessors employ?

**Question 1**

What did Agriprocessors say in response to the allegations?

**Question 2**

When was the CEO taken to court?

**Question 3**

What was the verdict?

**Text number 52**

In December 2009, campaigners in the UK called on two leading retailers to stop selling clothes made from cotton that may have been picked by children. Anti-Slavery International and the Environmental Justice Foundation (EJF) accused H&M and Zara of using cotton suppliers in Bangladesh. It is also suspected that many of their raw materials come from Uzbekistan, where children as young as 10 are forced to work in the fields. Activists are calling for a ban on the use of Uzbek cotton and for a "traceability and monitoring system" to ensure the ethical sourcing of the material.

**Question 0**

Who accused H&M of using child labour?

**Question 1**

Who else did they accuse of child labour?

**Question 2**

Where did the cotton the children picked come from?

**Question 3**

What are activists trying to achieve?

**Text number 53**

In 2008, the BBC reported that Primark used child labour to make clothes. In particular, a £4 hand-embroidered shirt was the starting point for a documentary produced by the BBC's Panorama programme. The programme asked consumers to ask themselves: 'Why am I paying just £4 for a hand-embroidered shirt?' This product looks handmade. Who has made it for such a low price?", and it also reveals the violent side of child labour in countries where child abuse is rife.

**Question 0**

Who did the BBC report in 2008 as using child labour?

**Question 1**

What does Primark produce?

**Question 2**

What did the BBC programme make viewers question?

**Question 3**

What else did the BBC reveal?

**Text number 54**

Primark continued to investigate the allegations for three years and concluded that the BBC report was a fake. In 2011, following an investigation by the BBC Trust's Editorial Standards Committee, the BBC announced: "Having carefully considered all the relevant evidence, the Committee concluded that on the balance of probabilities it was more likely than not that the Bangalore footage was not authentic." The BBC has since apologised for falsifying the footage and returned the television award for investigative reporting.

**Question 0**

How many years was Primark investigated?

**Question 1**

What did they claim about the BBC report?

**Question 2**

What did the BBC do?

**Question 3**

What happened to the BBC's fee?

**Text number 55**

Concerns have often been raised that the buying public is morally complicit in buying products that have been assembled or otherwise manufactured in developing countries where child labour has taken place. However, others have expressed concern that boycotting products made with child labour may force these children into more dangerous or stressful occupations, such as prostitution or agriculture. For example, a UNICEF study found that since the introduction of the Child Labour Prevention Act in the US, an estimated 50,000 children were dismissed from their garment manufacturing jobs in Bangladesh, forcing many to resort to jobs such as "stone crushing, street sweeping and prostitution", which are "more dangerous and exploitative than garment manufacturing". According to the study, boycotts are "blunt instruments that have long-term consequences and can harm rather than help the children concerned".

**Question 0**

What do some people think could happen if society as a whole abandoned child labour products altogether?

**Question 1**

What happened to the 50 000 children in the UNICEF study?

**Question 2**

What does the study say about boycotts?

**Text number 56**

According to Milton Friedman, before the industrial revolution, almost all children worked in agriculture. During the Industrial Revolution, many of these children moved from agricultural to factory work. Over time, as real wages rose, parents could afford to send their children to school instead of working, resulting in a decline in child labour both before and after the legislation. The Austrian School economist Murray Rothbard noted that British and American children in the pre- and post-industrial revolution lived and suffered in much worse conditions, with no jobs available to them, and went 'willingly and gladly' to work in factories.

**Question 0**

Where did children work before the industrial revolution?

**Question 1**

How many children worked?

**Question 2**

Where did the children go to work after working on the farm for so long?

**Question 3**

What did parents do when wages were finally raised?

**Text number 57**

According to University of Houston economics professor Thomas DeGregor in an article published by the Washington-based libertarian think tank Cato Institute, "It is clear that technological and economic changes are vital to getting children out of the workforce and into schools. Then they can grow up to be productive adults and live longer and healthier lives. However, in poor countries like Bangladesh, working children are essential to the survival of many families, as they were in our own tradition until the late 19th century. While the fight to end child labour is necessary, getting there often requires different routes - and unfortunately there are many political obstacles.

**Question 0**

Where is Thomas DeGregori from?

**Question 1**

Which country does he claim needs child labour to survive?

**Question 2**

What are the obstacles to ending child labour, according to him?

**Text number 58**

The term child labour can be misleading when it confuses harmful work with work that may be beneficial to children. It can also ignore harmful work outside the employment relationship and all the benefits that children normally receive from their work. Domestic work is an example of this: all families, except the rich, have to work at cleaning, cooking, caring and other types of work to keep their homes in good order. In most families in the world, this process extends to productive activities, especially livestock rearing and various forms of agriculture, as well as various small family businesses. Where trading is an important part of social life, children can start trading small goods at an early age, often in the company of family members or peers.

**Question 0**

What is working for children?

**Question 1**

What can children do in countries where trade is involved?

**Question 2**

All children, but what kind of children need to learn to clean?

**Text number 59**

The vast majority of the world's children work from an early age, and it can be a natural part of growing up. Work can contribute to children's well-being in many ways; children often choose work to improve their lives in both the short and long term. On a material level, children's work often contributes to providing food or income that benefits them and their families; such income is particularly important when families are poor. Work can provide an escape from debilitating poverty, and sometimes it allows a young person to move out of a poor environment. Young people often enjoy their work, especially paid work, or when it involves the company of peers. Even when work is intensive and compulsory, children often find ways to combine work with play.

**Question 0**

What is the natural developmental process of a child?

**Question 1**

What is the way out for young people living in poverty?

**Question 2**

What can children do in intensive work situations?

**Text number 60**

Full-time work is detrimental to school attendance, but there is a wide range of empirical evidence on the relationship between part-time work and school attendance. Sometimes even part-time work can be detrimental to school attendance or performance. On the other hand, many poor children work in order to have the resources to go to school. Children who do not do well in school sometimes seek more satisfying experiences in work. Good relationships with a supervisor at work can ease tensions experienced by children at school and at home. In today's world, schooling has become such a central part of society that for most children school work has become a dominant job, often replacing participation in productive work. If school curricula or quality do not provide children with the right skills for the jobs available, or if children are not inclined to school work, school can prevent them from learning skills such as farming that are needed for future livelihoods.

**Question 0**

What prevents child labourers from going to school?

**Question 1**

What can relieve children's stress at work?

**Question 2**

What can schools do to help children get a better start in the world of work?

**Document number 255**

**Text number 0**

North Carolina is made up of three main geographic regions: the Atlantic Coastal Plain, which covers 45% of the eastern part of the state, the Piedmont region, which covers 35% of the central part of the state, and the Appalachian Mountains and their foothills. In the easternmost part of the state lies the Outer Banks, a series of sandy, narrow barrier islands between the Atlantic Ocean and two inland waterways or "sounds": Albemarle Sound in the north and Pamlico Sound in the south. They are the two largest inland bodies of water in the United States.

**Question 0**

How many major geographic regions make up North Carolina?

**Question 1**

What part of North Carolina makes up 45% of the state?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the middle 35% of North Carolina?

**Question 3**

Tha Appalachian mountains and fells make up the territory of which state?

**Question 4**

What is the easternmost part of North Carolina?

**Text number 1**

The Coastal Plain moves into the Piedmont region along the Atlantic Coast Fall Line, which marks the elevation at which waterfalls begin to occur in streams and rivers. Located in central North Carolina, the Piedmont region is the most urbanized and densely populated area of the state. It consists of gently rolling countryside, often broken up by hills or low ridges. Piedmont is home to small, isolated and deeply eroded mountain ranges and peaks, including the Sauratown Mountains, Pilot Mountain, Uwharrie Mountains, Crowder's Mountain, King's Pinnacle, Brushy Mountains and South Mountains. Piedmont ranges in elevation from about 91-122 m (300-400 ft) in the east to over 300 m (300 ft) in the west. Due to Piedmont's rapid population growth, much of the rural areas of this region are becoming suburbs with shopping malls, housing and business offices. Agriculture is becoming less and less important. Piedmont's major rivers, such as the Yadkin and Catawba, are generally fast-flowing, shallow and narrow.

**Question 0**

What is the line that marks the height at which the waterfalls begin to appear in the river?

**Question 1**

At what point will my coastal pipeline move to Piedmont?

**Question 2**

What is the most densely populated area in central North Carolina?

**Question 3**

Pilot Mountain and South Mountains are located in which region of North Carolina?

**Question 4**

What is the average altitude in the Western Piedmont region?

**Text number 2**

The western part of the state is part of the Appalachian Mountains. The Appalachian subdivisions of the state include the Great Smoky Mountains, the Blue Ridge Mountains, the Great Balsam Mountains, the Black Mountains and others. The Black Mountains are the highest mountains in the eastern United States, culminating in Mount Mitchell, which stands at 2,037 metres east of the Mississippi River. Although agriculture remains important, tourism has become the dominant industry in the mountains. Christmas tree growing has also recently become an important industry. Because of its elevation, the mountain climate is often very different from the rest of the state. In winter, western North Carolina typically experiences high snowfall and frost, which is more similar to temperatures in the Midwest than in the South.

**Question 0**

Which mountain range is the easternmost part of North Carolina?

**Question 1**

Which mountains are the Great Smokey Mountains and the Black Moutains?

**Question 2**

Which mountains are the highest in the eastern United States?

**Question 3**

What is the name of the highest point east of the Mississippi River?

**Question 4**

How high is Mitchell Mountain?

**Text number 3**

The climate of the coastal plain is influenced by the Atlantic Ocean, which keeps conditions mild in winter and moderate, albeit humid, in summer. During the summer months, the highest coastal daytime temperatures average less than 32°C (89°F). In winter, the coast is mild, with daytime highs rarely below 4°C (40°F). The average coastal plain daytime temperature in winter is generally 11-14°C (50°F). Temperatures in the coastal plain only occasionally drop below freezing at night. On average, the Coastal Plain receives only about 2.5 cm of snow or ice each year, and in many years there may be no snow or ice at all.

**Question 0**

Which ocean influences the climate of the North Caroline Coastal Plain?

**Question 1**

What is the climate like in the coastal plain in winter?

**Question 2**

What is the climate like in the North Caroline coastal plain in summer?

**Question 3**

What is the average summer temperature on the North Carolina coastal plains?

**Question 4**

How often does the temperature drop below freezing at night in the NC coastal plain?

**Text number 4**

The Atlantic Ocean has less influence on the climate of the Piedmont region, with hotter summers and colder winters than the coast. Daytime highs in Piedmont often exceed 32°C (90°F) in summer, and although it is not uncommon for temperatures in the state to rise above 38°C (100°F), such temperatures are generally found only in lower-lying areas of Piedmont and in the far inland areas of the coastal plain. The weaker influence of the Atlantic Ocean also means that temperatures often vary more in Piedmont than on the coast.

**Question 0**

Which region of North Carolina has hotter summers and colder winters than the coast?

**Question 1**

What is the daytime temperature in the Piedmont region in summer?

**Question 2**

Temperatures above 100 degrees typically occur at what altitude in Piedmont?

**Question 3**

What is it about the Atlantic Ocean that causes temperatures to vary more than on the coast?

**Text number 5**

In winter, Piedmont is colder than the coast, with temperatures generally averaging above 8-12°C during the day and often below freezing at night. The region averages about 8-13 inches of snowfall annually in the Charlotte area and slightly more north of the Virginia border. The Piedmont is particularly known for sleet and freezing rain. Freezing rain can be so heavy that it can cause traffic jams and bring down trees and power lines. Annual rainfall and humidity in Piedmont are lower than in the mountains or on the coast, but even at the lowest levels the average annual rainfall is 1 020 mm.

**Question 0**

What time of year is it colder in Piedmont than on the coast?

**Question 1**

What is the average daily temperature in winter in Piedmont?

**Question 2**

Where do temperatures often fall in winter at night in the Piedmont region?

**Question 3**

How much snow falls on average per year in Charlotte?

**Question 4**

What kind of rainfall is Piedmont known for?

**Text number 6**

The Appalachian Mountains are the coolest region in the state, with temperatures averaging above 40-40°F (6-3°C) and 30°F (30°C) in the winter and dropping to 20°F (-5°C) or below on winter nights. In relatively cool summers, temperatures rarely rise above 80 °F (27 °C). Average snowfall in many areas exceeds 76 cm (76 in) per year, and can be high at higher elevations; for example, during the 1993 snowstorm, Mount Mitchell received more than 152 cm of snow in three days. Mount Mitchell has received snow in every month of the year.

**Question 0**

Which mountain range makes up the coolest part of North Carolina?

**Question 1**

What are the average high winter temperatures in the Appalachians?

**Question 2**

What are the low winter temperatures in the Appalachians?

**Question 3**

What are the temperatures above which Appalachian temperatures are rare?

**Question 4**

How many centimetres of snow does it snow on average in the Appalachians?

**Text number 7**

North Carolina regularly experiences severe weather events. On average, the state is hit by a hurricane once a decade. The state has been hit by devastating hurricanes such as Hurricane Fran, Hurricane Floyd and Hurricane Hazel, the strongest storm to hit the state, which was a Category 4 storm in 1954. Hurricane Isabel is the most destructive of the 21st century. Tropical storms occur every 3-4 years. In addition, the state experiences a number of hurricanes and tropical storms. In some years, several hurricanes or tropical storms can strike the state directly or sweep through coastal areas. Only Florida and Louisiana experience more frequent hurricanes. While many believe that hurricanes only threaten coastal areas, the rare hurricane that moves inland fast enough can cause serious damage; for example, in 1989, Hurricane Hugo caused major damage in Charlotte and even in the Blue Ridge Mountains in the northwestern part of the state. North Carolina averages 50 days of thunderstorms per year, and some storms are so intense that they can cause hail, flash floods and damaging winds.

**Question 0**

How often do hurricanes hit North Carolina?

**Question 1**

Floyd, Fran and Hazel are examples of what hit the state of North Carolina?

**Question 2**

What was the strongest storm to hit North Carolina?

**Question 3**

What class of hurricane was Hazel?

**Question 4**

What year did Hurricane Hazel hit North Carolina?

**Text number 8**

North Carolina averages fewer than 20 tornadoes a year, many of which are caused by hurricanes or tropical storms on the coastal plain. Tornadoes caused by thunderstorms are a particular risk in the eastern part of the state. The western Piedmont is often protected by mountains, which tend to disperse storms as they attempt to cross it; storms often re-form further east. The northwestern part of the state also frequently experiences a weather phenomenon known as "cold air damming", which can also weaken storms, but can also lead to large ice sheets.

**Question 0**

How many tornadoes are there in North Carolina in a year?

**Question 1**

What can houuricans and tropical storms produce on the coastal plain?

**Question 2**

In which part of the state is the risk of tornadoes highest?

**Question 3**

What protects western Piedmont from tornadoes?

**Question 4**

What weather phenomenon can weaken storms but cause major ice events in North Carolina?

**Text number 9**

Before 200 AD, the inhabitants built earth mounds, which were used for ceremonial and religious purposes. Subsequent peoples, including those of the ancient Mississippian culture established in the Piedmont by 1000 AD, continued to build or add to such mounds. During the 500-700 years preceding European contact, the Mississippian culture built large, complex cities and maintained distant regional trade networks. Historically documented tribes of the North Carolina region included coastal Carolina Algonquian-speaking tribes such as the Chowanoke, Roanoke, Pamlico, Machapunga, Coree, Cape Fear Indians and others who first encountered the English; inland Iroquoian-speaking Meherrin, Cherokee and Tuscarora; and southeastern Siouan tribes such as Cheraw, Waxhaw, Saponi, Waccamaw and Catawba.[citation needed]

**Question 0**

During which period did people build earth mounds that were used for religious and ceremonial purposes?

**Question 1**

What kind of culture settled in the Piedmont region by 1000 AD?

**Question 2**

How many years before European contact did the ancient Mississippian culture build large cities?

**Question 3**

The Pamlico and Cape Fear Indians are examples of what?

**Question 4**

Where did the Algonquin-speaking tribes of North Carolina live?

**Text number 10**

In June 1718, Blackbeard, aka Edward Teach, ran his flagship Queen Anne's Revenge aground in Beaufort Inlet, North Carolina, now Carteret County. After the grounding, her crew and supplies were transferred to smaller vessels. In 1996, the remains of the Queen Anne's Revenge were probably discovered by a private company, Intersal, Inc. and added to the US National Register of Historic Places. In November, the notorious pirate Blackbeard (Edward Teach) was killed in an ambush by Virginia troops after losing his ship and appealing to the Governor of North Carolina, who promised safe harbour and amnesty.

**Question 0**

What was Blackbeard's middle name?

**Question 1**

What was the name of the Blackbeard's ship?

**Question 2**

Where in North Carolina did the Blackbeard's ship crash?

**Question 3**

What year did Blackbeard run his ship aground in North Carolina?

**Question 4**

In what year were the remains of Queen Anne's Revenge discovered?

**Text number 11**

North Carolina became one of England's thirteen colonies, and was originally known with the South Carolina region as the Province of Carolina. The northern and southern parts of the original province were separated in 1729. The colony was originally inhabited by small farmers, sometimes with a few slaves, who practised subsistence farming, and there were no towns or settlements. Pirates threatened the coastal settlements, but by 1718 the pirates had been captured and killed. Growth was strong in the mid-1700s as the economy attracted Scots-Irish, Quaker, English and German immigrants. The immigrants generally supported the American Revolution, as the Loyalist population was smaller than in some other colonies.

**Question 0**

North Carolina and South Carolina were known collectively as what?

**Question 1**

In what year were North and South Caroline separated?

**Question 2**

What was the occupation of most settlers in the province of Carolina?

**Question 3**

Which people were a threat to the coastal areas of the province of Carolina?

**Question 4**

By what year had all the pirates in the NC province been captured or killed?

**Text number 12**

During the colonial period, Edenton served as the state capital from 1722, and New Bern was chosen as the capital in 1766. Construction of Tryon Palace, which served as the residence and office of William Tryon, the governor of the province, began in 1767 and was completed in 1771. In 1788, Raleigh was chosen as the site of the new capital because its central location protected it from coastal invasions. The city was officially established in 1792 as both the county and state capital, and named after Sir Walter Raleigh, the patron of the "lost colony" of Roanoke Island, Roanoke.

**Question 0**

What was the state capital of North Carolina in 1722?

**Question 1**

Which city became the capital of North Carolina in 1766?

**Question 2**

Who was the governor of North Carolina in 1767?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the office and residence built for William Tryon?

**Question 4**

Which town in central North Carolina was chosen as the capital in 1788?

**Text number 13**

North Carolina was the state with the lowest per capita participation in the war, with only 7,800 men joining the Continental Army under General George Washington and 10,000 men serving in local militia units led by General Nathanael Greene, among others. There was some military activity, especially in 1780-81. Many of the Carolinian frontiersmen had moved west over the mountains to Washington County (later known as Tennessee), but in 1789, after the Revolution, the state was persuaded to relinquish its claim to the western territories. It ceded them to the national government so that the Northwest Territory could be organized and administered nationally.

**Question 0**

Which state was the least involved in the Revolutionary War of all the states?

**Question 1**

How many men from NC joined the Continental Army?

**Question 2**

Who led the Continental Army?

**Question 3**

During which years did NC see the most military activity during the Revolutionary War?

**Question 4**

Frontier travelers from the Carolinas migrated west to what area, now known as Tennessee?

**Text number 14**

After 1800, cotton and tobacco became important export crops. In the eastern part of the state, particularly in the Tidewater area, a slave society developed based on the plantation system and slave labour. Many free people of colour migrated with their European-American neighbours to border areas where the social system was more relaxed. By 1810, nearly 3 percent of the free population was made up of free people of color, who numbered just over 10,000. The western territories were dominated by white families, especially the Scotch-Irish, who ran small subsistence farms. In the early days of nationalism, the state became the centre of Jeffersonian and Jacksonian democracy, with the Whigs strongly represented, especially in the west. After Nat Turner's slave rebellion in 1831, North Carolina and other southern states reduced the rights of free blacks. In 1835, the legislature revoked their right to vote.

**Question 0**

After what year did cotton and tobacco become important crops in North Carolina?

**Question 1**

In which part of North Carolina was the Tidewater area located?

**Question 2**

In which area of North Carolina was slave labour used and a slave society developed?

**Question 3**

Where did free blacks move to because of a looser social system?

**Question 4**

What percentage of the free population was black by 1810?

**Text number 15**

After the defeat of the Confederacy in 1865, the Reconstruction era began. The United States abolished slavery without compensation to slave owners or reparations to freedmen. A Republican Party coalition of black freedmen, Northern carpetbaggers and local conmen ruled the states for three years. White conservative Democrats regained power in the state legislature in 1870, partly through Ku Klux Klan violence and terrorism at polling stations to suppress black voting. Republicans were elected governor until 1876, when the Red Shirts, a paramilitary organization formed in 1874 and allied with the Democratic Party, helped suppress black voting. More than 150 black Americans were murdered in election violence in 1876.

**Question 0**

In what year was the Confederacy defeated?

**Question 1**

What Era began after the defeat of the Confederacy?

**Question 2**

The United States abolished slavery without giving what to the slave owners?

**Question 3**

When did the white Democrats regain control of the state legislature?

**Question 4**

Where did the KKK target with violence and terrorism in the elections?

**Text number 16**

Democrats were elected legislator and governor, but populists attracted voters who were unhappy with them. In 1896, a fusion of Populists and Republicans won the governorship. Democrats regained legislative power in 1896, passing laws enacting Jim Crow and racial segregation in public accommodations. Voters in North Carolina's 2nd Congressional District elected a total of four African-American congressmen in these late 19th century years.

**Question 0**

Which political party was elected as legislator and governor?

**Question 1**

Which political group attracted voters dissatisfied with the Democrats?

**Question 2**

What year did the racially based populist fusion get the governor's office?

**Question 3**

In what year did the Democrats regain the governorship from the segregationist populists?

**Question 4**

How many African-American congressmen were elected in the 19th century?

**Text number 17**

In 1899, the state legislature passed a new constitution requiring poll taxes and literacy tests for voter registration, disenfranchising most black Americans in the state. The disenfranchisement had far-reaching effects: it meant that black Americans could not serve on juries or hold any local office. After a decade of white supremacy, many people forgot that North Carolina had ever had thriving middle-class black Americans. Black citizens had no political voice in the state until the federal Civil Rights Act of 1964 and the Voting Rights Act of 1965 were passed to protect their constitutional rights. It was not until 1992 that a second African-American was elected as a U.S. Representative from North Carolina.

**Question 0**

What did the NC state legislature pass in 1899?

**Question 1**

What kind of taxes did the new NC constitution require?

**Question 2**

What did the new Constitution require for voter registration?

**Question 3**

What did the exclusion from doing make it so that black people could not serve on juries or hold public office?

**Question 4**

In what year was the federal Civil Rights Act passed?

**Text number 18**

As in other former Confederate states, North Carolina had become a one-party state governed by the Democratic Party. Impoverished by the Civil War, the state continued to run an economy based on tobacco, cotton and agriculture. There were still few towns in the east. In the western counties of Piedmont, a significant industrial base emerged in the late 19th century, based on cotton mills established on the fall line. Railroads were built to connect the new industrialising towns. In the state, the Wright brothers made the first successful powered, heavier-than-air flight near Kitty Hawk on December 17, 1903. In the first half of the 20th century, many African Americans left the state for better opportunities in a great migration northward. Their departure changed the demographics of many areas.

**Question 0**

Which political party ruled NC after the Confederacy?

**Question 1**

What was North Carolina's economy based on after the Confederacy?

**Question 2**

When did North Carolina become a major industrial base?

**Question 3**

Where did a major industrial base emerge in North Carolina?

**Question 4**

What was the basis for the emergence of North Carolina's industrial base?

**Text number 19**

North Carolina was hit hard by the Great Depression, but Franklin D. Roosevelt's New Deal cotton and tobacco programs helped farmers significantly. After World War II, the state's economy grew rapidly, highlighted by the growth of cities like Charlotte, Raleigh and Durham in the Piedmont. Raleigh, Durham and Chapel Hill form the Research Triangle, a major area of universities and advanced scientific and engineering research. Charlotte became a major regional and national banking centre in the 1990s. Tourism has also been a boon to North Carolina's economy, with people flocking to the Outer Banks coastal region and the Appalachian Mountains, anchored by Asheville.

**Question 0**

Which programs created by FDR helped North Carolina during the Great Depression?

**Question 1**

Who benefited from the new contract programmes?

**Question 2**

What crops was the New Deal programme designed for?

**Question 3**

After which war did countries' economies improve?

**Question 4**

Which NC town became a national banking centre in the 1990s?

**Text number 20**

For thousands of years, North Carolina was home to a succession of prehistoric indigenous cultures. Before 200 AD, they built mounds of land used for ceremonial and religious purposes. Subsequent peoples, including the ancient Mississippian culture of Piedmont by 1000 AD, continued to build or add to such mounds. During the 500-700 years preceding European contact, Mississippian culture built large and complex cities and maintained distant regional trade networks. Its largest city was Cahokia, located in present-day Illinois near the Mississippi River.

**Question 0**

What stopped North Carolina for thousands of years?

**Question 1**

Before 200 AD, people built what kind of mounds for religious purposes?

**Question 2**

Who continued to build on top of religious mounds?

**Question 3**

Who built the big cities and regional trade networks before European connections?

**Question 4**

What was the largest city in Piedmont before European contact?

**Text number 21**

Spanish explorers travelling inland in the 1500s met people of Mississippian culture in Joara, a regional chiefdom near present-day Morganton. Hernando de Soto's notes attest to his meeting with them in 1540. In 1567, Captain Juan Pardo led an expedition to recapture the area for a Spanish colony and establish another route to protect the silver mines in Mexico. Pardo made a winter base at Joara, which he renamed Cuenca. His expedition built the fort at San Juan and left a detachment of 30 men there, while Pardo travelled further afield and built and garrisoned five other forts. He returned by a different route to Santa Elena on Parris Island in South Carolina, then the centre of Spanish Florida. In the spring of 1568, the natives killed all but one of the soldiers and burned six forts inland, including Fort San Juan. Although the Spanish never returned to the interior, this attempt marked the first European attempt to colonise the interior in what became the United States. A diary written in the 1500s by the scribe Bandera and archaeological discoveries made since 1986 at Joara have confirmed the settlement.

**Question 0**

Where did Spanish explorers meet people of Mississippian culture in the 1500s?

**Question 1**

What is Joara?

**Question 2**

Where would Joara be today?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the Spanish man who met people in Joara?

**Question 4**

What year did Hernando de Soto arrive in Joara?

**Text number 22**

In 1584, Elizabeth I granted Sir Walter Raleigh, after whom the state capital is named, a lease of land in what is now North Carolina (then part of Virginia). It was the second American territory that the English attempted to colonise. Raleigh established two colonies on the coast in the late 1580s, but both failed. The fate of the 'lost colony' of Roanoke Island remains one of the most widely disputed mysteries in American history. Virginia Dare, the first English child born in North America, was born on Roanoke Island on 18 August 1587; Dare County is named after her.

**Question 0**

Who is North Carolina's state capital named after?

**Question 1**

Who granted Sir Walter Raleigh permission to travel to what is now North Carolina?

**Question 2**

In what year did Elizabeth I grant Raleigh a mandate to travel to North Carolina?

**Question 3**

What was the other American territory that the English tried to colonise?

**Question 4**

How many settlements did Raleigh establish on the Carolina coast in 1580?

**Text number 23**

As early as 1650, settlers from the Virginia colony moved to the Albemarle Sound area. In 1663, King Charles II of England granted a charter to establish a new colony on the North American continent, generally establishing the boundaries of North Carolina. He named it Carolina in honour of his father Charles I. In 1665, a second charter was granted to settle territorial questions. In 1710, the colony of Carolina began to be divided into North Carolina and South Carolina because of disputes over administration. The latter became a Crown colony in 1729.

**Question 0**

Which colony's settlers moved to Albemarie Sound in 1650?

**Question 1**

In what year did King Charles II grant North America a charter?

**Question 2**

What was King Charles II's charter establishing?

**Question 3**

Carolina was named after King Charles I's father, what was his name?

**Question 4**

In what year was the second charter for defining Carolina's boundaries made?

**Text number 24**

After the Spanish, the first permanent European settlers in North Carolina in the 1500s were English colonists who moved south from Virginia. The latter had grown rapidly, and land was less available. Nathaniel Batts was one of the first Virginia settlers. He settled south of the Chowan River and east of the Great Dismal Swamp in 1655. By 1663, this northeastern part of the province of Carolina, known as the Albemarle Colonies, was completely settled by the English. At the same time, the English monarch Charles II gave the province to a group of nobles known as the Lords Proprietors, who had helped restore Charles to the throne in 1660. The new province of "Carolina" was named in honour and memory of King Charles I (Latin: Carolus). In 1712, North Carolina became a separate colony. With the exception of the Earl of Granville's holdings, it became a royal colony seventeen years later. In 1711, the state was the scene of a major rebellion known as the Cary Rebellion.

**Question 0**

After the Spanish, who were the first Europeans to settle North Carolina?

**Question 1**

Where did the English immigrants who settled in North Carolina come from?

**Question 2**

The English emigrants left Virginia because what was the problem with the land there?

**Question 3**

Who was one of the first Virginia settlers to arrive in the Carolinas?

**Question 4**

What year did Nathaniel Battes settle in North Carolina?

**Text number 25**

The differences in settlement patterns between the eastern and western parts of North Carolina, the Low Country and the Highlands, influenced the political, economic and social life of the state from the 1700s to the 1900s. Eastern North Carolina's Tidewater was populated primarily by immigrants from the English countryside and the Scottish Highlands. The highlands of western North Carolina were settled mainly by Scots-Irish, English and German Protestants, the so-called "cohee". The Scots-Irish who arrived from what is now Northern Ireland in the mid to late 1700s were the largest non-English immigrant group before the Revolution; the English servants were the largest immigrant group before the Revolution. During the American War of Independence, the English and Highland Scots of eastern North Carolina generally remained loyal to the British Crown because of their long-standing business and personal ties to Great Britain. The English, Welsh, Scotch-Irish and German settlers of western North Carolina were more in favour of American independence from Britain.

**Question 0**

Eastern North Carolina is also known as what?

**Question 1**

Western North Carolina is also known as what?

**Question 2**

Where was The Tidewater located?

**Question 3**

Where did the migrants from England and the Scottish Highlands settle?

**Question 4**

To whom did Tidewater settlers remain loyal during the American Revolution?

**Text number 26**

Most of the English settlers had arrived as indentured servants, hiring themselves out as labour for a limited period to pay their way. In the early years, the line between indentured servants and African slaves or labourers was blurred. Some Africans were allowed to earn their freedom before slavery became a lifelong status. Most of the free colored families that formed in North Carolina before the Revolution were descended from unions or marriages between free white women and enslaved or free African or African-American men. Because the mothers were free, their children were born free. Many of them had emigrated or were descendants of colonial Virginia immigrants. As the flow of forced labourers to the colony diminished as economic conditions in Britain improved, plantation farmers brought in more slaves, and the state's legal demarcation between free and slave status tightened, making the latter a de facto racial caste. Economic growth and prosperity were based on slave labour, which was first used for tobacco production.

**Question 0**

How did most English settlers arrive?

**Question 1**

What kind of hired servants did they work as?

**Question 2**

What did the English settlers get in return for their work?

**Question 3**

The hired servant was similar to which people in the early days?

**Question 4**

As the serfs improved the economy, there was a greater need to import more what?

**Text number 27**

On April 12, 1776, the colony became the first to urge its delegates to the Mannerheim Congress to vote for independence from the British crown by the Halifax Resolution adopted by the North Carolina Provincial Congress. The dates of both events are inscribed on the state flag and seal. During the Revolutionary War there was intense guerrilla warfare between pro-independence and pro-British colonial groups. In some cases, the war was also a pretext for settling private grudges and rivalries. The great American victory in the war occurred at King's Mountain on the North Carolina-South Carolina border. On 7 October 1780, a force of about 1 000 mountain men from western North Carolina (including the present-day state of Tennessee) and southwestern Virginia defeated a force of about 1 000 British soldiers led by Major Patrick Ferguson. Most of the soldiers who fought on the British side in this battle were Carolinians who had remained loyal to the Crown (they were called "Tories" or Loyalists). The American victory at Kings Mountain gave an advantage to the pro-independence colonists and prevented the British army from recruiting more Tory soldiers.

**Question 0**

In what year did North Carolina instruct its delegates to vote for independence?

**Question 1**

Who did North Carolina seek independence from in 1776?

**Question 2**

What year did America win King's Mountain?

**Question 3**

How many North Carolina mountain men fought at King's Mountain?

**Question 4**

How many British troops fought at King's Mountain?

**Text number 28**

The road to Yorktown and American independence from Britain passed through North Carolina. As the British army advanced north from the victories of Charleston and Camden in South Carolina, the Continental Army's Southern Division and local militia prepared to meet them. After General Daniel Morgan's defeat of British cavalry commander Banastre Tarleton at the Battle of Cowpens on 17 January 1781, Southern Army commander Nathaniel Greene led British Lord Charles Cornwallis through the North Carolina heartland and away from the latter's supply base at Charleston, South Carolina. This campaign is known as "The Race to the Dan" or "The Race for the River".

**Question 0**

Who met the British army as it advanced north?

**Question 1**

Who lost the Cowpens battle?

**Question 2**

Who led the British infantry at the Cowpens?

**Question 3**

When was the Battle of Cowpens fought?

**Question 4**

What's another name for Dan's race?

**Text number 29**

At the Battle of Cowan's Ford on 1 February 1781, Cornwallis encountered resistance on the banks of the Catawba River as he tried to catch General Morgan's troops during a tactical retreat. Morgan had moved to the northern part of the state to join forces with General Greene's newly recruited troops. Generals Greene and Cornwallis finally met at the Battle of Guilford Court House in present-day Greensboro on 15 March 1781. Although the British held the field at the end of the battle, their losses against the numerically superior Continental army were crippling. After this 'Pyrrhic victory', Cornwallis decided to move to the Virginia coast to gather reinforcements and allow the Royal Navy to protect his battered army. This decision led to Cornwallis' final defeat at Yorktown, Virginia, later in 1781. The Patriot victory there guaranteed American independence.

**Question 0**

The Battle of Cowan's Ford was fought on which river?

**Question 1**

What year was the Battle of Cowans Ford?

**Question 2**

What is the current name of the town where the Battle of Guilford Court House was fought?

**Question 3**

After losing the battle of Guilford Courthouse, Cornawallis moved his troops where?

**Question 4**

What did Cornwallis move to the coast after losing the battle of Guilford Court House?

**Text number 30**

On 21 November 1789, North Carolina became the twelfth state to ratify a constitution. In 1840, the state capitol building was completed in Raleigh and is still standing. Most of North Carolina's slave owners and large plantations were located in the eastern part of the state. Although the North Carolina plantation system was smaller and less cohesive than those of Virginia, Georgia or South Carolina, a significant number of plantation holders were concentrated in the counties around the port towns of Wilmington and Edenton, and in the suburban townships around the cities of Raleigh, Charlotte and Durham in the Piedmont. The owners of the large estates held significant political and socioeconomic power in the former North Carolina, which was a slave society. They placed their own interests above those of the generally enslaved farmers of western North Carolina. In the mid-century, rural and commercial areas of the state were linked by the construction of a 129-mile (208-kilometer) wooden plank road, known as the "Farmers' Railroad," from Fayetteville in the east to Bethania (northwest of Winston-Salem).

**Question 0**

North Carolina was the twelfth state to ratify which document?

**Question 1**

On what day will North Carolina ratify the Constitution?

**Question 2**

In what year was the North Carolina state capital building completed?

**Question 3**

Where was the Capitol building completed in 1840?

**Question 4**

In which part of the state were most of the slave and plantation owners concentrated?

**Text number 31**

In addition to slaves, there were many free people of colour in the state. Most of them were descended from free African Americans who had emigrated with their neighbours from Virginia in the 1700s. Most were descendants of unions between white women, indentured servants or free, and African men, indentured, slave or free, in the working classes. After the revolution, Quakers and Mennonites tried to persuade slave owners to free their slaves. Their efforts and the language of the revolution inspired some to organise a manumission of their slaves. The number of free people of colour grew considerably in the first couple of decades after the revolution.

**Question 0**

From which state did some free people of color emigrate in the 1700s?

**Question 1**

After the revolution, Quakers and Mennonites encouraged slave owners to do what?

**Question 2**

What happened to the number of free people of colour in the first decades after the war?

**Text number 32**

On October 25, 1836, construction began on the Wilmington and Raleigh Railroad to connect the port city of Wilmington with the state capital, Raleigh. In 1849, the North Carolina Railroad was established by an act of the legislature to extend the railroad west to Greensboro, High Point and Charlotte. During the Civil War, the Wilmington to Raleigh line was vital to the Confederate war effort; supplies shipped to Wilmington were transported by rail through Raleigh to the Confederate capital at Richmond, Virginia.

**Question 0**

What was the name of the railway that started construction in 1836?

**Question 1**

The Wilmington and Raleigh railroad was supposed to connect Wilmington to what city?

**Question 2**

Which railway was founded in 1849?

**Question 3**

Which way did the North Carolina Railroad extend?

**Question 4**

Which railroad section was vital to the Confederacy in the Civil War?

**Text number 33**

Although slavery was somewhat less concentrated than in some southern states, the 1860 census found that more than 330,000 people, or 33 percent of the population of 992,622, were enslaved African Americans. They lived and worked mainly on the East Sidewater plantations. There were also 30,463 free people of color living in the state. They were also concentrated in the Eastern Coastal Plain, particularly in port cities such as Wilmington and New Bern, where a wide variety of jobs were available. Free African Americans were allowed to vote until 1835, when the state revoked their voting rights with restrictions after the slave rebellion led by Nat Turner in 1831. Southern slave laws criminalised the intentional killing of a slave in most cases.

**Question 0**

What percentage of North Carolina's population were slaves in 1860?

**Question 1**

Where did the majority of North Carolina's slaves live?

**Question 2**

What kind of land did the slaves live on?

**Question 3**

How many free people of color lived in NC in 1860?

**Question 4**

Where in North Carolina were free people of color living in 1860?

**Text number 34**

In 1860, North Carolina was a slave state, with a third of the population enslaved. This was a lower proportion than in many southern states. The state voted to join the Confederacy only after President Abraham Lincoln urged it to invade its sister state of South Carolina, making it the last or second-to-last state to formally join the Confederacy. Although Tennessee's unofficial secession on 7 May 1861 preceded North Carolina's official secession on 20 May 1861, the Tennessee legislature did not formally vote to secede until 8 June 1861.

**Question 0**

What percentage of North Carolina's population was enslaved in 1860?

**Question 1**

North Carolina voted to join the Confederacy only after they were ordered to invade which state?

**Question 2**

When did the official secession of North Carolina take place?

**Question 3**

When did Tennessee unofficially secede?

**Question 4**

When did Tennessee officially vote to secede?

**Text number 35**

After secession, some North Carolinians refused to support the federal government. Some farmers in the state's mountainous and western Piedmont region remained neutral during the civil war, while others secretly supported the Union during the conflict. Some 2,000 North Carolinians from North Carolina enlisted in the Union army and fought on the North's side in the war. In addition, two regiments of the Union Army were established in the coastal areas of the state occupied by Union troops in 1862 and 1863. Large numbers of slaves escaped to the Union lines, where they became virtually free.

**Question 0**

What did some North Carolinians refuse to support even after secession?

**Question 1**

Which farmers remained neutral during the civil war?

**Question 2**

Where were the farmers of Yemen who remained neutral during the civil war located?

**Question 3**

How many North Carolinians from the West fought in the Union army?

**Question 4**

When did Confederate troops occupy the coastal areas of North Carolina?

**Text number 36**

Confederate troops from all parts of North Carolina served in almost every major battle of the Army of Northern Virginia, the Confederacy's most famous army. The largest battle fought in North Carolina was at Bentonville, where Confederate General Joseph Johnston unsuccessfully attempted to slow the advance of Union General William Tecumseh Sherman into the Carolinas in the spring of 1865. After losing the Battle of Morrisville, Johnston surrendered to Sherman in April 1865 at Bennett Place in what is now Durham. The North Carolina port town of Wilmington was the last Confederate port to fall to the Union in February 1865 after the Union won the Second Battle of nearby Fort Fisher, its main defensive position downriver.

**Question 0**

What was the name of the Confederacy's most famous army?

**Question 1**

How many battles in the Army of Northern Virginia were fought by Confederate troops from North Carolina?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the biggest battle fought in North Carolina?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the Allied general who fought at Bentonville?

**Question 4**

What was the name of the Union general who fought at Bentonville?

**Text number 37**

The first Confederate soldier to die in the Civil War was Private Henry Wyatt of North Carolina at the Battle of Big Bethel in June 1861. At the Battle of Gettysburg in July 1863, the 26th Regiment of North Carolina participated in the Pickett/Pettigrew's Charge and advanced the furthest of the Confederate regiments into the northern lines. At the Battle of Chickamauga, the 58th Regiment of the The North Carolina Regiment advanced farther than any other regiment on Snodgrass Hill to push the remaining Union troops off the battlefield. At Appomattox Court House in Virginia in April 1865, the 75th North Carolina Regiment, a cavalry unit, fired the last shots of the Civil War against the Confederate Army of Northern Virginia. For many years, North Carolinians boasted that they had been "first at Bethel, farthest at Gettysburg and Chickamauga, and last at Appomattox."

**Question 0**

Who was the first Confederate soldier to die in the Civil War?

**Question 1**

Where was Henry Wyatt from?

**Question 2**

In which battle did Private Henry Wyatt die?

**Question 3**

When did Henry Wyatt die?

**Question 4**

When was the Battle of Gettysburg fought?

**Text number 38**

Although Baptists (which includes both blacks and whites) have maintained their majority in this part of the country (known as the Bible Belt), North Carolina's population practices a wide range of religions, including Judaism, Islam, Baha'i, Buddhism and Hinduism. In 2010, the largest denomination was the Southern Baptist Church, with 4,241 churches and 1,513,000 members; the second largest was the United Methodist Church, with 660,000 members and 1,923 churches. The third largest was the Roman Catholic Church with 428 000 members in 190 parishes. The fourth largest was the Presbyterian Church (USA), with 186 000 members and 710 congregations, a denomination brought over by the Scotch-Irish settlers of the colonial outback.

**Question 0**

What is the religious name given to the part of the country to which the Carolinas belong?

**Question 1**

Which religion is in the majority in the Bible belt?

**Question 2**

What was the largest denomination in North Carolina in 2010?

**Question 3**

What was the second largest denomination in North Carolina in 2010?

**Question 4**

What was the third largest denomination in North Carolina in 2010?

**Text number 39**

Currently, the rapid influx of northerners and immigrants from Latin America continues to increase ethnic and religious diversity: the number of Roman Catholics and Jews in the state has increased, as has overall religious diversity. North Carolina's second largest Protestant denomination after the Baptist tradition is Methodism, which is strong in the northern Piedmont, particularly in populous Guilford County. Guilford County and northeastern North Carolina also have a significant number of Quakers.

**Question 0**

Immigrants from Latin America to North Carolina are adding to what?

**Question 1**

What has happened to the number of Roman Catholics and Jews in North Carolina?

**Question 2**

Religious diversity in North Carolina is generally what?

**Question 3**

What is the second largest Protestant denomination in North Carolina?

**Question 4**

In which Piedmont county is Methodism particularly strong?

**Text number 40**

According to a 2013 Forbes article, the "Old North State" has gained employment in a wide range of industries. See the following article summary: The science, technology, energy and math (STEM) industry has grown 17.9 percent in the region surrounding the North Carolina capital since 2001, ranking Raleigh-Cary No. 5 among the 51 largest metropolitan areas in the country where technology is booming. In 2010, the gross domestic product of the state of North Carolina was $424.9 billion, while the state's debt was $2.4 billion in November 2012, according to one source, down from $57.8 billion in 2012, according to another source. In 2011, the civilian labor force was about 4.5 million and employment was nearly 4.1 million. The labor force is employed in all major employment sectors. North Carolina's economy covers 15 metropolitan areas. In 2010, Forbes Magazine ranked North Carolina as the third best state for business and Chief Executive Officer Magazine ranked North Carolina as the second best state.

**Question 0**

What is the nickname given to North Carolina?

**Question 1**

What percentage has the science, technology, energy and mathematics sector grown by since 2001?

**Question 2**

How does Raleigh-Cary rank among the 51 largest metro areas in the country?

**Question 3**

What was the gross state product of North Carolina in 2010?

**Question 4**

What was North Carolina's state debt in 2012?

**Text number 41**

North Carolina's party loyalties have undergone several significant changes in recent years: in the 2010 midterm elections, Tar Heel voters elected a Republican-majority bicameral legislature for the first time in more than a century, but North Carolina has also become the southern state to swing presidential races. After Southerner Democrat Jimmy Carter won the state comfortably in 1976, the state was consistently Republican in presidential elections until Democrat Barack Obama narrowly won the state in 2008. In the 1990s, Democrat Bill Clinton was just one point away from winning the state in 1992 and narrowly lost it in 1996. Bush easily won the state by more than 12 points, but by 2008 demographic changes, population growth and increased liberalisation in densely populated areas such as the Research Triangle, Charlotte, Greensboro, Winston-Salem, Fayetteville and Asheville propelled Barack Obama to victory in North Carolina, the first Democrat to win the state since 1976. In 2012, North Carolina was again considered a competitive state, and Democrats even held the 2012 Democratic National Convention in Charlotte. However, Republican Mitt Romney eventually won North Carolina by 2 points, the only state Obama lost in 2012, and one of only two states (along with Indiana) that switched from Obama in 2008 to the GOP in 2012.

**Question 0**

North Carolina voters have been leaning Republican since what year?

**Question 1**

What year did North Carolina voters once again vote Democrat?

**Question 2**

What year did Bill Clinton win North Carolina?

**Question 3**

What year did Bill Clinton lose in North Carolina?

**Question 4**

Where was the 2012 Democratic National Assembly held?

**Text number 42**

In 2012, the state elected a Republican governor (Pat McCrory) and lieutenant governor (Dan Forest) for the first time in more than two decades, and Republicans won veto-proof majorities in both the state House and Senate. Several seats in the US House of Representatives also changed hands, with Republicans gaining nine seats while Democrats gained four. In the 2014 midterm elections, Republican David Rouzer won the state's 7th Congressional District seat, increasing the party split in congressional representation to 10-3 in favour of the GOP.

**Question 0**

Who was elected Governor of North Carolina in 2012?

**Question 1**

Which political party does Pat McCrory belong to?

**Question 2**

Who was elected Lieutenant Governor of North Carolina in 2012?

**Question 3**

Which political party does Dan Forest belong to?

**Question 4**

Who won North Carolina's 7th Congressional District seat in 2014?

**Text number 43**

The North Carolina Department of Education oversees public elementary and secondary schools. The Secretary of the North Carolina Department of Education is the Secretary of the North Carolina State Board of Education, but the Board of Education, rather than the Board of Education, has most of the legal authority for setting public education policy. In 2009, the chair of the board also became the "chief executive" of the state school system. North Carolina has 115 public school systems, each of which is overseen by a local school board. A county may have one or more school systems. The largest school systems in North Carolina are the Wake County Public School System, Charlotte-Mecklenburg Schools, Guilford County Schools, Winston-Salem/Forsyth County Schools and Cumberland County Schools. In total, there are 2,425 public schools in the state, including 99 elementary schools. North Carolina schools were segregated until the Brown v. Board of Education lawsuit and the publication of the Pearsall Plan.

**Question 0**

Which agency oversees North Carolina's public schools?

**Question 1**

Who has the greatest legal competence in education policy-making?

**Question 2**

In what year did the chairman of the boards become the director general of public schools?

**Question 3**

How many public school systems are there in North Carolina?

**Question 4**

What is the largest school system in North Carolina?

**Text number 44**

In 1795, North Carolina opened the first public university in the United States - the University of North Carolina (now called the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill). More than 200 years later, North Carolina's university system includes 17 public universities, including North Carolina State University, North Carolina A&CHP and North Carolina A&CHP.T State University, North Carolina Central University, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina at Greensboro, East Carolina University, Western Carolina University, Winston-Salem State University, University of North Carolina at Asheville, University of North Carolina at Charlotte, University of North Carolina at Pembroke, University of North Carolina at Pembroke, UNC Wilmington, Elizabeth City State University, Appalachian State University, Fayetteville State University and UNC School of the Arts as well as . In addition to public universities, North Carolina has 58 public community colleges that are part of its community college system.North Carolina's largest university is currently North Carolina State University, with more than 34,000 students. North Carolina has many excellent universities as well as dozens of community colleges and private universities.

**Question 0**

In which state did the first public university open in the United States?

**Question 1**

What year was the first public university opened in the United States?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the first public university to open in the United States?

**Question 3**

What is the largest university in North Carolina?

**Question 4**

How many students attend North Carolina State University?

**Text number 45**

North Carolina also has many well-known private colleges and universities, including Duke University, Wake Forest University, Pfeiffer University, Lees-McRae College, Davidson College, Barton College, North Carolina Wesleyan College, Elon University, Guilford College, Livingstone College, Salem College and Shaw University (the first historically black college or university in the South), Laurel University, Meredith College, Methodist University, Belmont Abbey College (the only Catholic university in the Carolinas), Campbell University, University of Mount Olive, Montreat College, High Point University, Lenoir-Rhyne University (the only Lutheran university in North Carolina) and Wingate University.

**Question 0**

Duke University and Shaw University are examples of the types of higher education institutions that exist in North Carolina.

**Question 1**

What was the first black college in the South?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the only Catholic college in the Carolinas?

**Question 3**

What is the name of the only Lutheran university in North Carolina?

**Text number 46**

North Carolina is home to three major league sports teams: the Carolina Panthers of the National Football League and the Charlotte Hornets of the National Basketball Association play in Charlotte, while the Carolina Hurricanes of Raleigh play in the National Hockey League. The Panthers and Hurricanes are the only two major professional sports teams with the same geographical designation, although they play in different metropolitan areas. The Hurricanes are the only professional team from North Carolina to have won a league championship, having won the Stanley Cup in 2006. The Charlotte Hounds of Major League Lacrosse also play in North Carolina.

**Question 0**

How many major sports leagues live in North Carolina?

**Question 1**

What league do the Caroli8na Panthers belong to?

**Question 2**

What league are the Charlotte Hornets in?

**Question 3**

What league are the Carolina Hurricanes in?

**Question 4**

What is the only professional team from North Carolina to have won a league title?

**Text number 47**

In addition to professional team racing, North Carolina has strong ties to NASCAR and sting car racing, with two annual Sprint Cup races held at the Charlotte Motor Speedway in Concord. Charlotte also hosts the NASCAR Hall of Fame, while Concord is home to several top-level racing teams, including Hendrick Motorsports, Roush Fenway Racing, Richard Petty Motorsports, Stewart-Haas Racing and Chip Ganassi Racing. Numerous other tracks throughout North Carolina also host lower-level NASCAR races.

**Question 0**

Which North Carolina motor racing circuit hosts two Sprint Cup races each year?

**Question 1**

Where is Charlotte Motor Speedway located?

**Question 2**

Which North Carolina city is home to the NASCAR Hall of Fame?

**Question 3**

Which North Carolina city is home to several top cycling teams?

**Text number 48**

College sports are also popular in North Carolina, with 18 schools competing at the Division I level. The Atlantic Coast Conference (ACC) is headquartered in Greensboro, and both the ACC football championship (Charlotte) and the ACC men's basketball tournament (Greensboro) have most recently been held in North Carolina. College basketball in particular is very popular and is supported by the Tobacco Road games between Duke, North Carolina, North Carolina State and Wake Forest. The ACC championship game and The Belk Bowl are held annually at Charlotte's Bank of America Stadium and feature teams from the ACC and Southeastern Conference. The state has also hosted the NCAA Men's Basketball Final Four twice, in Greensboro in 1974 and in Charlotte in 1994.

**Question 0**

How many colleges compete at the Division 1 level in North Carolina?

**Question 1**

Where is the ACC headquarters?

**Question 2**

Where were the ACC football and basketball championships held recently?

**Question 3**

Which stadium hosts the ACC Championship game and the Belk Bowl each year?

**Question 4**

How many times has North Carolina hosted the NCAA Final Four?

**Text number 49**

The Appalachian Mountains attract several million tourists every year to the western part of the state, including the historic Biltmore Estate. The scenic Blue Ridge Parkway and Great Smoky Mountains National Park are two of the most popular national parks and units in the US, with more than 25 million visitors in 2013. The town of Asheville is consistently voted one of the best places to visit and live in the US, known for its rich art deco architecture, mountain scenery and outdoor activities, as well as its free-spirited and cheerful residents.

**Question 0**

How many people visit the Appalachian Mountains each year?

**Question 1**

In which part of the state is the Appalachian Mountains located?

**Question 2**

Great Smoky Mountain and Blue Ridge Parkway are located in which mountain area?

**Question 3**

How many tourists visited the Smoky Mountains and Blue Ridge Parkway in 2013?

**Question 4**

Which North Carolina town is consistently voted one of the best places to live in the US?

**Text number 50**

In Raleigh, many tourists visit the Capital, the African American Cultural Complex, the Raleigh Museum of Contemporary Art, the Gregg Museum of Art & Design at NCSU:Haywood Hall House & Gardens, Marbles Kids Museum, North Carolina Museum of Art, North Carolina History Museum, North Carolina Museum of Natural History, North Carolina Sports Hall of Fame, Raleigh City Museum, J. C. Raulston Arboretum, Joel Lane House, Mordecai House, Montfort Hall and Pope House Museum. The Carolina Hurricanes NHL hockey team is also located in the city.

**Question 0**

Which hockey team is based in Raleigh?

**Question 1**

What league are the Carolina Hurricanes in?

**Question 2**

Which Hall of Fame is located in Raleigh?

**Question 3**

Which arboretum is located in Raleigh?

**Text number 51**

The Piedmont Triad, or state centre, is home to Krispy Kreme, Mayberry, Texas Pete's, Lexington BBQ and Moravian biscuits. In Asheboro, the internationally acclaimed North Carolina Zoo draws visitors to the animals, plants and 57 pieces of art on display in the world's largest wildlife habitat park with five miles of shaded trails. Located in the central part of the state, Seagrove attracts many tourists along the Pottery Highway (NC Hwy 705). Wilkesboro's MerleFest attracts more than 80,000 people for its four-day music festival, and Wet 'n Wild Emerald Pointe water park in Greensboro is another attraction.

**Question 0**

What is downtown North Carolina?

**Question 1**

Where is Krispy Cream headquarters located?

**Question 2**

In which city is the North Carolina Zoo located?

**Question 3**

How many kilometres of shaded trails are there at the Nort Carolina Zoo?

**Question 4**

Which North Carolina town is hosting Merlefest?

**Text number 52**

North Carolina offers a wide range of recreational activities from beach swimming to mountain skiing. North Carolina offers fall color, fresh and saltwater fishing, hunting, bird watching, farm tours, ATV trails, ballooning, rock climbing, biking, hiking, skiing, boating and sailing, camping, kayaking, spelunking, gardens and arboretums. North Carolina has theme parks, aquariums, museums, historic sites, lighthouses, elegant theatres, concert halls and fine restaurants.

**Question 0**

Fishing, hunting and bird watching are what activities are offered in North Carolina?

**Question 1**

In autumn, people go to North Carolina to see what?

**Question 2**

What is another name for a cave deposit?

**Text number 53**

North Carolinians enjoy outdoor activities on numerous local bike trails, in 34 state parks and 14 national parks. National Park Service units include the Appalachian National Scenic Trail, Blue Ridge Parkway, Cape Hatteras National Seashore, Cape Lookout National Seashore, Carl Sandburg Home National Historic Site in Flat Rock, Fort Raleigh National Historic Site in Manteo, Great Smoky Mountains National Park, Guilford Courthouse National Military Park in Greensboro, Moores Creek National Battlefield near Currie in Pender County, Overmountain Victory National Historic Trail, Old Salem National Historic Site in Winston-Salem, Trail of Tears National Historic Trail and Wright Brothers National Memorial at Kill Devil Hills. National forests include Uwharrie National Forest in central North Carolina, Croatan National Forest in eastern North Carolina, Pisgah National Forest in the northern mountains and Nantahala National Forest in the southwestern part of the state.

**Question 0**

How many state parks are there in North Carolina?

**Question 1**

How many national parks are there in North Carolina?

**Question 2**

Where is the Uwharrie National Forest located?

**Question 3**

Where is Croatan National Forest located?

**Question 4**

Where is Guilford Courthouse National Military Park located?

**Text number 54**

North Carolina has a rich tradition in the arts, music and cuisine. The non-profit arts and culture sector generates $1.2 billion in direct economic activity in North Carolina, supporting more than 43,600 full-time jobs and generating $119 million in revenue for local governments and the state of North Carolina. North Carolina established the North Carolina Museum of Art, the first major museum collection in the country to be formed through state legislation and funding, and it continues to bring millions into the NC economy. See also this list of North Carolina museums.

**Question 0**

Which industry generates $1.2 billion in annual economic activity in North Carolina?

**Question 1**

How many full-time jobs are held by people working in the non-profit arts and culture sector?

**Question 2**

How much money does the non-profit arts and culture sector collect for the state?

**Question 3**

What was the country's first museum established by a legislator?

**Question 4**

How much money does the North Carolina Museum of Art generate?

**Text number 55**

North Carolina offers a wide range of shopping opportunities. The SouthPark Mall in Charlotte is currently the largest shopping centre in the Carolinas, with almost 2.0 million square metres. Other large malls in Charlotte include Northlake Mall and Carolina Place Mall in the nearby suburb of Pineville. Other large malls in the state include Hanes Mall in Winston-Salem, Crabtree Valley Mall, North Hills Mall and Triangle Town Center in Raleigh, Friendly Center and Four Seasons Town Centre in Greensboro, Oak Hollow Mall in High Point, Concord Mills in Concord, Valley Hills Mall in Hickory, The Streets at Southpoint and Northgate Mall in Durham and Independence Mall in Wilmington, NC, and Tanger Outlets in Charlotte, Nags Head, Blowing Rock and Mebane, NC.

**Question 0**

Where is SouthPark Mall located?

**Question 1**

What is the largest shopping centre in the Carolinas?

**Question 2**

How big is SouthPark Mall?

**Question 3**

Where is Hanes Mall located?

**Question 4**

Where is the Four Seasons Town Center located?

**Text number 56**

North Carolina's culinary staple is pork barbecue. There is great regional variation and competition in the sauces and methods used to prepare barbecue. The general trend in Western North Carolina is to use a high quality Boston steak. Western North Carolina pork barbecue uses a tomato-based sauce and only pork shoulder (dark meat). Western North Carolina barbecue is commonly called Lexington barbecue after the town of Lexington in the Piedmont Triad, which hosts the Lexington Barbecue Festival, which attracts more than 100,000 visitors each October. Eastern North Carolina pork barbecue uses a vinegar-red pepper-based sauce, and the "whole hog" is cooked, combining both white and dark meat.

**Question 0**

What is North Carolina's culinary staple?

**Question 1**

Which pork do Western North Carolinians prefer for grilling?

**Question 2**

What pork does Western North Carolina prefer for BBQ?

**Question 3**

What is another name for Western North Carolina Barbecue?

**Question 4**

How many people visit the Lexington Barbecue Festival each year?

**Text number 57**

Krispy Kreme, an international doughnut chain, was founded in North Carolina and is headquartered in Winston-Salem. Pepsi-Cola was first produced in 1898 in New Bern. A regional soft drink, Cheerwine, was created and is still based in Salisbury. Despite its name, the hot sauce Texas Pete was created in North Carolina; it is also headquartered in Winston-Salem. The Hardee's fast food chain originated in Rocky Mount. Another fast food chain, Bojangles', was founded and is headquartered in Charlotte. A popular restaurant chain in North Carolina is the Golden Corral. Founded in 1973, the chain was established in Fayetteville and is headquartered in Raleigh. The popular pickle brand Mount Olive Pickle Company was founded in Mount Olive in 1926. The fast-food burger chain Hwy 55 Burgers, Shakes & Fries is also located in Mount Olive. Cook Out, a popular fast food chain serving burgers, hot dogs and milkshakes in a variety of flavors, was founded in Greensboro in 1989 and has begun to expand outside North Carolina. In 2013, Southern Living named Durham - Chapel Hill the "Tastiest City" in the South.

**Question 0**

Krispy kreme is a chain of what kind of stores?

**Question 1**

Where is Krispy Cream's head office?

**Question 2**

When was Pepsi-Cola first produced?

**Question 3**

Where was Pepsi first made?

**Question 4**

In which city was Cheerwine created and where was it based?

**Text number 58**

Over the past decade, North Carolina has become a cultural hub and a haven for internationally award-winning wines (Noni Bacca Winery), internationally acclaimed cheeses (Ashe County), L'institut International aux Arts Gastronomiques: Conquerront Les Yanks les Truffes, 15. January 2010", the International Truffle Centre (Garland Truffles) and beer production, as tobacco lands have been converted to vineyards and state laws regulating beer alcohol content have allowed the alcohol content of beer to rise from 6% to 15%. The Yadkin Valley in particular has become a growing market for grape production, and Asheville was recently recognized as "Beer City USA". Asheville has the most breweries per capita of any city in the United States. Well-known and marketed beer brands in North Carolina include Highland Brewing, Duck Rabbit Brewery, Mother Earth Brewery, Weeping Radish Brewery, Big Boss Brewing, Foothills Brewing, Carolina Brewing Company, Lonerider Brewing and White Rabbit Brewing Company.

**Question 0**

Which international award-winning winery is located in North Carolina?

**Question 1**

What are the most prized cheeses made in North Carolina?

**Question 2**

A lot of tobacco land has been converted into what kind of orchards?

**Question 3**

North Carolina state law allowed alcohol levels to jump from 6% to what?

**Question 4**

Which city was named Beer City USA?

**Text number 59**

Tobacco was one of the first major industries to develop after the Civil War. Many farmers grew tobacco, and the invention of the cigarette made the product particularly popular. Winston-Salem is the birthplace of the R. J. Reynolds Tobacco Company (RJR), founded in 1874 by R. J. Reynolds as one of the city's 16 tobacco companies. By 1914, it was selling 425 million Camel packs a year. Today it is the second largest tobacco company in the US (after Altria Group). RJR is an indirect wholly owned subsidiary of Reynolds American Inc., of which British American Tobacco owns 42%.

**Question 0**

What was one of the first growing industries to develop after the Civil War?

**Question 1**

What became popular with the invention of cigarettes?

**Question 2**

Winston Salem is the headquarters of which tobacco company?

**Question 3**

In what year was RJ Reynolds Tobacco Company founded?

**Question 4**

How many packs of camel cigarettes were sold per year in 1914?

**Text number 60**

Located in Jacksonville, Camp Lejeune, along with nearby Marine Corps Air Station (MCAS) Cherry Point, MCAS New River, Camp Geiger, Camp Johnson, Stone Bay and Courthouse Bay, forms the largest concentration of Marines and sailors in the world. MCAS Cherry Point is home to the 2nd Marine Air Wing. Seymour Johnson Air Force Base in Goldsboro is home to the 4th Fighter Squadron and the 916th Air Refueling Squadron. The Coast Guard Air Station in Elizabeth City is one of the busiest airports in the US Coast Guard. North Carolina is also home to the Military Operations Marine Terminal at Sunny Point Southport.

**Question 0**

Where is Camp Lejeune located?

**Question 1**

What is Camp Lejeune?

**Question 2**

Which NC city is home to the world's largest concentration of marines and sailors?

**Question 3**

Where is Seymour Johnson Air Force Base?

**Question 4**

Where is the military terminal Ocean Terminal Sunny Point?

**Document number 256**

**Text number 0**

The Heian period (平安時代, Heian jidai?) is the last period of Japan's classical history, which lasted from 794 to 1185. The period is named after Heian-kyō, the capital of present-day Kyōto. It is the period in Japanese history when Buddhism, Taoism and other Chinese influences were at their peak. The Heian period is also considered the height of the Japanese imperial court and is known for its art, especially poetry and literature. Although the Imperial House of Japan had power on the surface, the real power lay with the Fujiwara clan, a powerful aristocratic family who had intermarried with the Imperial family. The mothers of many of the emperors were in fact descended from the Fujiwara family. Heian (平安?) means 'peace' in Japanese.

**Question 0**

What is the name of the last period of Japanese classical history?

**Question 1**

Which city is the Heian season named after?

**Question 2**

What does heian mean in Japanese?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the clan known during the Heian period?

**Question 4**

What kind of art was the Heian period known for?

**Question 5**

Which period marks the end of Japan's history?

**Question 6**

Which Japanese dynasty was named after the city of Heian-kyo?

**Question 7**

What Chinese influences were in decline during the Heian period?

**Question 8**

What was in decline with the imperial court?

**Question 9**

To which family did many Japanese emperors belong?

**Text number 1**

The Heian period was preceded by the Nara period, and began in 794 AD after the 50th Emperor Kanmu moved the capital of Japan to Heian-kyōo (present-day Kyōto京都). Kanmu first tried to move the capital to Nagaoka-kyōo, but the city was hit by a series of disasters that prompted the emperor to move the capital a second time to Heian. The Heian period is considered the pinnacle of Japanese culture, always admired by later generations. The period is also known for the rise of the samurai class, which eventually took power and ushered in the feudal era in Japan.

**Question 0**

What was the name of the pre-Heian period?

**Question 1**

In what year did the Heian season begin?

**Question 2**

Which warrior class rose in the Heian era?

**Question 3**

What is the current town of Heian-kyo?

**Question 4**

What was the name of the emperor who moved the capital of Japan to Heian?

**Question 5**

When did the Nara season start?

**Question 6**

Where was the capital of Japan before 794 AD?

**Question 7**

Where did Emperor Kanmu try to move the capital after Heian Kyo?

**Question 8**

Why have later generations always admired Nara's time?

**Question 9**

Which category declined in the Heian-kyo period?

**Text number 2**

In name, the emperor was in power, but in reality it was the Fujiwara nobility. However, the Fujiwara and other noble families needed guards, police and soldiers to protect their interests in the provinces. The warrior class achieved steady political gains throughout the Heian period. As early as 939 AD. Taira no Masakado threatened the power of the central government and led a rebellion in the eastern Hitachi province, and almost simultaneously Fujiwara no Sumitomo rebelled in the west. Yet the real military takeover of the Japanese government was still centuries away, when much of the government's power would have been in the hands of the shogunate's private armies.

**Question 0**

Which noble family exercised power during the Heian period?

**Question 1**

Who threatened the power of the Japanese central government?

**Question 2**

Masakado led the rebellion in which province?

**Question 3**

Which member of the Fujiwara family rebelled in western Japan?

**Question 4**

What year did Masakado start his rebellion?

**Question 5**

Who ruled the Fujiwara family in Japan?

**Question 6**

Who needed guards and soldiers to protect their interests at the imperial court?

**Question 7**

Whose political power was weakened during the Heian period?

**Question 8**

Who threatened the central government in the 9th century AD?

**Question 9**

What did Fujiwara no Sumitoma lead to in the East?

**Text number 3**

When Emperor Kammu moved the capital to Heian-kyō (Kyōto), which remained the imperial capital for the next thousand years, he did so not only to strengthen imperial power but also to improve the geopolitical position of his seat of power. Nara was abandoned after only 70 years, partly because of the rise of Dōkyō and the encroachment of secular power by the Buddhist institutions there. Kyōto was well connected by river to the sea and accessible by land from the eastern provinces. The beginning of the Heian period (784-967) continued the Nara culture; the capital of Heian was modelled on the Chinese Tang capital Chang'an, like Nara, but on a larger scale than Nara. Kammu sought to improve the existing Tang-style administrative system. This system, known as ritsuryō, sought to re-establish the Tang Empire in Japan, even though there were 'huge differences in development' between the countries. Despite the decline of Taika-Taihō reforms, imperial rule was strong in the early Heian period. Indeed, Kammu's avoidance of drastic reforms reduced the intensity of political struggles, and he was recognised as one of Japan's most powerful emperors.

**Question 0**

How many years was Heian the capital of Japan?

**Question 1**

How many years was Nara the former capital?

**Question 2**

Which religion grew in popularity in Nara?

**Question 3**

What period was the beginning of the Heian period?

**Question 4**

Which Chinese capital did Kanmu use to formulate his government?

**Question 5**

Why did Emperor Kammu move the capital to Heian0kyo after a thousand years?

**Question 6**

Why did Nara remain the capital for 70 years?

**Question 7**

What did Nara have other than good access to the river?

**Question 8**

What system did the Tang Empire recreate?

**Text number 4**

Although Kammu had abolished universal conscription in 792, he still carried out major military offensives to subjugate the Emish in northern and eastern Japan, who were possibly descendants of displaced Jōmon. After achieving temporary victories in 794, Kammu appointed a new commander, Sakanoue no Tamuramaro, in 797 under the name Sei-i Taishōgun (General of Barbarian Subjugation). By 801, the shogun had defeated the emishi and extended the imperial territories to the eastern end of Honshū. However, imperial control over the provinces was tenuous at best. In the ninth and tenth centuries, much of the power passed to large families who ignored the Chinese-style land and tax systems imposed by the Kyoto government. Stability came to Japan, but although the imperial family was ensured succession through inheritance, power was again concentrated in the hands of a single noble family, the Fujiwara, which also helped Japan to develop more.

**Question 0**

What was the name of Jōmon's possible descendants?

**Question 1**

What was the name of the new commander appointed by Kanmu in 797?

**Question 2**

What was Tamuramaro's military name?

**Question 3**

What year was the Emish defeated?

**Question 4**

The imperial capital extended to the eastern edge of which Japanese island?

**Question 5**

What did Emishi give up in 793?

**Question 6**

Who was Kammu descended from?

**Question 7**

Who did Kammu appoint as commander in 794?

**Question 8**

Who did Emishi defeat in 801?

**Question 9**

Who was in firm control of the provinces?

**Text number 5**

After Kammu's death in 806 and the succession struggle between his sons, two new posts were created to adapt the administrative structure of Taika-Taihō. Through the new private office of the emperor, the emperor was able to issue administrative orders more directly and confidently than before. The new metropolitan police largely replaced the ceremonial imperial guard units. Although these two agencies temporarily reinforced the role of the emperor, they and other Chinese-style structures were soon superseded in the developing state. In 838, the end of the Tang China-oriented empires, which had begun in 630 and had been approved by the emperor, marked the de facto end of Chinese influence. Tang China was in a state of decline and Chinese Buddhists were severely persecuted, undermining Japanese respect for Chinese institutions. Japan began to turn inward.

**Question 0**

What year did Emperor Kanmu die?

**Question 1**

Which agency replaced the Imperial Guard?

**Question 2**

Which new agency will allow the government to issue administrative orders more quickly?

**Question 3**

Tang China's influence over Japan ended in what year?

**Question 4**

whose sons died in 806?

**Question 5**

Which administrative structure was abolished in 806?

**Question 6**

Which agency eliminated the need for the issuer to issue administrative orders?

**Question 7**

Who was replaced by the imperial guard

**Question 8**

Whose influence began to grow in 630?

**Text number 6**

Since the Soga clan had taken over the throne in the sixth century, the Fujiwara had married into the imperial family in the ninth century, and one of their members was the first head of the emperor's private office. Another Fujiwara became regent, Sesshō on behalf of his grandson, then a minor emperor, and yet another was named Kampaku. Towards the end of the ninth century, several emperors tried to restrain the Fujiwaras, but failed. During the reign of Emperor Daigo (897-930), however, Fujiwara's rule was suspended for a time, when he ruled directly.

**Question 0**

In which century did the Soga family rise to the throne?

**Question 1**

Which member of the clan became head of the emperor's private office?

**Question 2**

Which emperor interrupted the Fujiwara clan's reign?

**Question 3**

Emperor Daigo ruled for what years?

**Question 4**

Which family took over the throne in the 600s?

**Question 5**

Which family took the throne in the 9th century?

**Question 6**

Which emperor gave Fujiware more power?

**Question 7**

Who was the first Japanese emperor to rule directly?

**Text number 7**

However, Daigo did not degrade Fujiwara's position, but actually strengthened it during his reign. The central government of Japan was further weakened, and the Fujiwara and other large families and religious foundations acquired ever larger shōen and greater wealth in the early tenth century. By the beginning of the Heian period, the shōen had acquired legal status, and the major religious institutions sought clear, perpetual property rights, tax exemption, and exemption from state control of the shōen they held. The people who cultivated the land found it advantageous to transfer ownership to the shōen holders in exchange for a share of the harvest. Increasingly, people and land were exempt from central control and taxation, which effectively meant a return to pre-Taika reform conditions.

**Question 0**

What kind of property gained legal status in the early part of Heian's term?

**Question 1**

Farm workers traded titles to shoemakers in exchange for what?

**Question 2**

In which century did Fujiwara and other noble families become rich?

**Question 3**

Who was demoted during Deigo's reign?

**Question 4**

Where did central control grow?

**Question 5**

Whose zoom and wealth decreased?

**Question 6**

What reform shifted control of people and land from central government?

**Question 7**

when did religious institutions acquire legal status?

**Text number 8**

Despite the usurpation of imperial power, the Fujiwara led a period of cultural and artistic flowering at the imperial court and among the aristocracy. There was great interest in beautiful poetry and vernacular literature. There were two types of Japanese phonetic script: katakana, a simplified script developed using parts of Chinese characters, was abbreviated to hiragana, an italic script with a distinctive Japanese spelling. Hiragana provided the written expression for the spoken word and with it Japan's famous vernacular literature, much of which was written by courtiers who had not been educated in Chinese like their male counterparts. Three women of the late twentieth and early eleventh centuries presented their views on life and romance at the Heian court in Kagerō Nikk, Fujiwara Michitsuna's mother, Sei Shōnagon's The Pillow Book and Murasaki Shikibu's The Tale of Genji. Domestic art also flourished under Fujiwara, after centuries of imitating Chinese forms. Vividly coloured yamato-e paintings, Japanese-style paintings of court life and stories of temples and shrines, became common in the mid to late Heian period and set the pattern for Japanese art to this day.

**Question 0**

Which script was developed from parts of Chinese characters?

**Question 1**

What was the name of the piece of fiction that gave expression to the words spoken?

**Question 2**

Who is the author of the Pillow Book?

**Question 3**

Who is the author of the Genji story?

**Question 4**

What was the name of the brightly coloured paintings depicting court life?

**Question 5**

What diminished when Fujiwara ruled the imperial court?

**Question 6**

Where did Japan borrow the spelling of hiragana from?

**Question 7**

Which writing style led to the decline of Japanese vernacular literature?

**Question 8**

What did the courtiers who learned Chinese write?

**Question 9**

What still influences Chinese art today?

**Text number 9**

As culture flourished, so did decentralisation. While the first phase of shōen development at the beginning of the Heian period had opened up new lands and granted land concessions to aristocrats and religious institutions, the second phase saw the growth of patrimonial 'house governments', as in the old clan system (in fact, the old form of clan system had remained largely intact within the grand old central government). Social, economic and political changes meant that new institutions were now needed. The Taihō order lapsed, and its institutions were left to ceremonial functions. Family administrations now became public institutions. The Fujiwaras ruled Japan as the most powerful family and decided on the general affairs of the state, such as the succession to the throne. Family and state affairs became thoroughly intertwined, and this pattern was followed by other families, monasteries and even the imperial family. The administration of the country became the aristocracy's primary livelihood, not so much because direct control by the imperial family or the central government had declined, but rather because of strong family solidarity and the fact that Japan was no longer seen as a unified nation.

**Question 0**

What was the main occupation of the aristocracy?

**Question 1**

What grew during the second phase of the development of the Internet?

**Question 2**

Which government restructuring failed during the development of the Internet?

**Question 3**

The succession to the throne was determined by which clan?

**Question 4**

What flourished with centralisation?

**Question 5**

What became the primary industry as a result of the reduction in central government control?

**Question 6**

Which code has moved beyond its ceremonial role?

**Question 7**

What became of public institutions?

**Question 8**

Who saw Japan as one nation?

**Text number 10**

Under the early court, when conscription was centrally controlled, military affairs were taken out of the hands of the provincial aristocracy. However, when the system broke down after 792, the primary source of military power reverted to local rulers. The restoration of an effective military system was gradually achieved through trial and error. At that time, the imperial court had no army, but relied on an organisation of professional warriors, consisting mainly of oryoshi, who were appointed to individual provinces, and tsuibushi, who were appointed to imperial districts or special missions. Thus was born the Japanese military class. However, the final authority rested with the imperial court.

**Question 0**

Around what year did the early courts of conscription disband?

**Question 1**

What was the name given to the warriors appointed to the province?

**Question 2**

What were called warriors assigned to specific tasks?

**Question 3**

Where was the final authority over the army?

**Question 4**

What was in the hands of the provincial aristocracy in the early courts?

**Question 5**

What was the process by which the provincial aristocracy slowly gained power?

**Question 6**

Who formed the army of the Imperial Court?

**Question 7**

What was the power of the Japanese military class?

**Text number 11**

Shōen holders had manpower at their disposal, and as they gained access to better military technology (such as new training methods, more powerful bows, armour, horses and better swords) and faced deteriorating local conditions in the ninth century, military service became part of Shōen life. In addition to the Shōen, civil and religious institutions also formed private guard units to protect themselves. Gradually, the provincial upper class transformed into a new military elite based on the ideals of the bush (warrior) or samurai (literally serving).

**Question 0**

Who had better access to better military technology?

**Question 1**

Which institutions also hired private security guards for protection?

**Question 2**

Which class became the new military elite?

**Question 3**

What does the word "bushi" mean?

**Question 4**

Where did Shoen not have access?

**Question 5**

What took the workforce away from Shoen?

**Question 6**

What was no longer part of Shoon life after the ninth century?

**Question 7**

Which institutions were banned from forming private security guards?

**Question 8**

Who made up the bulk of the regular army?

**Text number 12**

Bush interests were diverse, transcending old power structures and forming new associations in the tenth century. Mutual interests, kinship and kinship ties were consolidated into military groups that became part of the family government. Over time, large regional military families formed around members of the court aristocracy, who had become important provincial influences. These military families gained prestige through their connections with the imperial court and the military titles and labour supply granted by the court. The Fujiwara family, the Taira clan and the Minamoto clan were among the most important families supported by the new military class.

**Question 0**

In which century did Bushi set up new associations?

**Question 1**

How did military families gain prestige?

**Question 2**

Who were the three prominent families during the rise of the warrior classes?

**Question 3**

Who had limited interests in the tenth century?

**Question 4**

Which groups became members of the central administration?

**Question 5**

What formed around the provincial aristocracy?

**Question 6**

What did the provincial aristocracy grant the imperial court?

**Text number 13**

The Fujiwara ruled the throne until the reign of Emperor Go-Sanjō (1068-1073), the first emperor not born of a Fujiwara mother since the ninth century. Determined to restore imperial power through strong personal rule, Go-Sanōjo implemented reforms to curb Fujiwara's influence. He also set up an office to compile and certify succession records to restore central rule. Many shōen were not properly certified, and large landowners, such as the Fujiwara, felt threatened by the loss of their lands. Go-Sanjo also established the In-no-cho (and:院庁 Office of the Cloistered Emperor), held by successive emperors who abdicated power to devote themselves to behind-the-scenes administration, or insei.

**Question 0**

Who was the first non-Fujiwara emperor since the 9th century?

**Question 1**

Who implemented reforms to reduce Fujiwara's influence in government?

**Question 2**

What was the term used for behind-the-scenes management?

**Question 3**

Who was the last emperor born to Fujiwara's mother?

**Question 4**

Whose influence grew during the Go-Sanjo?

**Question 5**

What was Fjiware trying to translate and validate?

**Question 6**

Who was threatened by Fujiware's attempt to validate the estate's data?

**Question 7**

By what office did the emperor rule?

**Text number 14**

In-no-cho filled the void left by the fall of Fujiwara. Instead of being expelled, the Fujiwaras mostly retained their old positions as civil dictators and ministers at the centre, but were bypassed in the decision-making process. Over time, many Fujiwara were replaced, mostly by members of the rising Minamoto family. As the Fujiwara became embroiled in disputes among themselves and formed northern and southern factions, the insect system enabled the imperial lineage to exert influence on the throne. The period between 1086 and 1156 saw the rise of In-no-cho's supremacy and the rise of the military class throughout the country. The government was dominated by military power rather than civil authority.

**Question 0**

How was the diminishing power of the Fujiwara government met?

**Question 1**

Which clan gradually replaced the Fujiwara?

**Question 2**

What allowed the paternal line of the imperial family to influence the royal succession?

**Question 3**

During which years was In-no-cho prominent?

**Question 4**

Who left the vacuum for Fujiwara to fill?

**Question 5**

Who did the emperor banish?

**Question 6**

Who was involved in the decision-making process?

**Question 7**

Which other family was displaced by the Fujiwara?

**Text number 15**

The mid-twelfth century struggle for succession gave the Fujiwara a chance to regain their former power. Fujiwara no Yorinaga sided with the retired emperor in 1156 in a violent battle against a heir apparent supported by Taira and Minamoto (the Hōgen rebellion). Eventually, the Fujiwara were destroyed, the old regime was overthrown and the Inse system was rendered powerless when the bushi took over the affairs of the court, marking a turning point in Japanese history. In 1159, Taira and Minamoto came to blows (the Heiji Rebellion), beginning a twenty-year period of Taira rule.

**Question 0**

Which member of Fujiwara tried to rebel in the mid-twelfth century?

**Question 1**

Which battle led to the destruction of Fujiwara?

**Question 2**

Which clans fought during the Heiji rebellion?

**Question 3**

What year did the Heiji rebellion take place?

**Question 4**

After the Heiji rebellion, which clan grew in power?

**Question 5**

Which battle was fought in the 13th century?

**Question 6**

Who had a chance to regain their former power in the 13th century?

**Question 7**

In which year did no Yorinaga side with the heir of Emeror?

**Question 8**

Who supported a retired emperor in the 11th century?

**Question 9**

What rebellion took place in the 1100s?

**Text number 16**

Taira Kiyomori emerged as the real ruler of Japan after the fall of Minamoto, and he remained in power for the next 20 years. He gave his daughter Tokuko in marriage to the young emperor Takakura, who died at only 19, and left their grandson Antoku on the throne. Kiyomori filled no fewer than 50 government posts with his relatives, rebuilt the Inland Sea and promoted trade with Sung China. When necessary, he also took aggressive measures to secure power, including the removal and expulsion of 45 court officials and the destruction of two troublesome temples, Todai-ji and Kofuku-ji.

**Question 0**

Which military commander took power after the fall of the Minamoto clan?

**Question 1**

How old was Emperor Takakura when he died?

**Question 2**

What was the name of Takakura's successor?

**Question 3**

How many court officials did Kiyomori remove to protect his power?

**Question 4**

What were the names of the temples destroyed by Kiyomori?

**Question 5**

Whose destruction led to Minamoto becoming the real power in Japan?

**Question 6**

What was the name of Minamata's daughter?

**Question 7**

Whose daughter died at the age of 19?

**Question 8**

Who blocked trade with Sung China?

**Question 9**

Who built two temples while in power?

**Text number 17**

Once Yoritomo was established, the bakufu system that would rule Japan for the next seven centuries was complete. He appointed military governors, or daimyo, to govern the provinces, and landlords, or jitos, to oversee public and private estates. Yoritomo then turned his attention to eliminating the powerful Fujiwara family, which protected his rebellious brother Yoshitsune. Three years later, he was appointed shogun of Kyoto. A year before his death in 1199, Yoritomo ousted the teenage emperor Go-Toba from the throne. Two of Go-Toba's sons succeeded him, but Yoritomo's followers ousted them from the shogunate as well.

**Question 0**

What term was used to describe military governors?

**Question 1**

What was the term used for administrators of estates?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the emperor who was dethroned by Yoritomo?

**Question 3**

Which system did Yoritomo stop?

**Question 4**

What areas did the carers control?

**Question 5**

Who supervised the impeachment?

**Question 6**

Who strengthened the Fujiwara family during their reign?

**Question 7**

Who did Yoshitsune dethrone?

**Text number 18**

Buddhism began to spread throughout Japan during the Heian period, mainly through two major esoteric sects, Tendai and Shingon. Tendai originated in China and is based on the Lotus Sutra, one of the most important sutras of Mahayana Buddhism; Saichō was instrumental in bringing it to Japan. Shingon is a Japanese transmission of the Chen Yen school of Chinese. Shingon, brought to Japan by the monk Kūkai, emphasises esoteric Buddhism. Both Kūkai and Saichō sought to combine state and religion and to gain support from the aristocracy, leading to the concept of 'aristocratic Buddhism'. An important part of the Tendai doctrine was the proposition that enlightenment was attainable by "every being". Saichō also sought independent ordination for Tendai monks. A close relationship developed between the Tendai monastic complex on Mount Hiei and the imperial court in its new capital at the foot of the mountain. As a result, great respect for the emperor and the nation was emphasised in Tendai. Kammu himself was a major patron of the Tendai clan, which rose to great power in the following centuries. Kūkai made a great impression on the emperors who succeeded Emperor Kammu, and also on generations of Japanese, not only through his holiness but also through his poetry, calligraphy, painting and sculpture. With its "rich symbols, rituals and mandalas", the Shingon had a wide appeal.

**Question 0**

Which religion spread during the Heian period?

**Question 1**

What were the two Japanese sects of Buddhism?

**Question 2**

Who brought Shingon Buddhism to Japan?

**Question 3**

Tendai Buddhism suggested that enlightenment was possible for whom?

**Question 4**

Which philosophy had little influence in the Haian period?

**Question 5**

What were the two Chinese sects of Buddhism?

**Question 6**

Where did Kukai bring Tendai Buddhism?

**Question 7**

Who thought that all Buddhist monks should be ordained together?

**Question 8**

With which court did Shingon have a close relationship?

**Text number 19**

Poetry in particular was the basis of court life. Nobles and courtiers were expected to master the art of writing poetry as a sign of their status. Any occasion could require the writing of a poem, from the birth of a child to the coronation of an emperor or even a beautiful nature scene. A well-written poem or haiku could easily make or break a person's reputation, and was often a key element of social interaction.Almost as important was the choice of calligraphy, or handwriting. The Japanese of this period believed that handwriting could reflect the state of a person's soul: therefore, poor or hasty handwriting could be taken as a sign of poor breeding. Regardless of whether the script was Chinese or Japanese, good handwriting and artistic skill were paramount to social reputation when it came to poetry. Sei Shonagon mentions in his Pillow Book that when a courtesan tried to ask him for advice on how to write a poem for Empress Sadako, he had to politely rebuke the man because his writing was so bad.

**Question 0**

Which art form became a sign of status in the courts?

**Question 1**

What did the Japanese believe reflected the soul during the Heian period?

**Question 2**

What was said to indicate low status or "bad upbringing"?

**Question 3**

Who was expected to be able to read poetry?

**Question 4**

What were the verses thought to reflect?

**Question 5**

What was the sign of a good upbringing?

**Question 6**

Who criticised the Empress for bad writing?

**Text number 20**

The lyrics of the modern Japanese national anthem Kimi ga Yo were written in the Heian period, as was the story of Genji by Murasaki Shikibu, one of the first novels ever written. The revealing observations and reflections of Sei Shōnagon, a contemporary and rival of Murasaki Shikibu as a servant of the imperial court, were recorded in the 990s in a cushion book that revealed the daily life of the capital. Poetry flourished in the Heian period, with works by Ariwara no Narihira, Ono no Komachi, Izumi Shikibu, Murasaki Shikibu, Saigyō and Fujiwara no Teika. The famous Japanese poem known as Iroha (いろは), of uncertain authorship, was also written during Heian's period.

**Question 0**

What is the name of the Japanese national anthem?

**Question 1**

Which famous poem, by an unknown author, was written in the Heian period?

**Question 2**

The Pillow Book was a collection of whose observations of the imperial court?

**Question 3**

When were the lyrics of an ancient Japanese hymn written.

**Question 4**

What was the title of Sei Shonagon's first ever novel?

**Question 5**

When did Fujiwara no Teika write Iroha?

**Text number 21**

On the one hand, the Heian period was an unusually long period of peace, but it can also be argued that it weakened Japan's economy and led to poverty among all but a few residents. Rice-field management was a key source of income for families like the Fujiwara, and was the basis of their power. The aristocratic beneficiaries of the Heian culture, the Ryōmin (良民 "Good People"), numbered about five thousand people in a country of perhaps five million. One reason the samurai were able to take power was that the ruling nobility proved incapable of governing Japan and its provinces. By the year 1000, the government could no longer issue money, and money gradually disappeared. Instead of a fully-fledged money circulation system, rice was the primary unit of exchange. The novels of the period implicitly illustrate the lack of a stable medium of exchange. For example, messengers were rewarded with useful objects, such as an old silk kimono, and were not paid a fee.

**Question 0**

Which crop was the main source of income in the Heian period?

**Question 1**

What was the name of the beneficiaries of the Heian culture?

**Question 2**

Around what year did the currency gradually disappear?

**Question 3**

Which crops became the primary exchange unit?

**Question 4**

What was the brief period of peace?

**Question 5**

How was Japan strengthened during the Heian period?

**Question 6**

What could the average person avoid by buying rice fields?

**Question 7**

Who made sure that the provinces were governed?

**Question 8**

Who was paid the fees for their services?

**Text number 22**

The rulers of Fujiwara did not maintain adequate police forces, leaving the bandits free to prey on passengers. This is implicitly illustrated in the novels by the horror that night travel inspired in the protagonists. The Shōen system enabled the aristocratic elite to accumulate wealth; the economic surplus can be linked to the cultural development and 'practice of art' of the Heian period. The great Buddhist temples of Heian-kyō and Nara also benefited from the shōen system. The establishment of branches in rural areas and the integration of some Shinto shrines into these temple networks reflect a greater 'organisational dynamism'.

**Question 0**

Which Buddhist temples in which two cities used the shoen system?

**Question 1**

Why were passengers often robbed during Fujiwara's reign?

**Question 2**

The integration of Shinto shrines into government sectors reflected a bigger what?

**Question 3**

Who has always maintained an adequate police force?

**Question 4**

What system prevented the aristocrats from accumulating too much wealth?

**Question 5**

What was included in Shinto shrines?

**Question 6**

What kept passengers safe during the Heian period?

**Text number 23**

Total War: Shogun 2 features the Rise of the Samurai expansion pack as a downloadable campaign. It allows players to create their own version of the Heian-era Gempei War. Players can choose one of the most powerful clans in Japan at the time, the Taira, Minamoto or Fujiwara clans, each with two branches, for a total of six clans to play. The expansion pack includes a variety of land units, ships and buildings, and can also be played in multiplayer modes.

**Question 0**

Which Total War game has an expansion set in the Heian period?

**Question 1**

Which families are playable characters in Total War: Shogun 2?

**Question 2**

Total War: Shogun 2's Rise of the Samurai expansion depicts what Heian-era war?

**Question 3**

Which of the popular games of the Heian period had an expanson pack?

**Question 4**

Which part of the game has no multiplayer mode?

**Question 5**

Which three families are included in the expanson package?

**Document number 257**

**Text number 0**

The Origin of Species, published on 24 November 1859, is Charles Darwin's scientific work, considered the foundation of evolutionary biology. In it, Darwin presented the scientific theory that populations evolve over generations through natural selection. It presented evidence that the diversity of life arose through common descent in a branching evolutionary model. Darwin included evidence he had gathered on his expedition to Beagle in the 1830s, as well as his later research, correspondence and experiments.

**Question 0**

When was Origin of Species published?

**Question 1**

Who wrote the Origin of Species book?

**Question 2**

What part of biology was the origin of species based on?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the expedition on which Charles Darwin discovered some of his evidence?

**Question 4**

How do populations evolve according to Charles Darwin's theory?

**Text number 1**

Various evolutionary ideas had already been proposed to explain new biological discoveries. Such ideas were gaining support among dissident anatomists and the general public, but in the first half of the 19th century the English scientific establishment was closely linked to the Church of England, while science was part of natural theology. Ideas of species mutation were controversial because they contradicted beliefs that species were immutable parts of a designed hierarchy and that humans were unique, unrelated to other animals. The political and theological implications were hotly debated, but the scientific mainstream did not accept transmutation.

**Question 0**

Which group of scientists started to support evolutionary thinking?

**Question 1**

What powerful religious institution was a major part of scientific research in the 19th century?

**Question 2**

What was the general opinion on species conversion in the 19th century?

**Question 3**

How did most of science in the 19th century see man in relation to animals?

**Question 4**

Which theology did science fall under in the 19th century?

**Text number 2**

The book is written for non-expert readers and attracted widespread interest after its publication. As a respected scientist, Darwin's findings were taken seriously and the evidence he presented stimulated scientific, philosophical and religious debate. The debate on the book contributed to the influence of T. H. Huxley and his X-club members' campaign to secularise science by promoting scientific naturalism. Within two decades, there was a broad scientific consensus that evolution, in which common descent branches off, had occurred, but scientists were slow to give natural selection the meaning Darwin saw fit. During the "eclipse" of Darwinism from the 1880s to the 1930s, various other mechanisms of evolution gained more recognition. As modern evolutionary synthesis developed in the 1930s and 1940s, Darwin's concept of evolutionary adaptation through natural selection became a central concept in modern evolutionary theory and has now become a unifying concept in the life sciences.

**Question 0**

For which population was Darwin's book written?

**Question 1**

Who tried to secularise science during the debate on Darwin's book?

**Question 2**

What did T.H. Huxley contribute?

**Question 3**

What was the name given to the growing shift in opinion on evolution?

**Question 4**

When did Darwin's concept of evolution become a widely credible and central part of modern evolutionary theory?

**Text number 3**

In later editions of the book, Darwin traced evolutionary ideas back to Aristotle; he quotes a text in which Aristotle summarises the ideas of the earlier Greek philosopher Empedocles. Early Christian church fathers and medieval European scholars interpreted Genesis' creation account as an allegorical rather than a literal historical narrative; organisms were described in terms of their mythological and heraldic significance and physical form. Nature was widely believed to be unstable and capricious, giving birth to monsters out of interspecies alliances and spontaneously generating life.

**Question 0**

On which ancient philosopher did Darwin base some of his ideas about evolution?

**Question 1**

Whose ideas did Aristotle summarise in the work Darwin studied?

**Question 2**

How did medieval scholars view the Genesis creation story?

**Question 3**

What kind of births do Christian churchmen think took place in nature?

**Text number 4**

The Protestant Reformation inspired a literal interpretation of the Bible, and its concepts of creation were at odds with the results of emerging science, which sought explanations consistent with the mechanistic philosophy of René Descartes and the empiricism of the Baconian method. After the turmoil of the English Civil War, the Royal Society wanted to show that science did not threaten religious and political stability. John Ray developed an influential rational-order natural ontology; in his taxonomy, species were static and fixed, their adaptation and complexity were designed by God, and varieties showed little variation due to local conditions. By God's benevolent design, carnivores caused a mercifully quick death, but the suffering caused by parasitic birds was a perplexing problem. Carl Linnaeus's biological classification, introduced in 1735, also considered species to be fixed by divine design. In 1766, Georges Buffon suggested that some similar species, such as horses and donkeys or lions, tigers and leopards, might be descended from a common ancestor. Ussher's 1650s chronology had put the time of creation at 4004 BC, but by the 1780s geologists assumed the world was much older. Wernerians thought the strata were those of shrinking seas, but James Hutton proposed a self-sustaining infinite cycle, anticipating uniformitarianism.

**Question 0**

Which group wanted to allay fears that science was a threat to religious stability?

**Question 1**

According to whose theory are species immutable and designed by God?

**Question 2**

Who created the biological classification in 1735?

**Question 3**

According to Ussher's chronology, when did creation begin?

**Question 4**

Who suggested that life is a self-sustaining, endless cycle?

**Text number 5**

Charles Darwin's grandfather Erasmus Darwin proposed the hypothesis of species mutation in the 1790s, and Jean-Baptiste Lamarck published a more advanced theory in 1809. Both thought that spontaneous generation gave rise to simple life forms that gradually evolved into more complex ones, adapting to their environment by inheriting changes in adults caused by use or disuse. This process was later called Lamarckism. Lamarck thought that there was an inherent progressive tendency that drove organisms steadily towards greater complexity as parallel but distinct lineages without extinction. Geoffroy argued that embryonic development repeated the deformations of organisms in past ages, when the environment influenced the embryos, and that the structures of animals were determined by a fixed plan, as shown by homologues. Georges Cuvier strongly disputed such ideas, arguing that unrelated, fixed species showed similarities that reflected a design based on functional needs. His palaeontological work in the 1790s had demonstrated the reality of extinction, which he explained by local catastrophes followed by the repopulation of other species in the areas concerned.

**Question 0**

What was the name of Charles Darwin's grandfather?

**Question 1**

Which theory did Erasmus Darwin outline in the 1790s?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the scientist who developed and published a more complex version of Erasmus Darwin's theory in 1809?

**Question 3**

What is the process of human adaptation to the environment and inheritance through changes caused by use or disuse called?

**Question 4**

Whose palaeontological work in the 1790s confirmed the reality of extinction?

**Text number 6**

In Britain, William Paley's natural theology held adaptation to be evidence of the Creator's beneficent "design" through natural laws. All the natural scientists at the two English universities (Oxford and Cambridge) were priests of the Church of England, and science became a search for these laws. Geologists adapted catastrophism to show that new fixed species adapted to a changed environment are repeatedly destroyed and created worldwide, and initially identified the latest catastrophe as the biblical flood. Lamarck and Geoffroy influenced some anatomists, such as Robert Grant, but most naturalists regarded their ideas about transmutation as a threat to the divinely ordained social order.

**Question 0**

In whose work was adaptation seen as evidence of God's design?

**Question 1**

What was the name of the book by William Paley in which he claimed that divine design was useful?

**Question 2**

Which religion were all the natural scientists working in two English universities?

**Question 3**

How did most naturalists view the concept of species conversion?

**Question 4**

How did geologists explain the emergence of new species according to their belief in divine creation?

**Text number 7**

Darwin went to Edinburgh University in 1825 to study medicine. In his second year of study, he abandoned his medical studies for natural history and spent four months assisting Robert Grant in his studies of marine invertebrates. Grant revealed his enthusiasm for the mutation of species, but Darwin rejected it. From 1827 at Cambridge University, Darwin studied natural science as a theology of nature with the botanist John Stevens Henslow and read Paley, John Herschel and Alexander von Humboldt. Fuelled by his interest in science, he studied catastrophic geology with Adam Sedgwick.

**Question 0**

When did Darwin start his university studies?

**Question 1**

Which university did Darwin study at?

**Question 2**

What did Darwin originally study at university?

**Question 3**

Who did Darwin help to study marine invertebrates?

**Question 4**

With whom did Darwin study catastrophe geology?

**Text number 8**

In December 1831, he joined the Beagle expedition as a naturalist and geologist. He read Charles Lyell's Principles of Geology and on his first stop at St Jago discovered Lyell's uniformitarianism as the key to the geological history of the landscape. Darwin found fossils that resembled giant armadillos and noted down the geographical distribution of modern species in the hope of finding their 'centre of creation'. The three Fygian missionaries returned to Tierra del Fuego by the expedition were friendly and civilised, but Darwin found their relatives on the island to be 'miserable, degraded savages' and no longer saw the gap between humans and animals as insurmountable. When Beagle approached England in 1836, he noted that species might not be permanent.

**Question 0**

Which expedition did Darwin join in 1831?

**Question 1**

Who wrote Geology Basics?

**Question 2**

Where was the Beagle expedition's first stop?

**Question 3**

What did some of the fossils Darwin found on St Jago resemble?

**Question 4**

What made Darwin change his mind about the insurmountable divide between animals and humans?

**Text number 9**

Richard Owen showed that the fossils of extinct species Darwin found in South America were related to species living on the same continent. In March 1837, ornithologist John Gould reported that Darwin's rhea was a separate species from the rhea described earlier (although their ranges overlapped), that the mottled birds collected from the Galápagos Islands represented three separate species, each specific to a particular island, and that several separate birds from those islands were all classified as finches. Darwin began to consider in several notebooks the possibility of 'one species becoming another' to explain these observations, and around July he outlined the genealogical branching of a single evolutionary tree, rejecting Lamarck's notion of independent lineages progressing to higher forms. Darwin unconventionally posed questions to pigeon fanciers, zoologists and established scientists alike. At the zoo, he saw a monkey for the first time and was deeply impressed by how human the orangutan seemed.

**Question 0**

Who proved that extinct South American fossils were related to living species?

**Question 1**

What did John Gould announce in 1837?

**Question 2**

How many species of mottled birds have been recorded on the Galapagos Islands?

**Question 3**

What kind of scientist was John Gould?

**Question 4**

Which animal did Darwin see in the zoo that made him think about evolution?

**Text number 10**

In late September 1838, he began reading Thomas Malthus's An Essay on the Principle of Population and its statistical argument that human populations multiply beyond their means and struggle to survive if left unchecked. Darwin linked this to the struggle for survival of wild animals and botanist de Candole's 'species war' in plants; he immediately imagined a 'force like a hundred thousand wedges' pushing well-adapted variations into 'gaps in nature's economy', so that the survivors would pass on their form and abilities and the unfavourable variations would be destroyed. By December 1838, he had discovered that there is a similarity between the breeders who select the traits and Malthusian nature, which selects from among the variations produced by 'chance', so that 'every part of the newly acquired structure is perfectly practical and perfected'.

**Question 0**

What book did Darwin start reading in 1838?

**Question 1**

What would happen to human populations if they were not restricted, according to Thomas Malthus' book theory?

**Question 2**

What species did Darwin compare to the human struggle for survival?

**Question 3**

What concept did de Candolle consider when studying plants?

**Text number 11**

Darwin continued his research and thoroughly revised his theory while he concentrated on his main work, the publication of the scientific results of the Beagle voyage. He wrote to Lyell in January 1842 with his initial thoughts, and in June he produced a 35-page 'pencil sketch' of his theory. In January 1844, Darwin began corresponding with botanist Joseph Dalton Hooker about his theory, and by July he had completed his 'outline' in a 230-page 'essay', which he intended to expand with his research and publish if he died prematurely.

**Question 0**

What was the title of a 35-page paper on Darwin's theory?

**Question 1**

With which botanist did Darwin start corresponding with about his theories?

**Question 2**

How many pages had Darwin's draft grown in 1844?

**Question 3**

On what data was Darwin's essay based?

**Question 4**

To whom did Darwin write his ideas in 1842?

**Text number 12**

In November 1844, an anonymous scientific popular work by the Scottish journalist Robert Chambers, Vestiges of the Natural History of Creation, increased public interest in the concept of species mutation. Vestiges used evidence from fossils and embryology to support the claim that living things had evolved over time from simple to more complex. However, it proposed linear progression rather than the theory of branching common descent that underpinned Darwin's work, and ignored adaptation. Darwin read it soon after publication and despised its amateurish geology and zoology, but he carefully revised his own arguments after leading scientists such as Adam Sedgwick attacked its morality and scientific errors. Vestiges had a major impact on public opinion, and the heated debate helped pave the way for acceptance of a more scientifically advanced Origin by moving evolutionary speculation into the mainstream. Although few natural scientists were willing to consider transmutation, Herbert Spencer became an active proponent of Lamarckianism and progressivism in the 1850s.

**Question 0**

What was the title of the anonymously published science book?

**Question 1**

What was the suggested way forward for Vestiges of the Natural History of Creation?

**Question 2**

Who wrote Vestiges of the Natural History of Creation?

**Question 3**

What evidence was used to support Vestiges of the Natural History of Creation?

**Question 4**

Which scientist advocated Lamarckism in the 1850s?

**Text number 13**

Darwin's studies of the chimpanzee convinced him that variation arose continuously and not just in response to changing circumstances. In 1854, he completed the final part of his Beagle Island paper and began working full-time on evolution. His thinking shifted from a view that species formed only in isolated populations, such as islands, to an emphasis on speciation without isolation; in other words, he saw increasing specialisation within large stable populations as constantly exploiting new ecological niches. He conducted empirical research focusing on the difficulties associated with his theory. He studied the evolutionary and anatomical differences between the various breeds of domestic animals, was actively involved in the breeding of pigeons and experimented (with the help of his son Francis) with ways in which plant seeds and animals could spread across oceans to colonise remote islands. By 1856, his theory was much more developed and supported by a wealth of evidence.

**Question 0**

What creatures did Darwin study that led him to believe that variations are constantly arising?

**Question 1**

In what year did Darwin start working on his theory of evolution full-time?

**Question 2**

Which bird species was Darwin most interested in studying?

**Question 3**

By what year had Darwin's theory become more complex and supported by a large body of evidence?

**Question 4**

What species did Darwin study in terms of dispersal across the oceans>

**Text number 14**

Alfred Russel Wallace's 1855 article on the 'introduction' of species argued that patterns of geographical distribution of living and fossil species could be explained if each new species always arose in the vicinity of an existing, closely related species. Charles Lyell understood the significance of Wallace's article and its possible connection with Darwin's work, even if Darwin did not, and in a letter of 1 and 2 May 1856 Lyell urged Darwin to publish his theory to confirm its primacy. Darwin was conflicted between the desire to present a full and convincing account and the pressure to produce a short article quickly. He met Lyell, and in correspondence with Joseph Dalton Hooker he confirmed that he did not want to subject his ideas to the scrutiny of an editor, as would have been required to publish in an academic journal. On 14 May 1856 he began a 'draft' review, and by July he had decided to produce a complete technical treatise on the species. His theory, including the principle of differentiation, was completed on 5 September 1857, when he sent Asa Gray a short but detailed summary of his ideas.

**Question 0**

When was the "Species Specification" document written?

**Question 1**

Who wrote the "Species Specification" document?

**Question 2**

How did Wallace argue that patterns of species distribution can be explained?

**Question 3**

Which scientist recognised the potential validity and implications of Wallace's article?

**Question 4**

When did Lyell ask Darwin to publish his theory so that it would have priority?

**Text number 15**

Darwin was busily writing his "great book" on Natural Selection when, on 18 June 1858, he received a package from Wallace, who was staying in the Maluku Islands (Ternate and Gilolo). Enclosed were twenty pages describing the mechanism of evolution, a response to Darwin's recent invitation, and a request to forward it to Lyell if Darwin thought it worthwhile. The mechanism was similar to Darwin's own theory. Darwin wrote to Lyell that 'your words have come out with a furious, ... foreseen ...', and he would 'of course write at once and offer to send [it] to any journal of Wallace's choice', adding that 'all my originality, whatever it may be, will be crushed'. Lyell and Hooker agreed that the Linnean Society would present a joint publication combining Wallace's pages with extracts from Darwin's 1844 essay and his 1857 letter to Gray. On 1 July 1858, Wallace and Darwin's papers "On the Tendency of Species to form Varieties" and "On the Perpetuation of Varieties and Species by Natural Means of Selection" were presented at a meeting of the Linnean Society, but received little response. Although Darwin considered Wallace's idea identical to his concept of natural selection, historians have highlighted differences. Darwin described natural selection as equivalent to artificial selection by animal breeders and emphasised competition between individuals, while Wallace did not compare it to selective breeding and focused on the ecological pressures that kept different varieties adapted to local conditions. Some historians have suggested that Wallace was talking about group selection rather than selection on individual variation.

**Question 0**

Which book was Darwin working on when he received the package from Wallace?

**Question 1**

What was in the packages Darwin received from Wallace?

**Question 2**

Who wrote the article On the Tendency of Species to form Varieties?

**Question 3**

What, in the view of some historians, distinguished Wallace's view of natural selection from Darwin's?

**Text number 16**

After the meeting, Darwin decided to write a "summary of all my work". He started work on 20 July 1858, while on holiday in Sandown, and wrote part of it from memory. Lyell discussed the arrangements with the publisher John Murray III of John Murray's publishing house, who immediately responded to Darwin's letter of 31 March 1859 by agreeing to publish the book without even seeing the manuscript and offering Darwin 2⁄3 per cent of the proceeds (Murray eventually paid Darwin £180 for the first edition, and by the time of Darwin's death in 1882 the book was in its sixth edition, for which Darwin received nearly £3,000).

**Question 0**

What did Darwin decide to write in July 1858?

**Question 1**

Which publisher did Lyell persuade to arrange the publication of Darwin's work?

**Question 2**

What did the publisher offer Darwin as payment for the book?

**Question 3**

What edition was the book in when Darwin died?

**Question 4**

How much had Darwin earned from the book when he died?

**Text number 17**

Darwin had originally decided to call his book An abstract of an Essay on the Origin of Species and Varieties Through natural selection, but thanks to Murray's persuasion it was eventually changed to a snappier title, On the Origin of Species, with the addition of the preservation of popular races in the struggle for life through natural selection as the title page. The term 'races' is used here as an alternative to the term 'varieties' and has no modern meaning for human races - the first use of the book refers to 'the various races of cabbage, for example' and continues with a discussion of 'the hereditary varieties or breeds of domestic animals and plants'.

**Question 0**

What was the final title of Darwin's book?

**Question 1**

What name had Darwin wanted to give his book?

**Question 2**

Who convinced Darwin that his book needed a shorter and more convincing title?

**Question 3**

What does the word "races" mean in Darwin's book?

**Question 4**

What is the extended title of the title page of The Origin of Species?

**Text number 18**

By December 1838, Darwin had a theory of basic natural selection "with which to work", but nearly twenty years later, when Wallace's letter arrived on 18 June 1858, Darwin was still not ready to publish his theory. It was long thought that Darwin avoided or delayed publishing his ideas for personal reasons. Reasons have been suggested, including fear of religious persecution or social disgrace if his views were revealed, and concern that he would not upset his clerical naturalist friends or his pious wife Emma. Charles Darwin's illness caused repeated delays. His article on Glen Roy had proved embarrassingly wrong, and he may have wanted to be sure he was right. David Quammen has suggested that all these factors may have played a part, pointing out that Darwin had a large book production and a busy family life at the time.

**Question 0**

By what year did Darwin have the basic premises of his theory of natural selection?

**Question 1**

Why could Darwin have delayed the publication of his theory of evolution for more than 20 years?

**Question 2**

Which paper written by Darwin was incorrect?

**Question 3**

Who could Darwin have been afraid of upsetting by publishing his work?

**Text number 19**

In a more recent study, science historian John van Wyhe has argued that the idea of Darwin delaying publication dates back to the 1940s, and that Darwin's contemporaries considered the time taken by Darwin to be reasonable. Darwin always finished one book before starting another. During his research, he told many people about his interest in transmutation without causing disapproval. He was determined to publish it, but it was not until September 1854 that he was able to work on it full time. His estimate that it would take five years to write his 'great book' was optimistic.

**Question 0**

What did Darwin's contemporaries think of the long delays in Darwin's publication?

**Question 1**

What was Darwin's process for writing his books?

**Question 2**

What was Darwin's original estimate of the time needed to write the book?

**Question 3**

Which scientist's study claimed that the idea of delaying Darwin's work dates back to the 1940s?

**Text number 20**

On the Origin of Species was first published on Thursday 24 November 1859 at a price of fifteen shillings and a first printing of 1,250 copies. The book was offered to booksellers at Murray's Autumn Sale on Tuesday 22 November, and all available copies were immediately taken up. The total print run was 1,250 copies, but after deducting the presentation and review copies and five copies for Stationers' Hall copyright, the total number of copies sold was around 1,170. Significantly, Mudie's Library took 500 copies, ensuring that the book quickly reached a large number of library subscribers. A second edition of 3,000 copies was quickly published on 7 January 1860, with numerous corrections and a response to religious objections by adding a new epigraph on page ii, a quote from Charles Kingsley and the phrase 'by the Creator' to the final sentence. During Darwin's lifetime, the book went through six editions, with cumulative changes and revisions in response to the objections raised. The third edition, published in 1861, had rewritten or added several sentences and added the preface An Historical Sketch of the Recent Progress of Opinion on the Origin of Species, while the fourth edition, published in 1866, contained further revisions. The fifth edition, published on 10 February 1869, made further changes and for the first time used the term 'survival of the fittest', coined by the philosopher Herbert Spencer in his Principles of Biology (1864).

**Question 0**

How much did the first published copies of On the Origin of Species cost?

**Question 1**

How many copies of On the Origin of Species were produced in the first edition?

**Question 2**

Where was the Birth of Species first offered for sale?

**Question 3**

How many editions of The Origin of Species were made during Darwin's lifetime?

**Question 4**

Which institution bought 500 copies of the book and ensured that a large number of people had access to it?

**Text number 21**

George Jackson Mivart's On the Genesis of Species, published in January 1871, listed detailed arguments against natural selection and claimed that it contained false metaphysics. Darwin made extensive revisions to the sixth edition of Origin (this was the first edition in which he used the word 'evolution', which was commonly associated with embryonic development, although all editions ended with the word 'evolved') and added a new Chapter VII, Miscellaneous Objections, to counter Mivart's claims.

**Question 0**

What was argued against Natural Selection in the Origin of Species?

**Question 1**

Who wrote The Origin of Species?

**Question 2**

When did Charles Darwin first use the word "evolution" in The Origin of Species?

**Question 3**

What did Charles Darwin do to counter Mivart's claims?

**Question 4**

What was the name of Chapter VII?

**Text number 22**

In the United States, botanist Asa Gray, Darwin's American colleague, was negotiating with a Boston publisher to publish the American version, but learned that two New York publishers were already planning to take advantage of international copyright interference to reprint Origin. Darwin was delighted with the book's popularity and asked Gray to keep all the profits. Gray managed to negotiate a 5% royalty with Appleton's of New York, which got its edition out in mid-January 1860, and the other two publishers withdrew. In a letter dated May, Darwin stated that the print run was 2 500 copies, but it is unclear whether this was only the first edition, as there were four editions that year.

**Question 0**

Why couldn't Asa Gray have used a Boston publisher for the American version of the genre's genesis?

**Question 1**

How much royalties was Gray able to negotiate with a New York publisher for On the Origin of Species?

**Question 2**

When was the first American edition of On the Origin of Species published?

**Question 3**

What did Darwin decide to do with the profits from the American version of On the Origin of Species?

**Question 4**

What was the number of copies of The Origin of Species mentioned by Darwin?

**Text number 23**

The book was widely translated during Darwin's lifetime, but there were problems translating the concepts and metaphors, and some translations had their own agenda. Darwin distributed demonstration copies in France and Germany in the hope that suitable applicants would come forward, as the translators themselves were expected to make arrangements with the local publisher. He welcomed the distinguished senior naturalist and geologist Heinrich Georg Bronn, but the German translation, published in 1860, incorporated Bronn's own ideas and added controversial topics that Darwin had deliberately omitted. Bronn translated the words 'favoured races' as 'perfected races' and added inscriptions on the origin of life and the religious implications of the last chapter, which were partly inspired by Bronn's Naturphilosophie. In 1862, Bronn produced a second edition based on the third English edition and the additions suggested by Darwin, but then died of a heart attack. Darwin corresponded closely with Julius Victor Carus, who published an improved translation in 1867. Darwin's attempts to find a translator in France failed, and Clémence Royer's translation, published in 1862, included an introduction praising Darwin's ideas as an alternative to religious revelation and promoting ideas anticipating social Darwinism and eugenics, as well as numerous explanatory notes in which he provided his own answers to Darwin's doubts. Darwin corresponded with Royer on the second edition published in 1866 and the third edition published in 1870, but Darwin had difficulty in persuading Royer to remove his remarks, and these editions caused him problems. He was unhappy until Edmond Barbier's translation was published in 1876. A Dutch translation by Tiberius Cornelis Winkler was published in 1860. By 1864, additional editions had appeared in Italian and Russian. During Darwin's lifetime, Origin was published in Swedish in 1871, Danish in 1872, Polish in 1873, Hungarian from 1873 to 1874, Spanish in 1877 and Serbian in 1878. By 1977, it had appeared in a further 18 languages.

**Question 0**

Who was the German translator Darwin welcomed to the Origin of Species?

**Question 1**

What did Bronn do in his translation that went completely against the wishes expressed by Darwin in The Origin of Species?

**Question 2**

What name did Bronn change "Favoured Races" to in the translation of On the Origin of Species?

**Question 3**

Who published an improved translation of On the Origin of Species in 1867?

**Question 4**

Why was Darwin unhappy with the first French translation of On the Origin of Species?

**Text number 24**

On page ii are quotes from William Whewell and Francis Bacon on the theology of natural law, which reconciles science and religion in accordance with Isaac Newton's belief in a rational God who created a law-abiding cosmos. In the second edition, Darwin added an essay by Joseph Butler in which he affirmed that God can work through scientific laws and miracles, thus paying tribute to the religious concerns of his elders. The introduction acknowledges Darwin as a natural scientist and writer and then refers to a letter from John Herschel in which he suggested that the origin of species 'would prove to be a natural process, contrary to a miraculous process':

**Question 0**

What was Isaac Newton's belief about God in the theory of natural law?

**Question 1**

Whose epigraph did Darwin add to the Origin of Species, in which he harmonised God, science and miracles?

**Question 2**

Whose letter is referred to in the introduction to The Origin of Species?

**Question 3**

In which edition of On the Origin of Species was Joseph Butler's epigraph added?

**Text number 25**

Chapter I deals with livestock breeding and plant breeding since ancient Egypt. Darwin discusses current opinions on the origin of cultivated breeds and argues that many of them were produced from common ancestors by selective breeding. As an example of artificial selection, he describes the breeding of pigeons, noting that "the diversity of races is something astonishing", even though they all descend from a single species of stone pigeon. Darwin saw two kinds of variation: (1) rare sudden changes, which he called "sporting species" or "monsters" (example: ancon pigeons with short legs), and (2) ubiquitous minor differences (example: pigeons with slightly shorter or longer beaks). Breeders can take advantage of both genetic variations. For Darwin, however, small changes were the most important for evolution.

**Question 0**

How far back does the first chapter of The Origin of Species go in its discussion of animal and plant species?

**Question 1**

What does Darwin use to illustrate the effects of artificial selection?

**Question 2**

Where does Darwin claim that all pigeons are descended from?

**Question 3**

Which evolutionary changes were most important to Darwin?

**Text number 26**

In Chapter II, Darwin clarifies that the distinction between species and varieties is arbitrary, and experts disagree and change their decisions when new forms are discovered. He concludes that "a well-marked variety may legitimately be called an incipient species" and that "species are only strongly marked and persistent varieties". He argues that variation is ubiquitous in nature. Historians have noted that naturalists had long been aware that individuals of species differed from one another, but had generally regarded such variations as limited and insignificant deviations from the archetype of each species, which was the fixed ideal in the mind of God. Darwin and Wallace made variation between individuals of the same species central to understanding nature.

**Question 0**

What does Darwin believe about the differences between species and varieties?

**Question 1**

What does Darwin theorise about species diversity?

**Question 2**

What did Darwin and Wallace consider essential to understanding nature?

**Question 3**

What did Darwin say a "well-marked variety" could be called?

**Question 4**

What did historians say that naturalists in general thought about the differences in species variation?

**Text number 27**

He points out that both A. P. de Candolle and Charles Lyell had noted that all organisms are subject to intense competition. Darwin points out that he used the phrase 'struggle for existence' 'in a broad and metaphorical sense, including the dependence of one creature on another'; he gives examples ranging from plants struggling against drought to plants competing for birds to eat their fruit and disperse their seeds. Describing the struggle caused by population growth, he says: "It is Malthus' doctrine applied with manifold force to the whole animal and vegetable kingdom." He discusses barriers to growth, such as complex ecological interdependencies, and notes that competition is fiercest between closely related forms "which occupy almost the same place in the economy of nature".

**Question 0**

How does the struggle for population described by Darwin compare?

**Question 1**

In what context does Darwin use the expression "struggle for existence"?

**Question 2**

What was Charles Lyell's idea of what organisms are exposed to in their struggle for survival?

**Question 3**

When is competition most intense in nature?

**Question 4**

Why is there so much competition between related species?

**Text number 28**

Chapter IV describes in detail natural selection in the context of "the infinitely complex and closely interrelated relationships of all organic beings ... and their physical living conditions". Darwin takes the example of the Earth, where changing conditions led to the extinction of some species, the migration of others to the land, and where, given suitable variations, the offspring of some species adapted to the new conditions. He points out that artificial selection by animal breeders often led to sharp differences between races, and suggests that natural selection could do the same, saying:

**Question 0**

What did Darwin say is often caused by artificial selection by animal breeders?

**Question 1**

What did Darwin say could happen somewhere if circumstances change?

**Question 2**

What can happen if species move to a new location?

**Text number 29**

Darwin proposes sexual selection, based on competition between males for mates, to explain sexually dimorphic traits such as the lion's mane hair, deer antlers, peacock tail, bird song and the bright plumage of some male birds. He analysed sexual selection in greater depth in The Descent of Man, and Selection in Relation to Sex (1871). Natural selection was expected to work very slowly in the formation of new species, but given the efficiency of artificial selection, he 'saw no limit to the amount of change, to the beauty and infinite complexity of the intercourse of all organic beings with their physical conditions of life, which the power of natural selection can bring about in the course of long time'. He uses a tree diagram and calculations to show the "divergence of character" from original species to new species and genera. He describes the extinction of branches through extinction, while new branches are formed 'on the great tree of life ... with its ever-branching and beautiful branches'.

**Question 0**

What does Darwin think explains different features, such as the antlers of deer and the bright feathers of certain types of birds?

**Question 1**

Which of Darwin's literary works contains more in-depth information on sexual selection?

**Question 2**

What did Darwin expect to see between species through artificial selection?

**Question 3**

What did Darwin use to illustrate how native species change and adapt into new species?

**Text number 30**

In Darwin's time, there was no agreed model of heredity; in chapter one, Darwin admitted: "The laws governing heredity are quite unknown." He accepted a version of the inheritance of acquired characteristics (which after Darwin's death came to be called Lamarckism), and Chapter V deals with what he called the effects of use and disuse; he wrote that he was of the opinion that "there can be no doubt that in our domestic animals use strengthens and enlarges certain parts and disuse diminishes them, and that such changes are inherited", and that this is also true in nature. Darwin noted that some of the changes that generally result from use and disuse, such as the loss of wings in some island insects, may be due to natural selection. In later editions of Origin, Darwin expanded the importance of the inheritance of acquired characteristics. Darwin also acknowledged his ignorance of the source of heritable changes, but speculated that they might be due to environmental factors. One thing was clear, however: whatever the exact nature and causes of new variations, Darwin knew from observation and experimentation that breeders could select for such variations and produce huge differences over the course of many generations of selection. The observation that selection works in domestic animals is not destroyed by a failure to understand the underlying hereditary mechanism.

**Question 0**

What is the theory based on acquired characteristics within a species?

**Question 1**

What did Darwin learn about the characteristics of domestic animals?

**Question 2**

How did Darwin think that heritable variations could arise in a species?

**Question 3**

What did Darwin admit about acquired characteristics in the first chapter of The Origin of Species?

**Question 4**

What did Darwin learn about variation by observing breeders?

**Text number 31**

Darwin went into more detail in his 1868 book The Variation of Animals and Plants under Domestication, in which he tried to explain heredity through his pangenesis hypothesis. Although Darwin had privately questioned mixed inheritance, he struggled with the theoretical difficulty that new individual variations would tend to mix into the population. However, heritable variation was evident, and Darwin's concept of the effect of selection on a population with many small variations was valid. It was only with the advent of modern evolutionary synthesis in the 1930s and 1940s that the heritability model became fully integrated with the variation model. This modern evolutionary synthesis was called neo-Darwinian evolution because it combined Charles Darwin's theories of evolution with Gregor Mendel's theories of heredity.

**Question 0**

When did Charles Darwin publish The Variation of Animals and Plants under Domestication?

**Question 1**

What was the hypothesis used to explain heredity?

**Question 2**

Even if Darwin was not sure about mixing inherited traits, what was his view on exploiting inherited variation?

**Question 3**

When did the heritability model start to be combined with the variation model?

**Question 4**

What was the name of the modern evolutionary synthesis?

**Text number 32**

Chapter VI begins by saying that the next three chapters will discuss possible objections to the theory, the first of which is that there are often no intermediate forms between closely related species, although the theory suggests that such forms must have existed. As Darwin said, "In the first place, if species have descended from other species in imperceptibly subtle ways, why do we not see innumerable transitional forms everywhere?" Why is not all of nature in disarray, instead of species, as we see them, well defined?" Darwin attributed this to competition between different forms, combined with the low number of individuals of intermediate forms, which often leads to the extinction of such forms. This difficulty can be referred to as the absence or rarity of transitional species in the habitat space.

**Question 0**

What is one possible objection to the theory of integrated variation?

**Question 1**

Why did Darwin wonder why all of nature is not chaotic and random?

**Question 2**

How did Darwin finally conclude that nature is not a chaos of variation?

**Text number 33**

His answer was that in many cases animals have intermediate structures that are functional. He presented flying squirrels and flying lemurs as examples of how bats may have evolved from flightless ancestors. He discussed simple eyes in invertebrates, with only a pigment-coated optic nerve, as examples of how the vertebrate eye might have evolved. Darwin concludes: "If it could be shown that there is any complex organ which could not have been formed by numerous, successive, minute changes, my theory would be completely destroyed." But I can find no such case."

**Question 0**

What flying animals did Darwin think could have evolved from bats?

**Question 1**

What example did Darwin give of the evolution of the eye?

**Question 2**

How did Darwin justify that his theory did not break down?

**Text number 34**

Chapter VII (first edition) deals with the development of instincts. As examples, he cites two of his experimental studies: the slave ants and the construction of hexagonal cells in honeybees. Darwin observed that some species of slave ants were more dependent on slaves than others, and he found that many species of ants collected and stored the young of other species for food. He reasoned that species that are extremely dependent on slave labourers had evolved in stages. He suggested that hexagonal honeycomb bees evolved gradually from round honeycomb bees under the pressure of natural selection to conserve wax. Darwin concluded:

**Question 0**

How, according to Darwin's theory, have instincts evolved in enslaving ants?

**Question 1**

How does Darwin's theory suggest that instincts have evolved in bees?

**Question 2**

What did Darwin notice in particular about slave ants?

**Text number 35**

Chapter VIII discusses the idea that species had special characteristics that prevented crosses from being fertile in order to preserve separately created species. Darwin noted that the difficulty of producing hybrids of related species and the viability and fertility of hybrids varied widely, especially between plants, and were by no means constant. Sometimes species that were widely regarded as separate species produced freely fertile hybrids, and in other cases species that were regarded as mere varieties of the same species could be crossed only with difficulty. Darwin concluded, "In conclusion, then, the facts briefly stated in this chapter do not, I think, contradict, but rather support, the view that there is no fundamental difference between species and varieties."

**Question 0**

Why would hybrids have characteristics that prevent them from being fertile?

**Question 1**

What does Darwin think about the production of related species hybrids?

**Question 2**

What conclusion did Darwin come to when he found that some different species could easily create variations, while other species thought to be close had difficulty?

**Text number 36**

In the sixth edition, Darwin added a new Chapter VII (and renumbered the later chapters) in response to criticisms of earlier editions, such as the claim that many features of organisms were not adaptive and could not have arisen by natural selection. He argued that some such traits could be by-products of adaptive changes in other traits and that often traits appeared unadapted because their function was unknown, as demonstrated in his book The Fertilization of Orchids, where he explained how their elaborate structures facilitated pollination by insects. Much of the chapter responds to George Jackson Mivart's criticisms, such as his claim that such features as whale spouts, the two eyes of flatfish on one side and the camouflage of sticklebacks could not have evolved through natural selection because the intermediates would not have been adaptable. Darwin proposed scenarios for the gradual evolution of each trait.

**Question 0**

Why did Darwin introduce a new chapter in the sixth edition of the Origin of Species?

**Question 1**

What was one of the objections Darwin addressed in his new chapter on the Origin of Species?

**Question 2**

Which book by Darwin described a plant whose sophisticated structure helped insects to fertilise?

**Question 3**

Who was the scientist most discussed in the new chapter of On the Origin of Species?

**Question 4**

How did Darwin respond to claims that certain animals could not have evolved by natural selection?

**Text number 37**

Chapter IX discusses the fact that the geological record seems to show that life forms appeared suddenly, without the myriad transitional fossils that are expected to emerge as a result of gradual changes. Darwin cited Charles Lyell's argument in Principles of Geology that the record is extremely imperfect because fossilisation is a very rare event spread over large periods of time; because few areas had been geologically explored, only fragmentary information on geological formations could be obtained, and fossil collections were very incomplete. Evolved local species that have migrated over a wider area appear to be the sudden appearance of a new species. Darwin did not expect to be able to reconstruct evolutionary history, but the continuing discoveries gave him reasonable hope that new discoveries would occasionally reveal transitional patterns. To show that natural selection had been slow, he again referred to Principles of Geology and other observations based on sedimentation and erosion, such as the estimate that the erosion of the Weald had lasted 300 million years. The presence of entire groups of highly evolved organisms in the oldest fossil-bearing strata, now known as the Cambrian explosion, posed a problem. Darwin had no doubt that the earlier seas had been filled with living things, but he found he had no satisfactory explanation for the absence of fossils. Since then, fossil evidence of pre-Cambrian life has been discovered, extending the history of life back billions of years.

**Question 0**

Whose claim was Darwin quoting that the geological record is very incomplete because fossilization is rare?

**Question 1**

Where in Charles Lyell's book does he claim that fossils are too rare to be used as evidence for the sudden origin of life?

**Question 2**

What did Darwin hope to discover as he continued to explore new geological discoveries?

**Question 3**

How long did Darwin estimate the erosion of the Weald to last?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the group of highly evolved organisms found in the fossil record?

**Text number 38**

Chapter X examines whether the fossil record models are better explained by common descent and branching evolution by natural selection than by the individual creation of fixed species. Darwin expected species to change slowly, but not as rapidly - some organisms, such as Lingula, were unchanging from the earliest fossils. The rate of natural selection would depend on environmental variability and change. This distinguished his theory from Lamarck's Laws of Inevitable Progress. It has been argued that this anticipates the punctuated equilibrium hypothesis, but other researchers have preferred to emphasise Darwin's commitment to gradualism. He referred to Richard Owen's observations that the earliest members of the class were a few simple and generalised species with characteristics intermediate between the present forms, followed by increasingly diverse and specialised forms corresponding to the branching of common descent from the ancestor. The extinction of endangered species was consistent with his theory, as related species groups continued to exist until extinction, after which they ceased to exist. Recently extinct species resembled living species more than species from earlier periods, and as he had seen in South America and William Clift in Australia, fossils from recent geological periods resembled species still living in the same area.

**Question 0**

How did Darwin expect species to change and evolve?

**Question 1**

What did Darwin think were the key things needed for species variation to occur?

**Question 2**

Which scientist theorised that the earliest members of the species class were simple and generalised?

**Question 3**

What did Darwin discover about recently extinct species?

**Text number 39**

Chapter XI discusses the evidence from biogeography, starting with the observation that differences in flora and fauna between regions cannot be explained by environmental differences alone; South America, Africa and Australia have similar climatic regions at the same latitudes, but these regions have very different plants and animals. Species found in one region of a continent are more closely related to species found in other regions of the same continent than to species found on other continents. Darwin found that migration barriers played an important role in the differences between species in different regions. The Atlantic and Pacific coastal waters of Central America had almost no species in common, even though the Panama Isthmus was only a few kilometres wide. His explanation was a combination of migration and ancestry with modification. He went on to say, "From this principle of heredity and variation we can understand how it is possible that parts of genera, whole families and even genera are confined to the same regions, as is so generally and notoriously the case." Darwin explained how a volcanic island a few hundred miles from a continent could be colonised by a few species from that continent. These species would change over time, but would still be related to the species on the mainland, and Darwin found that this was a common pattern. Darwin discussed ways in which species could spread across oceans to colonise islands, many of which he had studied experimentally.

**Question 0**

Why couldn't the differences in flora and fauna be explained by differences between regions alone?

**Question 1**

What, in Darwin's view, could explain why different areas can have such different species, even though they are close to each other?

**Question 2**

What was the combination of effects that Darwin considered most important in determining differences in species that evolved separately in similar environments?

**Text number 40**

Darwin discusses morphology, including the importance of homologous structures. He says: "What could be more curious than that the human hand formed for grasping, the mole's hand formed for digging, the horse's foot, the porpoise's paddle and the bat's wing are all built on the same pattern and contain the same bones in the same relative position?"." He points out that animals of the same class often have very similar embryos. Darwin discusses primitive organs, such as the wings of flightless birds and the pelvic and leg bones found in some snakes. He points out that some primitive organs, such as teeth in the humpback whale, occur only at the embryonic stage.

**Question 0**

What theory does Darwin discuss that relates to the meaning of homologous structures?

**Question 1**

What examples does Darwin give of species that have similar basic limb shapes but have very different uses?

**Question 2**

What does Darwin say about the embryos of many different species in the same class?

**Question 3**

What are some examples of primitive organs that Darwin discusses in the chapter?

**Text number 41**

The final chapter reviews the points made in the previous chapters, and Darwin concludes by expressing the hope that his theory might lead to revolutionary changes in many areas of natural history. Although he avoids the controversial subject of human origins in other parts of the book, so as not to prejudice readers against his theory, he ventures here to cautiously suggest that psychology might be put on a new footing and that 'light might be shed on the origin of man'. Darwin concludes with a well-known and much quoted passage:

**Question 0**

What hopes does Darwin have for his theory in the field of natural sciences?

**Question 1**

Why did Darwin avoid the origin of man in most of his book?

**Question 2**

What is Darwin referring to in his hope in the final chapter of The Origin of Species about humans?

**Text number 42**

Darwin had two goals: to show that species had not been created separately, and to show that natural selection had been the main cause of change. He knew that his readers were already familiar with the concept of species mutation from the Vestiges work, and his introduction ridicules that work for not providing a workable mechanism. In the first four chapters, therefore, he argues that natural selection by the struggle for existence is analogous to the selection of variation in domestic animal breeding and that the accumulation of adaptive variation provides a scientifically testable mechanism for evolutionary speciation.

**Question 0**

What were Darwin's two main goals for evolution?

**Question 1**

What did he know that his readers already knew about Vestiges?

**Question 2**

How did Darwin deal with Vestiges in the introduction to the Origin of Species?

**Question 3**

What is Darwin's belief about the accumulation of adaptive variation?

**Text number 43**

Later chapters present evidence that evolution has occurred, and support the idea of branching, adaptive evolution without directly proving that selection is a mechanism. Darwin presents evidence from many disciplines to support his theory, and shows that his theory was able to explain countless observations from many areas of natural history that could not be explained by the alternative view that species were created separately. The structure of Darwin's argument was influenced by John Herschel, whose philosophy of science held that a mechanism can be called a vera causa (true cause) if three things can be shown: its existence in nature, its ability to produce interesting effects, and its ability to explain a wide range of observations.

**Question 0**

What does Darwin do to show that his theory can support many theories that could not be explained by the creation of individual species?

**Question 1**

According to whose scientific philosophy can a mechanism be called a vera causa if three things can be proven true?

**Question 2**

What are the three things that John Herschel says must be proven in order for a mechanism to be called a real cause?

**Text number 44**

Although the book was easy enough to read to sell, its dryness ensured that it was seen as aimed at specialist scientists and could not be dismissed as mere journalism or imaginative fiction. Unlike the still popular Vestiges, it avoided the narrative style of a historical novel and cosmological speculation, although the final sentence clearly referred to cosmic evolution. Darwin had long been familiar with the literary forms and practices of specialised science, and he made effective use of his skills in structuring arguments. David Quammen has described the book as written in everyday language for a wide audience, but noted that Darwin's writing style was uneven: in places he used unwieldy, convoluted sentences, while in other places his writing was beautiful. Quammen advised that later editions were weakened by the fact that Darwin made concessions and added details to show his critics, and recommended the first edition. James T. Costa said that because the book was a summary, written in haste in response to Wallace's essay, it was more accessible than the great book on natural selection that Darwin had worked on, which would have been weighed down by scientific footnotes and much more technical detail. He added that while some parts of Origin are concise, other parts are almost lyrical, and case studies and findings are presented in a narrative style unusual in serious science books, which broadened its audience.

**Question 0**

Which element of On the Origin of Species ensured that scientists would take the book seriously?

**Question 1**

What was avoided in "Origin of Species" to make it serious?

**Question 2**

Why did David Quammen believe that On the Origin of Species was weakened in later editions?

**Question 3**

Why did James T. Costa think that On the Origin of Species was more likely to attract interest than the larger book that Darwin was working on?

**Question 4**

Why did James T. Costa think that a bigger, rejected book would not have been as successful?

**Text number 45**

The book attracted international interest and widespread debate, and there was no sharp line between scientific issues and ideological, social and religious influences. Much of the initial reaction was hostile, but Darwin had to be taken seriously as an important and respected figure in science. There was much less controversy than in the 1844 Vestiges of Creation, which had been rejected by scientists but had led a wide readership to believe that nature and human society were governed by natural laws. The Origin of Species was combined as a book of wide public interest with ideas on social reform. Its proponents took full advantage of the upsurge in the publication of review journals, and it attracted more public attention than almost any other scientific work, although it did not achieve Vestiges' consistent sales. Darwin's book legitimised the scientific debate on evolutionary mechanisms, and the newly introduced term Darwinism was used to cover the whole spectrum of evolutionary thought, not just Darwin's own ideas. By the mid-1870s, evolutionism was on a roll.

**Question 0**

Why is On the Origin of Species likely to generate so much interest and debate?

**Question 1**

Why was the book taken seriously when much of the reaction was hostile?

**Question 2**

What ideology gripped On the Origin of Species when it became a huge success?

**Question 3**

What impact did Darwin's book have on the scientific study of evolution?

**Question 4**

What term was used to describe not only Darwin's theories but the whole spectrum of evolutionary belief after the success of his book?

**Text number 46**

Scientific readers were already aware of claims that species changed through processes governed by natural laws, but Lamarck's transmutation ideas and Vestiges' vague 'law of evolution' had not gained scientific popularity. Darwin presented natural selection as a scientifically testable mechanism, while accepting that other mechanisms, such as the inheritance of acquired characteristics, were possible. His strategy established that evolution by natural laws was worthy of scientific study, and by 1875 most scientists accepted that evolution occurred, but few considered natural selection to be significant. Darwin's scientific method was also disputed, with his supporters favouring the empiricism of John Stuart Mill's A System of Logic, while opponents held to the idealist school of William Whewell's Philosophy of the Inductive Sciences, which allowed research to begin with the intuitive truth that species were fixed objects created by design. Darwin's ideas were supported early on by the observations of field scientists in natural geography and ecology, including Joseph Dalton Hooker in 1860 and Asa Gray in 1862. In 1861, Henry Walter Bates presented a study that explained the mimicry of insects by natural selection. Alfred Russel Wallace discussed his findings from the Malay Archipelago, including an article published in 1864 that offered an evolutionary explanation for Wallace's lineage.

**Question 0**

What was the general reaction of scientific readers to Lamarck's written work?

**Question 1**

What was the likely reason why Darwin's ideas were more readily accepted than Lamarck's?

**Question 2**

Which school of thought were the opponents of Darwin's method?

**Question 3**

Where did Darwin's findings get early support?

**Question 4**

Who has written a study that supports mimicking insects through natural selection?

**Text number 47**

Evolution had less obvious applications to anatomy and morphology, and initially had little impact on the studies of anatomist Thomas Henry Huxley. Nevertheless, Huxley strongly supported Darwin on evolution; however, he insisted on experiments to show whether natural selection could produce new species and questioned whether Darwin's gradualism without sudden leaps was sufficient to cause speciation. Huxley wanted science to be secular without religious interference, and in an article published in the Westminster Review in April 1860 he advocated scientific naturalism over scientific theology. He praises Darwin for 'extending the dominion of science into regions of thought where it has scarcely penetrated' and coined the term 'Darwinism' as part of his efforts to secularise and professionalise science. Huxley became influential and founded the X Club, which used the magazine Nature to promote evolution and naturalism and shaped much of late Victorian science. Later, the German morphologist Ernst Haeckel convinced Huxley that comparative anatomy and palaeontology could be used to reconstruct evolutionary genealogies.

**Question 0**

Who supported Darwin's theories of evolution, even though they had little impact on his own research?

**Question 1**

What did Huxley contribute in his 1860 article in the Westminster Review?

**Question 2**

Why did Huxley invent the name "Darwinism"?

**Question 3**

What convinced morphologist Ernst Haeckel of Huxley's comparative anatomy and palaeontology?

**Text number 48**

Britain's leading naturalist was the anatomist Richard Owen, an idealist who had moved in the 1850s to the view that the history of life was the gradual realisation of a divine plan. Owen's review of Origin, published in the Edinburgh Review in April 1860, bitterly attacked Huxley, Hooker and Darwin, but also accepted a form of evolution as a teleological plan in a continuous 'destined coming' in which new species would arise through natural generation. Among those who rejected natural selection but supported 'birth by birth' was the Duke of Argyll, who explained the beauty of feather coverings by design. Since 1858, Huxley had stressed the anatomical similarities between apes and humans, and challenged Owen's view that man was a separate subclass. Their disagreement over the origin of man was highlighted at the meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science, where the legendary Oxford Debate on Evolution took place in 1860. In a heated public debate that lasted two years, satirised by Charles Kingsley as the 'Great Hippocampus Question' and parodied by Huxley in The Water-Babies as the 'great hippopotamus test', Huxley showed that Owen was wrong to claim that the monkey brain lacked a structure that is also found in the human brain. Others, such as Charles Lyell and Alfred Russel Wallace, argued that humans shared a common ancestor with apes, but that higher mental faculties could not have evolved through a purely material process. Darwin published his own explanation in Descent of Man (1871).

**Question 0**

Who was Britain's leading natural scientist?

**Question 1**

How did Owen respond in his review of On the Origin of Species?

**Question 2**

What was Huxley and Owen's debate about humans and apes?

**Question 3**

What was the main debate at the 1860 meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science?

**Question 4**

When did Darwin publish his explanation of the evolution of man and apes?

**Text number 49**

German biologists, accustomed to morphological homology from Goethe's The Metamorphosis of Plants and a long tradition of comparative anatomy, accepted the idea of evolution, though not natural selection. Bronn's changes to the German translation increased the scepticism of conservatives but excited political radicals. Ernst Haeckel was particularly enthusiastic, seeking to synthesise Darwin's ideas with those of Lamarck and Goethe, while reflecting the spirit of the Naturphilosophers. Huxley joined their ambitious programme to reconstruct the evolutionary history of life, and the findings of palaeontology supported this. Haeckel made extensive use of embryology in his theory of recapitulation, which embodies a gradual, almost linear model of evolution. Darwin was wary of such a history, and had already noted that von Baer's laws of embryology supported his idea of complex branching.

**Question 0**

While German biologists accepted the ideas of evolution, what did they not accept?

**Question 1**

What led to the doubts of conservative scientists when Bronn's German translation of On the Origin of Species was published?

**Question 2**

Which group of people were inspired by the German translation of On the Origin of Species?

**Question 3**

Why were political radicals like Ernst Haeckel so interested in the origin of species?

**Text number 50**

French-speaking natural scientists in several countries appreciated the much-changed French translation by Clémence Royer, but Darwin's ideas had little impact in France, where all pro-evolutionary scientists opted for a kind of Lamarckism. The general phenomenon of evolution had been accepted by Russian intellectuals for several years before Darwin's theory was published, and was quickly taken on board by scientists, even if Malthusian aspects were considered relatively unimportant. Karl Marx and Leo Tolstoy criticised the political economy of struggle as a British stereotype, and Levin, the character in his novel Anna Karenina, was sharply critical of the morality of Darwin's views.

**Question 0**

What was the general reaction to Darwin's ideas in France?

**Question 1**

Which people of which country had adopted the idea of evolution years before Darwin published his theory?

**Question 2**

What aspects of evolutionary theory were considered irrelevant by many readers of Darwin's work?

**Question 3**

Which author expressed his dissatisfaction with the morality of Darwin's views in his novel?

**Text number 51**

Natural selection as a central mechanism of evolution was seriously challenged scientifically, with Karl von Nägeli, among others, insisting that selection cannot evolve trivial traits that have no adaptive advantage. Darwin conceded that these could be associated with adaptive traits. His assessment that the age of the Earth allowed for gradual evolution was disputed by William Thomson (later to be given the title Lord Kelvin), who calculated that the Earth had cooled in less than 100 million years. Darwin accepted mixed inheritance, but Fleeming Jenkin calculated that because it mixed traits, natural selection could not accumulate useful traits. Darwin attempted to answer these objections in the fifth edition. Mivart advocated directed evolution and compiled the scientific and religious objections to natural selection. In response, Darwin made significant changes to the sixth edition. The problems of the age and heredity of the Earth were not resolved until the 20th century.

**Question 0**

What arguments did Karl von Nägel use to justify his objections to the process of natural selection?

**Question 1**

What was Darwin's concession to Karl von Nägel's objections?

**Question 2**

Who disputed Darwin's estimate that the age of the Earth allowed for the gradual evolution of species?

**Question 3**

What were William Thomson's reasons for disputing Darwin's estimate?

**Question 4**

When were the problems of the planet and heredity solved?

**Text number 52**

By the mid-1870s, most scientists accepted evolution, but gave natural selection a minor role, believing evolution to be purposeful and progressive. During the eclipse of Darwinism, the spectrum of evolutionary theories included forms of 'saltationism', which believed that new species arose by 'leaps and bounds' rather than by gradual adaptation, forms of orthogenesis, which argued that species had an inherent tendency to change in a particular direction, and forms of neo-Lamarckianism, in which the inheritance of acquired characteristics led to progress. August Weismann's minority view that natural selection was the only mechanism was called neo-Darwinism. It was considered that the rediscovery of Mendelian inheritance disproved Darwin's views.

**Question 0**

Why did most scientists accept the validity of evolution in the 1870s, but consider natural selection to be only a minor part of evolution?

**Question 1**

What was meant by the term saltationism?

**Question 2**

What is the term for the belief that species tend to change and adapt in certain ways?

**Question 3**

What was August Weismann's minority view of evolution?

**Question 4**

Which rediscovered genome was thought to disprove Darwin's views on evolution?

**Text number 53**

Some, like Spencer, used the analogy of natural selection as an argument for government intervention in the economy to benefit the poor, while others, like Alfred Russel Wallace, argued that action was needed to correct social and economic grievances and level the playing field before natural selection could further improve humanity. Some political commentaries, such as Walter Bagehot's Physics and Politics (1872), sought to extend the idea of natural selection to competition between nations and races. Such ideas were subsumed within an ongoing effort by some anthropologists to produce scientific evidence of the superiority of whites over other races and to justify European imperialism. Historians write that most such political and economic commentators had only a superficial understanding of Darwin's scientific theory and were as strongly influenced by other concepts of social progress and evolution, such as the Lamarckian ideas of Spencer and Haeckel, as by Darwin's work. Darwin objected to his ideas being used to justify military aggression and unethical business practices, believing morality to be part of the human condition, and he opposed polygenism, the idea that human races were fundamentally different and did not share a recent common ancestor.

**Question 0**

Who believed that action must be taken to level the social and economic playing field before natural selection can improve humanity?

**Question 1**

Which political commentator tried to extend the idea of natural selection to include competition between different races and countries?

**Question 2**

Why did some political commentaries try to link natural selection to the human race?

**Question 3**

What uses of his ideology did Darwin oppose?

**Question 4**

Which theory of humanity did Darwin oppose?

**Text number 54**

Natural theology was not a unified doctrine, and while some, like Louis Agassiz, strongly opposed the ideas of the book, others sought a reconciliation that saw evolution as appropriate. In the Church of England, some liberal clergymen interpreted natural selection as an instrument of God's design, and Charles Kingsley, a member of the clergy, regarded it as 'an equally noble conception of divinity'. In the second edition, published in January 1860, Darwin quoted Kingsley as a 'famous clergyman' and added the phrase 'by the Creator' to the final sentence, which from then on read: 'The Creator has originally breathed life with his various powers into a few forms or into one form'. Some commentators have seen this as a concession to religion, which Darwin later regretted, but Darwin's view is that God created life at that time by means of natural laws, and there are already several references to 'creation' in the first edition.

**Question 0**

What did Louis Agassiz think of On the Origin of Species?

**Question 1**

What did some Church of England priests think of the theory of natural selection?

**Question 2**

How did Darwin show his admiration for the clergyman Charles Kingsley?

**Question 3**

What did some commentators think of Darwin changing the wording of his book?

**Question 4**

What were Darwin's views on the role of God in his theory?

**Text number 55**

Baden Powell praised "Darwin's masterly work, which [supports] the great principle of the self-evolving power of nature". In America, Asa Gray argued that evolution is a secondary consequence, or modus operandi, of the first cause, design, and published a pamphlet defending the book in terms of theistic evolution: 'Natural Selection is not inconsistent with Natural Theology. Theistic evolution became a popular compromise, and St. George Jackson Mivart was among those who accepted evolution but attacked Darwin's naturalistic mechanism. Eventually it was realised that supernatural intervention could not be a scientific explanation, and naturalistic mechanisms such as neo-Lamarckism began to be favoured over natural selection because they were more appropriate.

**Question 0**

What was Baden Powell's opinion of the Origin of Species?

**Question 1**

What did Asa Gray's pamphlet defend?

**Question 2**

In what way did the theologians compromise with the data in Darwin's book?

**Question 3**

What was later realised that led to the adoption of naturalistic mechanisms such as neo-laborism?

**Text number 56**

Although the book barely referred to human evolution, it quickly became a central part of the debate, as mental and moral qualities were seen as the spiritual aspects of the immaterial soul, and it was believed that animals had no spiritual qualities. This contradiction could be reconciled by assuming that there was some supernatural intervention on the road to human beings, or by viewing evolution as a purposeful and gradual ascent towards humanity's status above nature. Although many conservative theologians accepted evolution, Charles Hodge, in his 1874 critique "What is Darwinism?", argued that "Darwinism", narrowly defined to include the rejection of design, was atheism, although he accepted that Asa Gray did not reject design. Asa Gray replied that this accusation distorted Darwin's text. By the early 20th century, four well-known authors of Fundamentals were explicitly open to the possibility that God created through evolution, but fundamentalism inspired the American creation-evolution controversy that began in the 1920s. Some conservative Roman Catholic writers and influential Jesuits opposed evolution in the late 19th and early 20th centuries, but other Catholic writers from Mivart onward pointed out that the early church fathers had not interpreted Genesis literally in this area. The Vatican stated its official position in a 1950 papal encyclical that evolution was not incompatible with Catholic teaching.

**Question 0**

How did people try to rationalise or reconcile the concept of natural selection?

**Question 1**

Which scientist claimed that Darwinism was atheism?

**Question 2**

What controversy started around Darwin's book in the 1920s?

**Question 3**

What was the official Vatican position on evolution in 1950?

**Text number 57**

Modern evolutionary theory is still evolving. Darwin's theory of evolution by natural selection and its tree-like model of branching common descent has become the unifying theory of the life sciences. It explains the diversity of living organisms and their adaptation to the environment. It explains geological material, biogeography, embryonic parallels, biological homologies, vestigiality, cladistics, phylogenetics and other fields with unparalleled explanatory power; the theory has also become essential to applied sciences such as medicine and agriculture. Despite the scientific consensus, a religious-based political controversy has arisen over the way evolution is taught in schools, particularly in the United States.

**Question 0**

Where did the branching theory of common descent become the most unifying theory in the life sciences?

**Question 1**

What does evolutionary theory explain about living organisms?

**Question 2**

In what areas has Darwin's theory of evolution become particularly important?

**Question 3**

What kind of controversy about Darwin's theory has started in school systems?

**Text number 58**

Interest in Darwin's writings continues, and scientists have created a large body of literature on Darwin's life and work, Darwin Industry. The text of Origin itself has been much analysed, including the 1959 variorum, which details the changes made to each edition, and the 1981 concordance, an exhaustive external index. In 2009, a worldwide celebration was planned to mark the 150th anniversary of the publication of On the Origin of Species and the 200th anniversary of Darwin's birth. They celebrated ideas that "have revolutionised our understanding of nature and our place in it over the last 150 years".

**Question 0**

What kind of things have scientists interested in Darwin's work done?

**Question 1**

What was created in 1959 and filled in with information about changes to each edition of On the Origin of Species?

**Question 2**

What was done on the 150th anniversary of the publication of the Origin of Species?

**Question 3**

What did the celebrants honour with their commemorations?

**Document number 258**

**Text number 0**

The dissolution of the Soviet Union was officially implemented on 26 December 1991, following Declaration No 142-N of the Supreme Soviet of the Soviet Union's Council of Republics. The declaration recognised the independence of the former Soviet republics and established the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS), although it was ratified much later or not at all by the five signatory states. The previous day, Soviet President Mikhail Gorbachev, the eighth and last leader of the Soviet Union, resigned, declared his term of office over and handed over his powers - including control of the Soviet Union's nuclear missile launch codes - to Russian President Boris Yeltsin. At 19.32 that evening, the Soviet flag was lowered from the Kremlin for the last time and replaced by the pre-revolutionary Russian flag.

**Question 0**

On what day did the Soviet Union fall apart?

**Question 1**

What entity was created to replace the Soviet Union?

**Question 2**

Who was the President of the Soviet Union at its end?

**Question 3**

Who became Russian President Gorbachev after he left office?

**Question 4**

Which flag replaced the Soviet flag in the Kremlin?

**Text number 1**

Mikhail Gorbachev was elected Secretary General by the Politburo on 11 March 1985, three hours after his predecessor Konstantin Chernenko died at the age of 73. At 54, Gorbachev was the youngest member of the Politburo. His original goal as General Secretary was to revive the Soviet economy, and he realised that this would require a reform of political and social structures. Reforms began by replacing the leading officials of the Brezhnev era who would have blocked political and economic change. On 23 April 1985, Gorbachev brought two of his protégés, Yegor Ligachev and Nikolai Ryzhkov, into the Politburo as full members. He kept the 'power ministries' happy by promoting KGB chief Viktor Chebrikov from candidate to full member and appointing Defence Minister Marshal Sergei Sokolov as Politburo candidate.

**Question 0**

Who was the Secretary-General before Mikhail Gorbachev?

**Question 1**

What made Chernenko leave office?

**Question 2**

How old was Gorbachev when he was elected General Secretary?

**Question 3**

Who was responsible for Gorbachev's election?

**Question 4**

To which two people did Gorbachev grant membership of the Politburo for his own reasons?

**Text number 2**

However, this liberalisation encouraged nationalist movements and ethnic strife within the Soviet Union. It also indirectly led to the revolutions of 1989, which saw the peaceful overthrow of the Warsaw Pact communist governments imposed by the Soviet Union (with the exception of Romania), which in turn increased the pressure on Gorbachev to increase democracy and autonomy for the Soviet republics. Under Gorbachev's leadership, the Soviet Communist Party introduced limited competitive elections in 1989 for a new central legislature, the Congress of Deputies (although the ban on other political parties was not lifted until 1990).

**Question 0**

What were the downsides of the most liberal Soviet Union?

**Question 1**

In which countries did the Warsaw Pact remain in force?

**Question 2**

Which party did Gorbachev belong to?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the legislative body set up in 1989?

**Question 4**

When were opposition parties first allowed in the Soviet Union?

**Text number 3**

In May 1985, Gorbachev gave a speech in Leningrad in which he advocated reforms and an anti-alcohol campaign to combat widespread alcoholism. Prices of vodka, wine and beer were raised to make these drinks more expensive and discourage consumers, and rationing was introduced. Unlike most forms of rationing, which seek to conserve scarce commodities, this rationing restricted sales and clearly aimed to curb binge drinking. Gorbachev's plan also included billboards promoting sobriety, stiffer penalties for public drunkenness and censorship of drinking scenes in old films. Although this programme was not a direct copy of the outright prohibition implemented by Tsar Nicholas II during the First World War, Gorbachev faced the same negative economic reaction as the previous Tsar. According to Alexander Yakovlev, alcohol prohibition was a serious blow to the state budget, as he estimated that annual collections from alcohol taxes were reduced by 100 billion roubles. Alcohol production moved to the black market or through moonshining, as some people made 'bathtub vodka' from home-grown potatoes. Poorer and less educated Russians resorted to drinking unhealthy substitutes such as nail varnish, rubbing alcohol or men's cologne, which only increased the burden on the Russian health care system due to poisoning cases. However, these reforms were intended to reinforce the existing centrally planned economy, unlike later reforms which were geared towards market socialism.

**Question 0**

When did Gorbachev's speech deal with alcohol abuse?

**Question 1**

What other measure was taken to reduce alcohol consumption apart from increasing the price of alcohol?

**Question 2**

What was censored?

**Question 3**

Whose anti-alcohol programme reminded you of Gorbachev?

**Question 4**

When did Tsar Nicholas II ban alcohol?

**Text number 4**

On 1 July 1985, Gorbachev elevated Eduard Shevardnadze, First Secretary of the Georgian Communist Party, to the Politburo as a full member and the following day appointed him Foreign Minister, replacing long-time Foreign Minister Andrei Gromyko. The latter, nicknamed 'Mr Nyet' in the West, had served as foreign minister for 28 years. Gromyko was transferred to the mainly ceremonial position of Chairman of the Presidium of the Supreme Soviet (officially the Soviet Head of State) because he was considered an 'old thinker'. Also on 1 July, Gorbachev took the opportunity to get rid of his main rival by removing Grigory Romanov from the Politburo and including Boris Yeltsin and Lev Zaikov in the Secretariat of the Central Committee of the SKP.

**Question 0**

When did Eduard Shevardnadze become a full member of the Politburo?

**Question 1**

Who was responsible for Shevardnadze's membership?

**Question 2**

Who was Foreign Minister before Shevardnadze?

**Question 3**

What was Gromyko's Western nickname?

**Question 4**

Who was the person who kicked Gorbachev out of the Politburo on the first day of July?

**Text number 5**

In the autumn of 1985, Gorbachev continued to bring younger and more energetic men into the government. On 27 September, Nikolai Ryzhkov replaced the 79-year-old Nikolai Tikhonov as Chairman of the Council of Ministers, effectively the Soviet Prime Minister, and on 14 October Nikolai Talyzin replaced Nikolai Baybakov as Chairman of the State Planning Committee (GOSPLAN). At the next meeting of the Central Committee on 15 October, Tikhonov withdrew from the Politburo and Talyzin became a candidate. Finally, on 23 December 1985, Gorbachev appointed Yeltsin as First Secretary of the Moscow Communist Party to replace Viktor Grishin.

**Question 0**

Who became President of the Council of Ministers in 1985?

**Question 1**

Who was the President of the Council of Ministers before Ryžkov?

**Question 2**

How old was Tikhonov when he stopped being chairman?

**Question 3**

What is the post equivalent to the President of the Council of Ministers?

**Question 4**

Who was the new chairman of the State Planning Committee in 1985?

**Text number 6**

CTAG Helsinki-86 (latv. Cilvēktiesību aizstāvības grupa, Human Rights Defenders Group) was founded in July 1986 in the port city of Liepāja by three workers: Linards Grantiņš, Raimonds Bitenieks and Mārtiņš Bariss. Its name refers to the human rights statements of the Helsinki Convention. Helsinki-86 was the first openly anti-communist organisation in the Soviet Union and the first openly organised opposition to the Soviet regime, and served as a model for other movements for the independence of ethnic minorities[1].

**Question 0**

Who founded CTAG?

**Question 1**

Which group was the first to publicly oppose the Soviet government?

**Question 2**

Which party did Helsinki-86 disagree with?

**Text number 7**

The "Yeltoqsan" (Kazakh for "December") of 1986 was the Alma-Ata riots in Kazakhstan, which resulted from Gorbachev's dismissal of the first secretary of the Communist Party of Kazakhstan, ethnic Kazakh Dinmukhamed Konayev, and his replacement by Gennady Kolbin, a non-member of the Russian SFSR. The demonstrations began on the morning of 17 December 1986, when 200-300 students gathered in front of the Central Committee building on Brezhnev Square to protest the dismissal and replacement of Konayev by a Russian. The protesters swelled to between 1 000 and 5 000 as other students joined in. The KPK Central Committee ordered Interior Ministry troops, druzhiniks (volunteers), cadets, police and KGB to cordon off the square and film the participants. The situation escalated at around 17.00 when the troops were ordered to disperse the demonstrators. Clashes between security forces and demonstrators continued in Almaty throughout the night.

**Question 0**

What is the English translation of Jeltoqsan?

**Question 1**

Who did Gorbachev sack by causing riots?

**Question 2**

What was Konayev's position in Kazakhstan before his dismissal?

**Question 3**

Who replaced Konayev?

**Question 4**

When were the first demonstrations against the ousting and replacement of Konayev held in Kazakhstan?

**Text number 8**

The following day, 18 December, the demonstrations turned into riots as clashes between troops, volunteers, militia units and Kazakh students turned into a large-scale clash. The clashes were only brought under control on the third day. The events in Almaty were followed by smaller protests and demonstrations in Shymkent, Pavlodar, Karaganda and Taldykorgan. According to reports from the Kazakh SNT authorities, an estimated 3 000 people took part in the riots. Other estimates put the number of demonstrators at least at 30 000-40 000, with 5 000 arrested and imprisoned and an unknown number of casualties. According to Yeltoqsan leaders, more than 60 000 Kazakhs took part in the demonstrations. According to the government of the Socialist Republic of Kazakhstan, two people were killed in the riots, one of them a volunteer police officer and one a student. Both had died from blows to the head. Around 100 others were arrested and several others were sentenced to labour camps. Sources cited by the Library of Congress claimed that at least 200 people were killed or summarily executed shortly afterwards; some reports put the number of victims at over 1 000. Author Mukhtar Shakhanov claimed that a KGB officer testified that 168 demonstrators were killed, but this figure has not been confirmed.

**Question 0**

Who protested?

**Question 1**

How many people do the authorities estimate were involved in the riots?

**Question 2**

What were the NGOs' estimates of the number of participants?

**Question 3**

How did the government of the Socialist Republic of Kazakhstan say that two demonstrators were killed?

**Question 4**

Who wrote the KGB officer's certificate?

**Text number 9**

Gorbachev also radically broadened the scope of glasnost, stating that no subject was off-limits to open discussion in the media. Yet it took the wary Soviet intelligentsia almost a year to start testing the boundaries to see if he meant what he said. For the first time, the Communist Party leader had appealed over the heads of Central Committee members to popular support in return for an extension of freedoms. The tactic proved successful: within two years, the party's 'conservatives' could no longer block political reform. The unintended consequence was that Gorbachev's movement saved reform, but in the end it killed the very system it was supposed to save.

**Question 0**

Whose support did Gorbachev seek to increase freedoms?

**Question 1**

What party was Gorbachev leading?

**Question 2**

Which group wanted to block the reforms?

**Text number 10**

On 7 February 1987, dozens of political prisoners were released for the first time since Khrushchev's "meltdown" in the mid-1950s. On 6 May 1987, the Russian nationalist Pamyat group staged an unauthorised demonstration in Moscow. The authorities did not break up the demonstration and even blocked traffic as the demonstrators marched to an impromptu meeting with Moscow Communist Party leader Boris Yeltsin, one of Gorbachev's closest allies at the time. On 25 July 1987, 300 Crimean Tatars staged a noisy demonstration for several hours near the Kremlin wall, demanding the right to return to their homeland from which they were expelled in 1944, while police and soldiers stood by.

**Question 0**

When were the prisoners released?

**Question 1**

What kind of prisoners were released?

**Question 2**

Who demonstrated near the Kremlin in July 1978?

**Question 3**

When was the last major prisoner release before 1987?

**Question 4**

Who freed the prisoners in the 1950s?

**Text number 11**

On 10 September 1987, after a lecture by the hardliner Yegor Ligachev at the Politburo on allowing the two unauthorised demonstrations in Moscow, Boris Yeltsin wrote a letter of resignation to Gorbachev, who had been on holiday in the Black Sea. Gorbachev was stunned - no one had ever voluntarily resigned from the Politburo. At a plenary session of the Central Committee on 27 October 1987, Yeltsin, frustrated that Gorbachev had not addressed any of the issues raised in his resignation letter, criticised the slow progress of reforms, the General Secretary's servility and Ligachev's opposition, which had led to his (Yeltsin's) resignation. No one had addressed the party leader so brazenly before the Central Committee since Leon Trotsky in the 1920s. In response, Gorbachev accused Yeltsin of 'political immaturity' and 'total irresponsibility'. No one supported Yeltsin.

**Question 0**

Who was the most vocal opponent of allowing demonstrations?

**Question 1**

Who resigned in September 1987?

**Question 2**

How did Gorbachev react to Yeltsin's resignation?

**Question 3**

What did Yeltsin not like about the reforms?

**Question 4**

Who sided with Yeltsin?

**Text number 12**

On 14 June 1987, some 5 000 people gathered again at the Riga Freedom Monument to lay flowers to commemorate the anniversary of Stalin's 1941 mass deportation of Latvians. This was the first major demonstration in the Baltic republics to commemorate the anniversary of an official anti-Soviet event. The authorities did not intervene, encouraging further and larger demonstrations throughout the Baltic States. After the 23 August Molotov Pact demonstration, the next big anniversary was 18 November, when Latvia gained independence in 1918. On 18 November 1987, hundreds of police and civilian crowds cordoned off the central square to prevent demonstrations at the Freedom Monument, but thousands of people demonstrated in silence in the streets of Riga.

**Question 0**

Where did the demonstrators gather in June 1987?

**Question 1**

Where is the Freedom Monument?

**Question 2**

What did the demonstrators do?

**Question 3**

Who did the protesters remember?

**Question 4**

Where were other demonstrations held?

**Text number 13**

In the spring of 1987, a protest movement against new phosphate mines was born in Estonia. Signatures were collected in Tartu and students gathered in the main hall of the university to express their distrust of the government. The demonstration on 1 May 1987 was attended by young people with banners and slogans, despite an official ban. On 15 August 1987, former political prisoners formed the MRP-AEG (Estonians for the Publication of the Molotov-Ribbentrop Agreement) group, led by Tiit Madisson. In September 1987, the Edasi newspaper published a proposal by Edgar Savisaari, Siim Kallas, Tiit Madisson and Mikk Titma calling for Estonia's transition to autonomy. The project, Isemajandav Eesti ('Self-governing Estonia'), which aimed first at economic independence and then at a degree of political autonomy, became known in Estonian as IME, which means 'miracle'. On 21 October, a demonstration dedicated to those who gave their lives in the Estonian War of Independence of 1918-1920 was held in Võru, culminating in a clash with the militia. The blue, black and white national tricolour was publicly displayed for the first time in years.

**Question 0**

What was protested in Estonia?

**Question 1**

When did the phosphate mine protests start?

**Question 2**

Which group was founded by former political prisoners?

**Question 3**

Who was in charge of the MRP-AEG group?

**Question 4**

What was asked of Estonia in a proposal published in the Edasi newspaper in 1987?

**Text number 14**

On 17 October 1987, some 3 000 Armenians demonstrated in Yerevan, complaining about the state of Lake Sevan, the Nairit chemical plant, the Metsamor nuclear power plant and air pollution in Yerevan. The police tried to prevent the demonstration, but took no action to stop it once the march had already begun. The demonstration was led by Armenian writers such as Silva Kaputikian, Zori Balayan and Maro Margaria, as well as leaders of the National Survival organisation. The march started from Opera Plaza after the speakers, mainly intellectuals, addressed the public.

**Question 0**

When was the Yerevan demonstration held?

**Question 1**

How many people demonstrated?

**Question 2**

What was the nationality of the demonstrators?

**Question 3**

The protesters were unhappy about the pollution of which water body?

**Question 4**

Where did the protest march start?

**Text number 15**

On 1 July 1988, the fourth and last day of the 19th Party Congress, Gorbachev won the support of weary delegates for his last-minute proposal to create a new supreme legislative body, the Congress of Deputies. Frustrated by the resistance of the old guard, Gorbachev initiated a series of constitutional amendments in an attempt to separate party and state and thus isolate his opponents in the conservative party. Detailed proposals for a new Congress of People's Deputies were published on 2 October 1988, and to enable the creation of a new legislature, the Supreme Soviet, at its session of 29 November-1 December 1988, made amendments to the 1977 Soviet Constitution, adopted a law on electoral reform and set 26 March 1989 as the date for elections.

**Question 0**

What was the last day of the 19th Party Congress?

**Question 1**

What did Gorbachev hope to create?

**Question 2**

What was Gorbachev trying to separate?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the proposed legislative body?

**Question 4**

What was the ideology of Gorbachev's opponents?

**Text number 16**

On 2 October, the Popular Front formally presented its political programme in a two-day congress. Väljas attended the meeting and gambled that the Front could help Estonia become a model of economic and political recovery while curbing separatist and other radical tendencies. On 16 November 1988, the Supreme Soviet of the Estonian SSR adopted a declaration on national sovereignty, according to which Estonian laws would take precedence over Soviet laws. The Estonian Parliament also laid claim to the republic's natural resources, including land, inland waters, forests and mineral deposits, as well as the means of industrial production, agriculture, construction, state banking, transport and municipal services within Estonia's borders.

**Question 0**

Whose laws would take precedence under the Declaration of National Sovereignty?

**Question 1**

Who claimed Estonia's national natural resources?

**Question 2**

What was the name of the group that made its platform known on 2 October?

**Text number 17**

On 20 February 1988, after a week of growing protests in Stepanakert, the capital of the autonomous Nagorno-Karabakh region (an Armenian-majority area in the Socialist Soviet Republic of Azerbaijan), the regional council voted to secede and join the Socialist Soviet Republic of Armenia. This local referendum in a small, remote part of the Soviet Union made headlines around the world; it was an unprecedented defiance of the republican and national authorities. On 22 February 1988, two Azerbaijanis were killed by Karabakh police in what became known as the 'Askeran clash'. These deaths, reported on state radio, led to the Sumgait pogrom. Between 26 February and 1 March, violent anti-Armenian riots took place in the city of Sumgait (Azerbaijan), in which 32 people were killed. The authorities completely lost control and occupied the town with paratroops and tanks; almost all of the 14 000 Armenian residents of Sumgait fled.

**Question 0**

How many Azerbaijanis died in the Askeran clash?

**Question 1**

When was the Askeran clash?

**Question 2**

Who killed two Azerbaijanis?

**Question 3**

What was the impact of the radio broadcast about the deaths?

**Question 4**

How many people died in the riots?

**Text number 18**

Gorbachev refused to make any changes to the status of Nagorno-Karabakh, which remained part of Azerbaijan. Instead, he dismissed the leaders of the Communist Party of both republics - on 21 May 1988, Kamran Baghirov was replaced by Abdulrahman Vezirov as First Secretary of the Communist Party of Azerbaijan. From 23 July to September 1988, a group of Azerbaijani intellectuals began working in a new organisation called the Azerbaijan Popular Front, loosely based on the Estonian Popular Front. On 17 September, when fighting broke out between Armenians and Azerbaijanis near Stepanakert, two soldiers were killed and more than two dozen wounded. This led to near-ethnic divisions in the two capitals of Nagorno-Karabakh: the Azerbaijani minority was expelled from Stepanakert and the Armenian minority from Shusha. In response to the emigration of tens of thousands of Azerbaijanis from Armenia, a series of demonstrations began on 17 November 1988 in Baku's Lenin Square, lasting 18 days and involving half a million demonstrators. On 5 December 1988, Soviet militia finally moved in, forcibly cleared the square and imposed a curfew that lasted for ten months.

**Question 0**

Who did Gorbachev make the first secretary of the Communist Party of Azerbaijan in 1988?

**Question 1**

Who was the first secretary before Vezirov?

**Question 2**

How many soldiers died on 17 September?

**Question 3**

Which ethnicity was thrown out of Shusha?

**Question 4**

How long did the Lenin Square protest last?

**Text number 19**

The Armenian uprising in Nagorno-Karabakh had a direct impact on Armenia itself. The daily demonstrations, which began in the Armenian capital Yerevan on 18 February, initially attracted only a small crowd, but the Nagorno-Karabakh issue became more prominent every day and the numbers grew. On 20 February, 30 000 people demonstrated in Theatre Square, on 22 February 100 000, the next day 300 000, and a transport strike was declared, and on 25 February there were almost a million demonstrators - about a quarter of the Armenian population. This was the first of the large, peaceful public demonstrations that would become the hallmark of the fall of Communism in Prague, Berlin and eventually Moscow. Leading Armenian intellectuals and nationalists, including the future first president of an independent Armenia, Levon Ter-Petrossian, formed the eleven-member Karabakh Committee to lead and organise the new movement.

**Question 0**

Where were the first demonstrations in Armenia held?

**Question 1**

What is the capital of Armenia?

**Question 2**

How many people demonstrated on 23 February?

**Question 3**

What kind of strike was declared?

**Question 4**

What percentage of the total Armenian population demonstrated on 25 February?

**Text number 20**

Gorbachev once again refused to make any changes to the status of Nagorno-Karabakh, which remained part of Azerbaijan. Instead, he dismissed the leaders of the Communist Party of both republics: on 21 May 1988, Karen Demirchian was replaced by Suren Harutyunyan as First Secretary of the Communist Party of Armenia. However, Harutyunyan quickly decided to run ahead of the nationalist wind and on 28 May allowed Armenians to unfurl the first red, blue and gold flag of the Republic of Armenia for the first time in almost 70 years. On 15 June 1988, the Armenian Supreme Council adopted a resolution formally endorsing the idea of Nagorno-Karabakh's accession to Armenia. Armenia, which had previously been one of the most loyal republics, had suddenly become the leading rebel republic. On 5 July 1988, when troops were sent to forcibly remove demonstrators from Yerevan's Zvartnots International Airport, shots were fired and one student demonstrator was killed. In September, further large demonstrations in Yerevan led to the deployment of armoured vehicles. In the autumn of 1988, Armenian nationalists expelled almost all of Armenia's 200,000 Azerbaijani minority, killing more than 100 people - this after the Sumgait pogrom against ethnic Armenians organised by Azerbaijanis earlier that year and the subsequent expulsion of all Armenians from Azerbaijan. On 25 November 1988, a military commander took control of Yerevan as the Soviet government sought to prevent further ethnic violence.

**Question 0**

How many protesters were killed in the airport violence?

**Question 1**

Who banned Azerbaijanis from Armenia?

**Question 2**

Who had previously been removed from Azerbaijan?

**Question 3**

Who took over Yerevan in November 1988?

**Text number 21**

From February 1988, the Moldovan Democratic Movement (formerly Moldova) organised public meetings, demonstrations and song festivals, which gradually grew in size and intensity. In the streets, the centre of the public demonstrations was the monument to Stephen the Great in Chişinău and the adjacent park where the Aleea Clasicilor ("Aleea of the Classics") was located. On 15 January 1988, Anatol Şalaru, at a tribute to Mihai Eminescu in front of the bust of the Aleea Clasicilor Park, proposed the continuation of the meetings. In the public debate, the movement called for a national awakening, freedom of expression, the revival of Moldovan traditions and the official status of the Romanian language and a return to the Latin alphabet. The transition from a 'movement' (informal association) to a 'front' (official association) was seen as a natural 'upgrade' as the movement gained momentum among the public and the Soviet authorities no longer dared to interfere.

**Question 0**

When did the Moldovan Democratic Movement start?

**Question 1**

Which monument was a popular meeting place?

**Question 2**

Where was the monument to Stephen the Great located?

**Question 3**

Which language did you want to become the official language of Moldova?

**Question 4**

What was Moldova's previous name?

**Text number 22**

On 26 April 1988, about 500 people took part in a march organised by the Ukrainian Culture Club on Hretschatyk Street in Kiev to commemorate the second anniversary of the Chernobyl nuclear disaster, carrying placards reading, among other things, "Openness and democracy to the end". In May-June 1988, Ukrainian Catholics in western Ukraine secretly celebrated the Christian millennium in Kiev Rus by holding services in the forests of Buniv, Kalush, Hoshiv and Zarvanytsia. When the official millennium celebrations were held in Moscow on 5 June 1988, the Ukrainian Cultural Club in Kiev organised its own celebrations at the monument to the Grand Duke of Kiev Rus, St Volodymyr the Great.

**Question 0**

Which group was responsible for the demonstration on 25 April 1988?

**Question 1**

Where did the march take place?

**Question 2**

What did the marchers want to celebrate?

**Question 3**

Which group organised secret Christian millennium celebrations?

**Question 4**

In which city did the Ukrainian Culture Club celebrate its turn of the millennium?

**Text number 23**

On June 16, 1988, 6,000 to 8,000 people gathered in Lviv to listen to speakers declare that the local list of delegates to the 19th Communist Party congress, which began on June 29, would not be trusted by the local list. A demonstration in Lviv on 21 June was attended by 50 000 people who had heard about the revised list of delegates. The authorities tried to break up the demonstration in front of the Druzhba stadium. On 7 July, between 10 000 and 20 000 people witnessed the establishment of a pro-Perestroika democratic front. On 17 July, 10 000 people gathered in the village of Zarvanytsia for the millennium service of Ukrainian Greek Catholic Bishop Pavlo Vasylyk. The militia tried to disperse the participants, but it turned out to be the largest gathering of Ukrainian Catholics since Stalin banned the church in 1946. On 4 August, which became known as 'Bloody Thursday', a demonstration organised by the pro-Perestroika Democratic Front was violently suppressed by local authorities. Forty-one people were arrested, fined or sentenced to 15 days' administrative detention. On 1 September, the local authorities violently evicted 5 000 students who were attending an unauthorised public meeting at Ivan Franko State University.

**Question 0**

How many people took part in the Lviv demonstration?

**Question 1**

Where was the decentralisation attempt made?

**Question 2**

Who tried to stop the rally?

**Question 3**

Who led the millennium celebrations in Zarvanytsia?

**Question 4**

Who wanted to interrupt the party?

**Text number 24**

On 13 November 1988, some 10,000 people attended an officially sanctioned meeting on ecological issues, organised by the cultural heritage organisation Spadschyna, the Kiev University student club Hromada and the environmental groups Zelenyi Svit ("Green World") and Noosfera. On 14-18 November, 15 Ukrainian activists were among 100 human, national and religious rights defenders invited to discuss human rights with Soviet officials and a visiting delegation from the US Commission on Security and Cooperation in Europe (also known as the Helsinki Commission). On 10 December, hundreds of people gathered in Kiev for a demonstration organised by the League for Democracy to mark International Human Rights Day. The unauthorised gathering led to the arrest of local activists.

**Question 0**

What is the English translation of Zelenyi Svit?

**Question 1**

What kind of issues did Zenlenyi Svit and Noosfera deal with?

**Question 2**

What kind of organisation is Spadschnyna?

**Question 3**

What did people gather to celebrate on 10 December?

**Text number 25**

Partyja BPF (Belarusian Popular Front) was founded in 1988 as a political party and cultural movement for democracy and independence, similar to the Popular Fronts of the Baltic republics. The discovery of mass graves in Kurapaty outside Minsk by the first leader of the Belarusian Popular Front, historian Zianon Pazniak, gave further impetus to the movement for democracy and independence in Belarus. It alleged that the NKVD carried out secret assassinations in Kurapaty. Initially, the front had considerable visibility, as its numerous public actions almost always ended in clashes with the police and the KGB.

**Question 0**

When did the Partyja BDF start?

**Question 1**

Who found the mass graves?

**Question 2**

What is Pazniak's profession?

**Question 3**

Where were the graves found?

**Question 4**

With whom did the BDF often have conflicts besides the police?

**Text number 26**

In the spring of 1989, for the first time since 1917, the people of the Soviet Union made a democratic, albeit limited, choice when they elected a new Congress of People's Deputies. Equally important was the uncensored live television coverage of the legislators' debates, where the people saw the previously feared communist leadership questioned and held to account. This example triggered a limited experiment in democracy in Poland, which quickly led to the overthrow of the communist government in Warsaw that summer - which in turn sparked the uprisings that toppled communism in the other five Warsaw Pact countries before the end of 1989, when the Berlin Wall came down. These events showed that the people of Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union did not support Gorbachev's efforts to modernise communism, preferring instead to abandon it altogether.

**Question 0**

What was chosen in 1989?

**Question 1**

Who was questioned on live TV?

**Question 2**

Where did the communist government fall first?

**Question 3**

When was the Berlin Wall demolished?

**Question 4**

What did the people of Eastern Europe want to do with communism?

**Text number 27**

In the 26 March parliamentary elections, turnout was an impressive 89.8 per cent, and 1 958 of the 2 250 CPD seats were filled (including 1 225 district seats). In the district contests, by-elections were held in 76 constituencies on 2 and 9 April, and new elections were held on 20 April and 14 May-23 May in the 199 constituencies where the required absolute majority was not achieved. Although most of the candidates supported by the SKP were elected, more than 300 were defeated by independent candidates such as Yeltsin, physicist Andrei Sakharov and lawyer Anatoly Sobchak.

**Question 0**

What percentage of people voted on 26 March?

**Question 1**

How many constituencies held a run-off election?

**Question 2**

How many CPSU-backed candidates were lost to non-aligned candidates?

**Text number 28**

In the first session of the new assembly, from 25 May to 9 June, hardliners maintained control, but reformists used the legislature as a forum for debate and criticism, broadcast live and uncensored. This got the people excited; nothing like this free debate had ever been seen in the Soviet Union. On 29 May Yeltsin succeeded in gaining a seat on the Supreme Soviet, and in the summer he formed the first opposition, an inter-regional group of deputies made up of Russian nationalists and liberals. Elected in 1989, the deputies who formed the Soviet Union's last legislative group played a key role in the reforms and the final break-up of the Soviet Union over the next two years.

**Question 0**

Who used the legislative session for debate and criticism?

**Question 1**

Who formed the interregional group of representatives?

**Question 2**

When did Yeltsin get a seat on the Supreme Soviet?

**Text number 29**

On 25 October 1989, the Supreme Soviet voted to abolish seats reserved for the Communist Party and other official organisations in national and local elections in response to strong popular criticism that such reserved seats were undemocratic. After a vigorous debate, the 542-member Supreme Council approved the measure 254-85 (36 abstentions). The decision required a constitutional amendment, which was ratified by the 12-25 December plenary session. It also adopted measures that would allow direct elections for the presidents of each of the 15 constitutional republics. Gorbachev strongly opposed such a measure during the debate, but it was defeated.

**Question 0**

What did the Communist Party lose in the elections of 25 October 1989?

**Question 1**

Who voted for the removal of special seats?

**Question 2**

When did Congress meet to ratify the amendment that abolished special election seats?

**Text number 30**

Although the six Warsaw Pact countries of Eastern Europe were nominally independent, they were widely recognised by the international community as satellite states of the Soviet Union. They had all been occupied by the Soviet Red Army in 1945, had been imposed as Soviet-style socialist states, and had very limited freedom of action in either domestic or international affairs. Any real aspirations for independence were suppressed by military force - in the Hungarian Revolution of 1956 and the Prague Spring of 1968. Gorbachev rejected the oppressive and costly Brezhnev Doctrine, which obliged him to interfere in the Warsaw Pact states, and decided not to interfere in the internal affairs of the allies - what was jokingly called the Sinatra Doctrine, in reference to Frank Sinatra's song 'My Way'.

**Question 0**

In what year did the Prague Spring take place?

**Question 1**

What happened to Prague's and Hungary's independence aspirations?

**Question 2**

According to what doctrine did the Soviet Union have to intervene in the Warsaw Pact countries?

**Question 3**

What was wrong with Brezhnev's doctrine other than that it was expensive?

**Question 4**

What is the nickname of Gorbachev's new doctrine?

**Text number 31**

The Baltic Sea Way or Baltic Sea Chain (also known as the Freedom Chain in Estonian: Balti kett, Latvian: Baltijas ceļš, Lithuanian: Baltijos kelias, Russian: Балтийский путь) was a peaceful political demonstration on 23 August 1989. An estimated 2 million people joined forces to form a 600 km human chain across Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania, which had been forcibly annexed to the Soviet Union in 1944. The colossal demonstration marked the 50th anniversary of the Molotov-Ribbentrop Pact. The treaty divided Eastern Europe into spheres of influence and led to the occupation of the Baltic states in 1940.

**Question 0**

How many people were involved in the Baltic chain?

**Question 1**

How long was the chain?

**Question 2**

To which countries did the chain extend?

**Question 3**

On which anniversary was the chain organised?

**Question 4**

Which part of Europe was divided by the treaty?

**Text number 32**

On December 7, 1989, the Lithuanian Communist Party, under the leadership of Algirdas Brazauskas, seceded from the Communist Party of the Soviet Union and abandoned its claim to constitutional "leadership" in politics. A smaller loyalist group of the Communist Party, led by the hardliner Mykolas Burokevičius, was formed and remained a member of the SKP. However, the ruling Communist Party in Lithuania was formally independent of Moscow's control - a first for the Soviet republics and a political earthquake that prompted Gorbachev to arrange a visit to Lithuania the following month in a vain attempt to regain control of the local party.

**Question 0**

Who led the Lithuanian Communist Party in 1989?

**Question 1**

From which party did the Lithuanian Communist Party split?

**Question 2**

Who led the loyalist group?

**Question 3**

From which body was the Lithuanian Communist Party freed after the split?

**Question 4**

Who visited in the hope of bringing the Lithuanian Communist Party back into the fold of the Soviet Party?

**Text number 33**

The Popular Front of Azerbaijan held its first congress on 16 July 1989 and elected Abulfaz Elchibey as its president, who became president. On 19 August, 600 000 demonstrators invaded Baku's Lenin Square (now Azadliq Square) to demand the release of political prisoners. In the second half of 1989, arms were distributed in Nagorno-Karabakh. As the Karabakh people got their hands on handguns instead of hunting rifles and crossbows, the number of casualties began to rise; bridges were blown up, roads blocked and hostages taken.

**Question 0**

When was Abulfaz Elchibey elected President of the Popular Front?

**Question 1**

How many demonstrators filled Lenin Square on 19 August?

**Question 2**

What did the demonstrators want?

**Text number 34**

As a new and effective tactic, the Popular Front launched a railway blockade of Armenia, which caused a shortage of petrol and food, as 85% of Armenian cargo came from Azerbaijan. Under pressure from the Popular Front, the Azerbaijani communist authorities began to make concessions. On 25 September, they adopted the Law on Sovereignty, which gave precedence to Azerbaijani legislation, and on 4 October the Popular Front was allowed to register as a legal organisation, provided it lifted the blockade. Transport links between Azerbaijan and Armenia were never fully restored. Tensions continued to escalate and on 29 December Popular Front activists stormed the offices of the local party in Jalilabad, injuring dozens of people.

**Question 0**

What did the Popular Front do to the Armenian railways?

**Question 1**

What shortcomings did the blockade cause?

**Question 2**

How much of the freight entering Armenia comes from Azerbaijan?

**Question 3**

When was the Self-Determination Act adopted?

**Question 4**

What was taken over by the Popular Front in Jalilibad?

**Text number 35**

On 7 April 1989, Soviet troops and armoured personnel carriers were sent to Tbilisi after more than 100 000 people demonstrated in front of the Communist Party headquarters with banners calling for Georgia's secession from the Soviet Union and the full annexation of Abkhazia to Georgia. On 9 April 1989, the demonstrators were attacked by troops; some 20 people were killed and more than 200 wounded. The event radicalised Georgian politics and led many to conclude that independence was a better option than continued Soviet rule. On 14 April, Gorbachev dismissed Jumber Patiashvili as First Secretary of the Georgian Communist Party and replaced him with former KGB chief Givi Gumbaridze.

**Question 0**

What did the protesters want Georgia to leave?

**Question 1**

What did the demonstrators want Georgia to become?

**Question 2**

How many people died in the attack on 9 April?

**Question 3**

What happened in Georgian politics as a result of the invasion?

**Text number 36**

Ukraine's Independence Day was celebrated in Lviv and Kiev on 22 January 1989. Thousands of people gathered in Lviv for an unauthorised moleben (religious service) in front of St George's Cathedral. In Kiev, 60 activists gathered in a Kiev apartment to commemorate the declaration of the Ukrainian People's Republic in 1918. On 11-12 February 1989, the founding congress of the Ukrainian Language Association was held. On 15 February 1989, it was announced that an initiative committee for the reform of the Ukrainian Autocephalous Orthodox Church had been set up. The Ukrainian Writers' Union proposed the programme and rules of the movement, which were published in Literaturna Ukraina on 16 February 1989. The organisation heralded Ukrainian dissidents such as Vyacheslav Chornovil.

**Question 0**

What is celebrated in Ukraine on 22 January?

**Question 1**

What is moleben?

**Question 2**

Where was the mole held?

**Text number 37**

In late February, large public demonstrations were held in Kiev to protest against electoral laws ahead of the 26 March elections to the Congress of Soviet Deputies and to demand the resignation of Volodymyr Scherbytsky, the first secretary of the Communist Party of Ukraine, who was called the "mastodon of stagnation". The demonstrations coincided with Soviet President Gorbachev's visit to Ukraine. On 26 February 1989, between 20 000 and 30 000 people attended an unapproved ecumenical memorial service in Lviv to mark the anniversary of the death of the 19th century Ukrainian artist and nationalist Taras Shevchenko.

**Question 0**

What were people protesting about in Kiev at the end of February?

**Question 1**

Whose protesters wanted to resign?

**Question 2**

What was Scherbytsky's nickname?

**Question 3**

Who visited Ukraine during the protests?

**Question 4**

How many people attended the service in Lviv?

**Text number 38**

On 4 March 1989, a Memorial Society was founded in Kiev, committed to honouring the victims of Stalinism and to cleansing society of Soviet practices. A public demonstration was held the following day. On 12 March in Lviv, a pre-election meeting organised by the Ukrainian Helsinki Union and the Marian Society Myloserdia (Compassion) was violently dispersed and nearly 300 people were arrested. On 26 March, elections were held for the Union's Congress of Deputies; additional elections were held on 9 April, 14 May and 21 May. Of the 225 Ukrainian MPs, the majority were conservatives, although a few progressives stood for election.

**Question 0**

Which victims of ideology were honoured by the Memorial Society?

**Question 1**

How many participants in the pre-election meeting in Lviv were arrested?

**Question 2**

Which ideology was more often elected to the Union's Congress of Deputies?

**Question 3**

How many MPs were elected?

**Text number 39**

On 20-23 April 1989, pre-election meetings were held in Lviv on four consecutive days, attended by up to 25 000 people. The action included a one-hour warning strike at eight local factories and plants. It was the first workers' strike in Lviv since 1944. On 3 May, a pre-election demonstration was held in Lviv, attended by 30 000 people. On 7 May, the Memorial Society organised a rally in Bykivnia, the site of the mass grave of Ukrainian and Polish victims of Stalinist terror. After a march from Kiev, a memorial service was held.

**Question 0**

How many people attended the pre-election meetings in Lviv?

**Question 1**

How long did the warning strike last?

**Question 2**

Where did the strike take place?

**Question 3**

When was the last workers' strike in Lviv before the warning strike?

**Question 4**

Where was the Bykivnia meeting held?

**Text number 40**

From mid-May to September 1989, Ukrainian Greek Catholic hunger strikers staged demonstrations in Moscow's Arbat to draw attention to the plight of their church. They were particularly active during the World Council of Churches meeting in Moscow in July. The protest ended with the group's arrests on 18 September. On 27 May 1989, the founding conference of the Lviv Regional Memorial Association was held. On 18 June 1989, an estimated 100,000 believers attended public services in Ivano-Frankivsk in western Ukraine in response to Cardinal Myroslav Lubachovski's call for an international day of prayer.

**Question 0**

What did the hunger strikers want to draw attention to?

**Question 1**

When did the Lviv Regional Memorial Society hold its first conference?

**Question 2**

How many people attended church services in Western Ukraine?

**Text number 41**

On August 19, 1989, the Russian Orthodox congregation of Saints Peter and Paul announced that it was transferring to the Ukrainian Autocephalous Orthodox Church. On 2 September 1989, tens of thousands of people across Ukraine protested against a draft electoral law reserving special seats for the Communist Party and other official organisations: 50 000 in Lviv, 40 000 in Kiev, 10 000 in Zhytomyr, 5 000 in Dniprodzerzhynsk and Chervonohrad and 2 000 in Kharkiv. On 8-10 September 1989, the writer Ivan Drach was elected leader of the Ukrainian People's Movement Rukh at its founding congress in Kiev. On 17 September, 150 000-200 000 people marched in Lviv demanding the legalisation of the Ukrainian Greek Catholic Church. On 21 September 1989, the excavation of a mass grave begins in Demianiv Laz, a nature reserve south of Ivano-Frankivsk. On 28 September, Volodymyr Shcherbytsky, First Secretary of the Communist Party of Ukraine, who had retired under Brezhnev, is replaced by Vladimir Ivashko.

**Question 0**

What were the protesters demonstrating against on 2 September?

**Question 1**

How many protesters were there in Lviv?

**Question 2**

Who was put in charge of the Ukrainian People's Movement?

**Question 3**

Where did the People's Movement hold its founding congress?

**Text number 42**

On 1 October 1989, a peaceful demonstration of 10 000-15 000 people was violently broken up by militia in front of the Druzhba stadium in Lviv, where a concert celebrating the "reunification" of the Ukrainian countries with the Soviet Union was taking place. On 10 October, a pre-election demonstration was held in Ivano-Frankivsk, attended by 30 000 people. On 15 October, several thousand people gathered in Chervonohrad, Chernivtsi, Rivne and Zhytomyr, 500 in Dnipropetrovsk and 30 000 in Lviv to protest against the electoral law. On 20 October, the faithful and clergy of the Ukrainian Autocephalous Orthodox Church took part in a synod in Lviv, the first since the church was abolished in the 1930s.

**Question 0**

How many people demonstrated on 1 October?

**Question 1**

Who attacked the demonstration?

**Question 2**

Where did the attack take place?

**Question 3**

What happened in the stadium at that time?

**Question 4**

When was the last synod held in Lviv before the October 20 synod?

**Text number 43**

On 24 October, the Supreme Council of the Federation adopted a law abolishing the special seats for representatives of the Communist Party and other official organisations. On 26 October, twenty factories in Lviv organised strikes and meetings in protest at the brutal behaviour of the police on 1 October and the unwillingness of the authorities to prosecute those responsible. On 26-28 October, the environmental organisation Zelenyi Svit (Friends of the Earth - Ukraine) held its founding congress, and on 27 October the Supreme Council of Ukraine adopted a law abolishing the special status of the party and other official organisations.

**Question 0**

How many factories were on strike on 26 October?

**Question 1**

Where were the strikes?

**Question 2**

What were the strikes protesting against?

**Text number 44**

On 28 October 1989, the Supreme Soviet of Ukraine decreed that from 1 January 1990 the official language of Ukraine would be Ukrainian, while Russian would be used for inter-ethnic communication. On the same day, the Church of the Transfiguration of Lviv separated from the Russian Orthodox Church and declared itself the Ukrainian Greek Catholic Church. The following day, thousands attended a memorial service in Demianiv Laz, and a temporary memorial signalled that a monument to the "victims of the 1939-1941 repression" would soon be erected.

**Question 0**

What was made the official language of Ukraine in 1990?

**Question 1**

Who decided the official language of Ukraine?

**Question 2**

Why would Russian be spoken?

**Question 3**

Where was the January 2 commemoration?

**Text number 45**

In mid-November, the Shevchenko Ukrainian Language Society was officially registered. On 19 November 1989, a public ceremony was held in Kiev, attended by thousands of mourners, friends and relatives, to mark the reburial in Ukraine of three prisoners from the infamous Gulag Camp No 36 in the Urals in Perm: human rights activists Vasyl Stus, Oleksiy Tykhy and Yuri Lytvyn. Their remains were buried in the Baikove cemetery. On 26 November 1989, when Cardinal Myroslav Lubachivsky declared a day of prayer and fasting, thousands of believers in Western Ukraine attended services on the eve of the meeting between Pope John Paul II and Soviet President Gorbachev. On 28 November 1989, the Council for Religious Affairs of the USSR adopted a decree allowing Ukrainian Catholic parishes to register as legal organisations. The decree was promulgated on 1 December, coinciding with a meeting between the Pope and the President of the Soviet Union in the Vatican.

**Question 0**

When did the Shevchenko Ukrainian Language Association become official?

**Question 1**

The three human rights activists who were reburied on 19 November were prisoners of what?

**Question 2**

Where was Gulag camp No 36 located?

**Question 3**

Where were the activists reburied?

**Question 4**

Who met Gorbachev on 22 November?

**Text number 46**

On 30 September 1989, thousands of Belarusians marched through Minsk demanding the clean-up of the Chernobyl accident site in Ukraine in 1986. Up to 15 000 demonstrators, wearing armbands with radioactivity symbols and carrying the banned red and white national flag of Belarus, marched through the downpour in defiance of a ban by local authorities. Later, they gathered in the city centre near the government headquarters, where speakers called for the resignation of Communist Party of the Republic leader Yefrem Sokolov and called for the evacuation of half a million people from contaminated areas.

**Question 0**

What did the Belarusians want to clean up?

**Question 1**

Where did the Chernobyl disaster take place?

**Question 2**

When did the Chernobyl accident happen?

**Question 3**

What symbol were the demonstrators holding in their arms?

**Question 4**

What was the weather like during the demonstration?

**Text number 47**

Thousands of Soviet troops were sent to the Fergana Valley, south-east of the Uzbek capital Tashkent, to restore order after clashes in which local Uzbeks chased members of the Meskhetian minority during several days of rioting between 4 and 11 June 1989; around 100 people were killed. On 23 June 1989, Gorbachev dismissed Rafiq Nishonov as First Secretary of the Communist Party of the Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic and replaced him with Karimov, who led Uzbekistan as a Soviet republic and later as an independent state.

**Question 0**

Who went to the Fergana Valley to restore order?

**Question 1**

Where is the Fergana Valley located?

**Question 2**

Who did the local Uzbeks target?

**Question 3**

Who did Gorbachev sack as General Secretary?

**Question 4**

Who replaced Nishonov?

**Text number 48**

In Kazakhstan, on 19 June 1989, young men carrying guns, firebombs, iron bars and stones rioted in Zhanaozen, causing several deaths. The youths attempted to take over a police station and a water distribution station. They stopped public transport and closed down several shops and industrial plants. By 25 June, the riots had spread to five other cities near the Caspian Sea. A group of about 150 people armed with sticks, stones and metal rods attacked a police station in Mangishlak, about 90 kilometres from Zhanaozen, before being dispersed by government troops flown in by helicopter. Youth gangs also rampaged through Yeraliyev, Shepke, Fort-Shevchenko and Kulsary, where they poured flammable liquid on trains carrying temporary workers and set them on fire.

**Question 0**

Where were the fatal 19 June riots?

**Question 1**

Who were the rioters?

**Question 2**

What were the rioters trying to occupy?

**Question 3**

How many cities had their own riots after the first riots?

**Question 4**

What was attacked in Mangishlak?

**Text number 49**

Ethnic tensions had escalated between Armenians and Azerbaijanis in the spring and summer of 1988. On 9 January 1990, after the Armenian parliament had voted to include Nagorno-Karabakh in its budget, fighting resumed, hostages were taken and four Soviet soldiers were killed. On 11 January, Popular Front radicals attacked party buildings and effectively overthrew the Communist regime in the southern city of Lenkoran. Gorbachev decided to take back control of Azerbaijan; the events that followed are known as 'Black January'. Late on 19 January 1990, after blowing up a central television station and cutting telephone and radio lines, 26 000 Soviet troops invaded the Azerbaijani capital Baku, smashing barricades, attacking demonstrators and firing on crowds. That night and the ensuing clashes (which lasted until February) left more than 130 people dead, most of them civilians. More than 700 civilians were wounded, hundreds were arrested, but only a few were tried for alleged crimes.

**Question 0**

Which two groups saw an increase in ethnic conflict in 1988?

**Question 1**

Who was killed in the 9 January riots?

**Question 2**

How many people died in the Soviet response to the clashes?

**Question 3**

What was the name of the events in January?

**Question 4**

How many Soviet troops occupied Baku?

**Text number 50**

After the takeover by hardliners, the elections of 30 September 1990 (rerun on 14 October) were marked by intimidation; several Popular Front candidates were imprisoned, two were murdered and ballot papers were filled in shamelessly, even in the presence of Western observers. The election result reflected a threatening environment; of the 350 members, 280 were communists, and only 45 opposition candidates were from the Popular Front and other non-communist groups that together formed the democratic bloc ("Dembloc"). In May 1990, Mutalibov was elected President of the Supreme Council unopposed.

**Question 0**

Which party's candidates were assassinated in the 30 September elections?

**Question 1**

How many members were from the opposition parties?

**Question 2**

How many members were there in total?

**Question 3**

Who was elected president in May?

**Text number 51**

On 21 January 1990, Rukh organised a 480-kilometre (300-mile) human chain between Kiev, Lviv and Ivano-Frankivsk. Hundreds of thousands joined together to commemorate the declaration of Ukrainian independence in 1918 and the unification of Ukraine one year later (the 1919 Unification Act). On 23 January 1990, the Ukrainian Greek Catholic Church held its first synod since its abolition by the Soviet Union in 1946 (the law proclaimed by the meeting was null and void). On 9 February 1990, the Ministry of Justice of Ukraine officially registered Rukh. However, the registration came too late for Rukh to be able to stand as a candidate in the parliamentary and local elections on 4 March. In the 1990 parliamentary elections to the Verkhovna Rada, the Democratic Bloc candidates won a landslide victory in the western regions of Ukraine. The majority of seats had to be subject to a run-off election. On 18 March, Democratic candidates won further victories in a second round of elections. The Democratic Bloc won about 90 seats out of 450 in the new parliament.

**Question 0**

How many kilometres long was the human chain?

**Question 1**

Who organised this thread?

**Question 2**

Which country's independence are the chain members celebrating?

**Question 3**

When was the Greek Catholic Church in Ukraine dissolved by the Soviet Union?

**Question 4**

Which party won the most elections in 1990?

**Text number 52**

On 6 April 1990, the Lviv City Council voted to return St George's Cathedral to the Ukrainian Greek Catholic Church. The Russian Orthodox Church refused to agree. On 29-30 April 1990, the Ukrainian Helsinki Union dissolved to form the Ukrainian Republican Party. A new parliament met on 15 May. The Conservative Communist Bloc had 239 seats; the Democratic Bloc, which had evolved into the National Council, had 125. On 4 June 1990, two candidates remained in the protracted contest for the presidency of the parliament. Volodymyr Ivashko, leader of the Communist Party of Ukraine (CPU), was elected with 60% of the vote, while more than 100 opposition members boycotted the elections. On 5-6 June 1990, Metropolitan Mstyslav of the Ukrainian Orthodox Church in the USA was elected Patriarch of the Ukrainian Autocephalous Orthodox Church (UAOC) at the first synod of the Church. The UAOC declared its full independence from the Moscow Patriarchate of the Russian Orthodox Church, which in March had granted autonomy to the Ukrainian Orthodox Church, led by Metropolitan Filaret.

**Question 0**

Who was voted in to get their cathedral back in 1990?

**Question 1**

Which party was formed from the disintegrated Ukrainian Helsinki Union?

**Question 2**

What was the first day the new Parliament met?

**Question 3**

Who became the new patriarch of the UAOC in 1990?

**Text number 53**

On 22 June 1990, Volodymyr Ivashko withdrew his candidacy for the leadership of the Communist Party of Ukraine because of his new position in Parliament. Stanislav Hurenko was elected first secretary of the CPU. On 11 July Ivashko resigned as Chairman of the Ukrainian Parliament after being elected Deputy Secretary General of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union. The parliament approved his resignation a week later, on 18 July. On 16 July, the Parliament overwhelmingly approved the Declaration on Ukrainian State Sovereignty - by 355 votes to four. MPs voted 339-5 to declare 16 July a national holiday in Ukraine.

**Question 0**

Who was elected in July as the new Deputy General Secretary of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union?

**Question 1**

How long did it take the Parliament to accept Ivashko's resignation?

**Question 2**

How many MEPs voted against the declaration of state sovereignty of Ukraine?

**Text number 54**

On 23 July 1990, Leonid Kravchuk was elected President of Parliament to replace Ivashko. On 30 July, Parliament adopted a resolution on conscription, ordering Ukrainian soldiers in "areas of national conflict such as Armenia and Azerbaijan" to return to Ukrainian territory. On 1 August, Parliament voted overwhelmingly in favour of closing the Chernobyl nuclear power plant. On 3 August, Parliament adopted a law on the economic sovereignty of the Republic of Ukraine. On 19 August, the first Ukrainian Catholic liturgy in 44 years was celebrated in St George's Cathedral. On 5-7 September, an international symposium on the Great Famine of 1932-1933 was held in Kiev. On 8 September, the first "Youth for Christ" event since 1933 took place in Lviv, attended by 40 000 people. On 28-30 September, the Ukrainian Green Party held its inaugural congress. On 30 September, nearly 100 000 people marched in Kiev to protest against Gorbachev's proposed new Union Treaty.

**Question 0**

Who would succeed Ivashko as President of Parliament?

**Question 1**

What did Parliament vote on in August?

**Question 2**

Where was the liturgy held on 9 August?

**Question 3**

When was the last Youth for Christ rally held before the one on 8 September?

**Question 4**

How many people attended the Youth for Christ event?

**Text number 55**

Rukh held his second congress on 25-28 October 1990 and declared that its main objective was "the reform of Ukraine's independent statehood". On 28 October, supported by Ukrainian Catholics, UAOC faithful demonstrated near St Sophia Cathedral as newly elected Patriarch Alexy of the Russian Orthodox Church and Metropolitan Filaret celebrated liturgy in the shrine. The leaders of the Ukrainian Greek Catholic Church and the Ukrainian Autocephalous Orthodox Church, Metropolitan Volodymyr Sterniuk and Patriarch Mstyslav, met on 1 November in Lviv to commemorate the anniversary of the declaration of the People's Republic of Western Ukraine in 1918.

**Question 0**

Where was the UAOC demonstration held?

**Question 1**

Who was in the cathedral at the time of the demonstration?

**Question 2**

What were Alexei and Filaret doing at the time of the demonstration?

**Text number 56**

On 13 January 1991, Soviet forces, together with the KGB's Spetsnaz Alpha group, stormed the TV tower in Vilnius, Lithuania, to suppress the independence movement. Fourteen unarmed civilians were killed and hundreds injured. On the night of 31 July 1991, a Russian OMON from Riga, the headquarters of the Soviet Baltic Army, attacked the Lithuanian border post of Medininkai, killing seven Lithuanian soldiers. This event further weakened the Soviet Union's position internationally and internally and strengthened Lithuanian resistance.

**Question 0**

Where did the Soviet troops attack on 13 January?

**Question 1**

Where was the TV tower located?

**Question 2**

What did the Soviet Union hope to stop?

**Question 3**

How many civilians were killed in the attack?

**Question 4**

Where did the Russians attack on 31 July?

**Text number 57**

Gorbachev sought to reform the structure of the Soviet Union into a less centralised state in the face of growing separatism. On 20 August 1991, the Russian SFSR was due to sign a new Union Treaty that would have transformed the Soviet Union into a federation of independent republics with a common president, foreign policy and army. It was strongly supported by the Central Asian republics, which needed the economic benefits of the common market to prosper. However, it would have meant that the Communist Party would still have had some control over economic and social life.

**Question 0**

What was Gorbachev trying to decentralise?

**Question 1**

What was to be signed on 20 August?

**Question 2**

Who was in favour of the agreement?

**Question 3**

What would have retained power if the agreement had been signed?

**Text number 58**

The more radical reformers were increasingly convinced that a rapid transition to a market economy was necessary, even if the end result meant the break-up of the Soviet Union into several independent states. Independence also corresponded to Yeltsin's aspirations as president of the Russian Federation and to the desire of regional and local authorities to break free from Moscow's all-encompassing control. In contrast to the lukewarm reaction of the reformists to the treaty, Soviet conservatives, 'patriots' and Russian nationalists - still strong in the SKP and the army - opposed the weakening of the Soviet state and its centralised power structure.

**Question 0**

Where did the radicals want to change the economy?

**Question 1**

What were they prepared to allow to bring about a market economy for the Soviet Union?

**Question 2**

Which country was Yeltsin president of?

**Question 3**

Whose control did the regional authorities want to get rid of?

**Text number 59**

Thousands of Muscovites came to defend the White House (the parliament of the Russian Federation and Yeltsin's office), then the symbolic seat of Russian sovereignty. The organisers tried to arrest Yeltsin, who was rallying anti-coup protesters by making speeches on a tank, but ultimately failed to arrest him. Special forces sent by the coup leaders took up positions near the White House, but members refused to storm the barricaded building. The coup leaders also failed to block foreign news broadcasts, so many Muscovites watched the events live on CNN. Even the reclusive Gorbachev was able to keep abreast of developments by listening to the BBC World Service on a small transistor radio.

**Question 0**

Who came to protect the White House?

**Question 1**

Who did the organisers want to arrest?

**Question 2**

Where was Yeltsin during the coup?

**Question 3**

What was Yeltsin doing in the tank?

**Question 4**

Which TV channel broadcast the coup?

**Text number 60**

On 8 December, the leaders of Russia, Ukraine and Belarus met secretly in Belavezhskaya Pushcha in western Belarus and signed the Belavezhskaya Pact, which declared the dissolution of the Soviet Union and announced the creation of a Community of Independent States (CIS) in its place as a looser union. They also invited other republics to join the CIS. Gorbachev called it an unconstitutional coup d'état. By this time, however, there was no longer any reasonable doubt that, as the preamble to the agreements said, 'the Soviet Union as a subject of international law and as a geopolitical reality would cease to exist'.

**Question 0**

Where was the secret leaders' meeting?

**Question 1**

What was signed at the Balarus secret meeting?

**Question 2**

When was the meeting held?

**Question 3**

What was formed to replace the Soviet Union?

**Question 4**

What was about to end?

**Text number 61**

On 12 December, the Supreme Soviet of the Russian Soviet Socialist Republic formally ratified the Belavezha Treaty and abandoned the 1922 Union Treaty. Russian deputies were also recalled from the Supreme Soviet of the USSR. The legality of this measure was questionable, as Soviet law did not allow republics to unilaterally recall their deputies. However, no one in Russia or in the Kremlin objected. Objections from the latter were unlikely to have had any effect, as the Soviet government had effectively ceased to function long before December. In fact, the largest and most powerful republic had left the Union. Later that day, Gorbachev hinted for the first time that he was considering leaving.

**Question 0**

When were the Belavezha agreements ratified?

**Question 1**

Who ratifies the treaties?

**Question 2**

Who was called back?

**Question 3**

Who showed signs that he was considering resigning?

**Text number 62**

The authority of the Belavezha Accords to break up the Soviet Union was still questionable, as only three republics had signed them. However, on 21 December 1991, representatives of 11 of the 12 former republics - all except Georgia - signed the Alma-Ata Protocol, which confirmed the dissolution of the Union and formally established the CIS. They also 'accepted' Gorbachev's resignation. Although Gorbachev had not yet made formal plans to leave office, he told CBS News that he would resign as soon as he saw that the CIS was indeed a reality.

**Question 0**

Which republic did not sign the Alma-Ata Protocol?

**Question 1**

How many representatives of the former republics signed the protocol?

**Question 2**

What does the Protocol provide?

**Question 3**

What did the Protocol unravel?

**Question 4**

Which news organisation did Gorbachev talk to about his plans to resign?

**Text number 63**

In a nationally televised speech in the early morning hours of 25 December 1991, Gorbachev resigned as President of the Soviet Union - or, as he put it, "I hereby resign as President of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics". He declared the post abolished, and all its powers (including control of the nuclear arsenal) were handed over to Yeltsin. A week earlier, Gorbachev had met Yeltsin and agreed to the break-up of the Soviet Union. On the same day, the Supreme Soviet of the Russian Soviet Socialist Republic adopted a decree changing Russia's official name from 'Russian Soviet Socialist Republic' to 'Russian Federation', indicating that Russia was now a sovereign state.

**Question 0**

When did Gorbachev resign?

**Question 1**

Who took power after Gorbachev's departure?

**Question 2**

What was Russia's new official name?

**Question 3**

What was the previous official name of the Russian Federation?

**Text number 64**

On the evening of 25 December 1991, at 19.32 Moscow time, after Gorbachev left the Kremlin, the Soviet flag was lowered for the last time and replaced by the Russian tricolor, symbolically marking the end of the Soviet Union. The following day, 26 December 1991, the Council of Republics, the upper chamber of the Supreme Council of the Union, issued a formal declaration recognising that the Soviet Union had ceased to exist as a state and as a subject of international law, and voted to dissolve both itself and the Soviet Union (the second chamber of the Supreme Council, the Council of the Union, had been unable to work since 12 December 1991, when the recall of Russian deputies left it without a quorum). The following day, Yeltsin moved into Gorbachev's former office, although the Russian authorities had taken over the suite two days earlier. By 31 December 1991, the few remaining Soviet institutions not taken over by Russia had ceased to function, and the individual republics assumed the role of central government.

**Question 0**

What happened after Gorbachev left the Kremlin?

**Question 1**

What replaced the Soviet flag?

**Question 2**

When did Gorbachev leave the Kremlin for good?

**Question 3**

What was declared abolished?

**Question 4**

Which organ also ceased to exist after it voted to end itself?

**Text number 65**

The Alma-Ata Protocol also addressed other issues, such as UN membership. In particular, Russia was given permission to accept Soviet membership of the UN, including its permanent seat on the Security Council. The Soviet Ambassador to the UN submitted a letter to the UN Secretary-General dated 24 December 1991, signed by Russian President Yeltsin, informing him that under the Alma-Ata Protocol Russia was the successor state to the Soviet Union. After circulation among the other UN member states, and after no objections, the statement was declared adopted on the last day of the year, 31 December 1991.

**Question 0**

Which country accepted the Soviet Union's membership of the UN?

**Question 1**

What made Russia the successor state to the Soviet Union?

**Question 2**

Who wrote a letter to the UN Secretary General stating that Russia would replace the Soviet Union?

**Question 3**

What was the date of Yeltsin's letter?

**Question 4**

When did the UN adopt the statement?

**Text number 66**

On 18 November 1990, the Ukrainian Autocephalous Orthodox Church installed Mstyslav as Patriarch of Kiev and all Ukraine in ceremonies held in St Sophia Cathedral. Canada also announced on 18 November that its Consul General in Kiev would be Ukrainian-Canadian Nestor Gayowsky. The United States announced on 19 November that its Consul General in Kiev would be Ukrainian-American John Stepanchuk. On 19 November, the chairmen of the Ukrainian and Russian parliaments, Kravchuk and Yeltsin, signed a 10-year bilateral agreement. In early December 1990, the Party of Democratic Revival of Ukraine was founded; on 15 December, the Democratic Party of Ukraine was founded.

**Question 0**

Who was appointed Patriarch of Kiev and all Ukraine on 18 November?

**Question 1**

Who gave Mstyslav this title?

**Question 2**

Who was the Consul General of Canada in Kiev?

**Question 3**

Which country appointed John Stepanchuk as Consul General in Kiev?

**Question 4**

How long did the agreement between Kravchuk and Yeltsin last?

**Document number 259**

**Text number 0**

According to the canonical gospels, Jesus, whom Christians claim as the Son of God and Messiah (Christ), was arrested, tried and sentenced to be scourged by Pontius Pilate, and eventually crucified by the Romans. Jesus was stripped of his clothes and offered wine mixed with bile to drink before being crucified. He was then hanged for six hours (according to Mark's Gospel) between two condemned thieves. During this time, the soldiers attached a sign to the top of the cross which read in three languages, 'Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews'. They then divided his clothes among themselves, but cast lots for his seamless garment. After Jesus died, they pierced his side with a spear to make sure he was dead. The Bible records seven statements Jesus made while on the cross, as well as several supernatural events that took place.

**Question 0**

Who was the person who tested Jesus?

**Question 1**

How long was Jesus hanged?

**Question 2**

What did the sign on Jesus' cross say?

**Question 3**

What was done to make sure that Jesus was dead?

**Question 4**

How many statements did Jesus make on the cross?

**Question 5**

Who did Pontius Pilate think he was?

**Question 6**

What did the soldiers do to the Christians as punishment?

**Question 7**

What is one thing Pilate used to drink?

**Question 8**

What did Pilate take from Jesus after he won the bet?

**Question 9**

How many statements did the Romans make about Christians?

**Text number 1**

The baptism and crucifixion of Jesus are considered two historically certain facts about Jesus. James Dunn states that "these two facts about the life of Jesus are almost universally accepted" and that "they are so high on the scale of historical fact, almost impossible to doubt or deny", that they are often the starting point for historical research on Jesus. Bart Ehrman notes that Jesus' crucifixion at the behest of Pontius Pilate is the most certain fact about him. John Dominic Crossan states that the crucifixion of Jesus is as certain as any historical fact can be. Eddy and Boyd state that it is now "well established" that there is non-Christian confirmation of Jesus' crucifixion. Craig Blomberg notes that most scholars looking for a historical Jesus consider the crucifixion to be indisputable. Christopher M. Tuckett states that while the exact causes of Jesus' death are difficult to determine, one indisputable fact about him is that he was crucified.

**Question 0**

What is one historically certain fact about Jesus?

**Question 1**

Do non-Christians agree that the crucifixion took place?

**Question 2**

Do we know the exact reason why Jesus was crucified?

**Question 3**

Who said that the crucifixion of Jesus is established.

**Question 4**

Who said that Jesus' baptism was a universal consent?

**Question 5**

What confirmation is there of the life of Pontius Pilate?

**Question 6**

What do Eddy and Boyd believe about Pilate and how he shaped Jewish life?

**Question 7**

How many trials had Pilate presided over before Jesus?

**Question 8**

What does the crucifixion of Jesus mean for understanding Pilate's life?

**Question 9**

Why did Pilate decide to hand Jesus over to the Jews?

**Text number 2**

Although almost all ancient sources relating to the crucifixion are literary, the body of a crucified man found in 1968 in the north-east of Jerusalem, dating back to the 1st century, provided good corroborating evidence that crucifixions took place in Roman times in much the same way as the crucifixion of Jesus is described in the Gospels. The crucified man was identified as Yehohanan ben Hagkol, and he probably died around 70 AD, during the Jewish revolt against Rome. According to analyses by the Hadassah Medical School, he is estimated to have died in his early twenties. Another important archaeological discovery, also dating back to the 1st century AD, is an unidentified heel bone with a spike found in a burial site in Jerusalem, now in the possession of the Israel Antiquities Authority and on display at the Israel Museum.

**Question 0**

Are all the sources for the crucifixion in writing?

**Question 1**

What evidence was found that the crucifixion really happened?

**Question 2**

Who was the crucified man found in an archaeological discovery?

**Question 3**

When was Ben Hagkol crucified?

**Question 4**

Which institution has a heel bone with a spike in it?

**Question 5**

When did the Romans take the city of Hagkol?

**Question 6**

In what year was the Israel Museum founded?

**Question 7**

Which discovery was made north-east of the town of Hagkol?

**Question 8**

What was the average age of Roman soldiers?

**Question 9**

What did the Romans keep as a deterrent to others who would have rebelled?

**Text number 3**

The earliest detailed accounts of Jesus' death are found in the four canonical gospels. There are other, more indirect references in the New Testament letters. In the Synoptic Gospels, Jesus predicts his death in three different passages. All four Gospels end with extensive accounts of Jesus' arrest, trial, crucifixion, burial and resurrection. In each Gospel, these five events in Jesus' life are discussed in more detail than any other part of the narrative of that Gospel. Researchers note that the reader is given an almost hour-by-hour account of the events.:p.91

**Question 0**

Where are the records of Jesus' death kept?

**Question 1**

Where in the Bible does it refer to the death of Jesus?

**Question 2**

How many times did Jesus predict his own death?

**Question 3**

Which part of Jesus' life is described in detail in these gospels?

**Question 4**

How detailed is the description of Jesus' death?

**Question 5**

Which part of the Bible was written later than the Old Testament?

**Question 6**

How many scholars were needed to translate the New Testament?

**Question 7**

How quickly were scholars able to interpret and translate the Bible?

**Question 8**

What do researchers have to overcome when they face prejudices when discussing Jesus?

**Question 9**

How did scholars treat the Bible when trying to translate it accurately?

**Text number 4**

Combining the statements of the canonical gospels, the following picture emerges: Jesus was arrested in Gethsemane after the Last Supper with the twelve apostles, and then tried before the Sanhedrin (the Jewish judiciary), Pontius Pilate (the Roman authority in Judea) and Herod Antipas (the Roman-appointed king of Judea), before being handed over by the Jewish chief priests to be crucified. After the scourging, the Roman soldiers mocked Jesus as 'King of the Jews', dressed him in a purple robe, crowned him with thorns, beat him and spat on him. Then Jesus had to go to the place where he was crucified.

**Question 0**

Where was Jesus arrested?

**Question 1**

What did Jesus do before his arrest?

**Question 2**

How many apostles were present at the Last Supper?

**Question 3**

How was Jesus tortured before he was crucified?

**Question 4**

What was put on Jesus' head?

**Question 5**

In which city was Sanhedrin located?

**Question 6**

Who appointed the Sanhedrin to form a judicial body?

**Question 7**

Before which judicial body were the twelve apostles tried?

**Question 8**

Which group handed over the twelve apostles to be crucified?

**Question 9**

What was the punishment given to the twelve apostles?

**Text number 5**

At Calvary, Jesus was offered wine mixed with bile to drink. The Gospels of Matthew and Mark tell us that he refused. He was then crucified and hanged between two condemned thieves. According to some translations from the original Greek, the thieves may have been robbers or Jewish rebels. According to the Gospel of Mark, he suffered the agonies of crucifixion for about six hours from the third hour, about 9 o'clock in the morning, until the ninth hour of his death, which corresponds to about 3 o'clock in the afternoon. The soldiers pinned a sign above his head that read in three languages "Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews", divided his clothes and threw lots from his seamless garment. The Roman soldiers did not cut off Jesus' legs, as they did with the other two men who were crucified (cutting off the legs speeded up the crucifixion), because Jesus was already dead. Each Gospel has its own account of Jesus' last words, seven sentences in all. In the Synoptic Gospels, the crucifixion is accompanied by various supernatural events, such as darkness, an earthquake and (in Matthew's Gospel) the resurrection of the saints. After Jesus' death, Joseph of Arimathea lifted his body from the cross and buried it in a tomb hewn into the rock, assisted by Nicodemus.

**Question 0**

What was Jesus offered to drink after his arrest?

**Question 1**

How many hours did Jesus take to be crucified?

**Question 2**

How many accounts of Jesus' last words are there?

**Question 3**

Who removed Jesus from the cross?

**Question 4**

What were the two thieves offered to drink?

**Question 5**

Did the two thieves drink the wine or did they refuse it?

**Question 6**

How many statements did these two thieves make after the crucifixion?

**Question 7**

Where were the two thieves buried after they died on the cross?

**Question 8**

Who was related to the two thieves who were crucified?

**Text number 6**

There are many details that can be found in only one gospel account. For example, only Matthew's Gospel mentions the earthquake, the resurrected saints entering the city, and that Roman soldiers were ordered to guard the tomb, while Mark's Gospel is the only one to mention the actual time of the crucifixion (the third hour, or 9am) and the centurion's account of Jesus' death. Luke's unique contributions to the narrative include Jesus' words to the mourning women, the rebuke of one criminal by another, the reaction of the crowds who left "beating their breasts" and the women who prepared spices and ointments before the Sabbath rest. John is also the only one to refer to the request to cut off the legs and the soldier's subsequent piercing of Jesus' side (a fulfillment of Old Testament prophecy) and to Nicodemus helping Joseph bury him.

**Question 0**

Which detail of Jesus' crucifixion is found only in the Gospel of Matthew?

**Question 1**

Where in the Gospel is the time of the crucifixion mentioned?

**Question 2**

Who was Jesus talking to in the Gospel of Luke?

**Question 3**

Where in the Gospel does it say that Jesus' feet were cut off?

**Question 4**

What prophecy was fulfilled in the piercing of Jesus' side?

**Question 5**

At what time did the Romans decide to guard the tomb of Jesus?

**Question 6**

Who did the Roman soldiers talk to when they were in mourning?

**Question 7**

What did one Roman soldier do to discipline another?

**Question 8**

How did the Roman soldiers celebrate their victory?

**Question 9**

What did the Romans use when one of their soldiers was injured?

**Text number 7**

According to 1 Corinthians 15:4, Jesus was raised from the dead ("on the third day", counting the day of his crucifixion as the first), and according to the canonical gospels he appeared to his disciples on various occasions before ascending to heaven. The account in Acts of Jesus' forty-day stay with the apostles seems to differ from the account in Luke's Gospel, which makes no clear distinction between Easter Sunday and the events of the Ascension. However, most biblical scholars agree that Luke also wrote the Acts of the Apostles as a continuation of the Gospel account, and the two works must be read as a whole.

**Question 0**

Which letter gives details of the resurrection of Jesus?

**Question 1**

Which scripture gives a detailed account of Jesus' appearance before the ascension?

**Question 2**

How long did Jesus stay with the apostles, according to Acts?

**Question 3**

Which day in the Gospel of Luke is mentioned as the Ascension?

**Question 4**

Who wrote both accounts of the crucifixion and the ascension?

**Question 5**

Where did St Luke go after his death?

**Question 6**

How many days had Luke been an apostle?

**Question 7**

How many people saw Jesus when he was first seen after his crucifixion?

**Question 8**

Who was the first apostle to see Jesus after he was raised from the dead?

**Question 9**

How often do scholars need to check what they have written about the Bible?

**Text number 8**

In Mark, Jesus is crucified with two rebels, and the day goes dark for three hours. Jesus cries out to God, screams and dies. The veil of the temple is torn in two. Matthew follows Mark and adds the earthquake and the resurrection of the saints. Luke also follows Mark, but describes the rebels as common criminals, one of whom defends Jesus, who in turn promises that he (Jesus) and the criminal will be together in paradise. Luke describes Jesus' insensitivity to the crucifixion. John contains many of the same elements as Mark, although they are treated differently.

**Question 0**

Who was crucified with Jesus according to Mark?

**Question 1**

How does Mark say Jesus' life ends?

**Question 2**

which natural disaster is mentioned when Jesus died?

**Question 3**

What does Luke say one rebel will do?

**Question 4**

What does Luke make Jesus look like when he crucifies him?

**Question 5**

How long did the two rebels hang on the cross?

**Question 6**

How was one criminal crucified compared to another?

**Question 7**

What did one of the criminals do before he died by crucifixion?

**Question 8**

What happened to the clothes that one of the criminals was wearing?

**Question 9**

How do criminals react to their own crucifixion?

**Text number 9**

An early non-Christian reference to the crucifixion of Jesus is probably a letter from Mara Bar-Serapion to her son, written sometime after 73 AD but before the 3rd century AD. The letter has no Christian themes and is assumed to have been written by a pagan. The letter refers to the reprisals that followed the unjust treatment of three wise men: Socrates, Pythagoras and the 'wise king' of the Jews. Some scholars have little doubt that the reference to the execution of the 'wise king of the Jews' is linked to the crucifixion of Jesus, while others do not give the letter the same weight because of its possible ambiguity.

**Question 0**

Where can we find an early non-Christian reference to crucifixion?

**Question 1**

Who is assumed to be the author of the letter?

**Question 2**

What is the letter referring to?

**Question 3**

Who was one of the Magi other than Jesus?

**Question 4**

Does everyone agree with the content of the letter?

**Question 5**

To whom did Socrates write a letter about the crucifixion?

**Question 6**

When did Socrates write a letter to his son about the crucifixion?

**Question 7**

What religion is Socrates supposed to follow?

**Question 8**

According to Pythagoras, who was Socrates referring to in his letter?

**Question 9**

How much value did Pythagoras place on crucifixion?

**Text number 10**

Modern scholars agree that the New Testament narratives record a crucifixion on Friday, but a Thursday or Wednesday crucifixion has also been suggested. Some scholars explain the Thursday crucifixion by a "double Sabbath" due to an extra Passover Sabbath, which ran from dusk on Thursday to Friday afternoon, before the normal weekly Sabbath. Some have argued that Jesus was crucified on Wednesday and not Friday, since the Gospel of Matthew mentions "three days and three nights" before his resurrection, which was celebrated on Sunday. Others have responded by saying that this ignores the Jewish idiology that "day and night" can refer to any part of a 24-hour period, that the expression in Matthew is idiomatic and not a statement that Jesus was in the tomb for 72 hours, and that many references to the resurrection on the third day do not require three literal nights.

**Question 0**

On what day is the crucifixion supposed to have taken place?

**Question 1**

Why do some researchers suggest that Thursday is possible?

**Question 2**

Why do some other researchers claim that it happened on Wednesday?

**Question 3**

How long was Jesus said to have been in the tomb?

**Question 4**

Was Jesus in the tomb for exactly 72 hours?

**Question 5**

On what date is the first part of the New Testament believed to have been written?

**Question 6**

What other two days could the New Testament have been written?

**Question 7**

Why do some scholars believe that the beginning of the New Testament was written on a Thursday?

**Question 8**

On what other day is the first part of the New Testament believed to have been written than on Friday?

**Question 9**

When was the beginning of the New Testament written?

**Text number 11**

Mark. In Mark 15:25, the crucifixion takes place at the third hour (9:00) and Jesus' death at the ninth hour (15:00). In John 19:14, however, Jesus is still before Pilate at the 6th hour. Scholars have put forward a number of arguments to deal with this issue, some of which suggest reconciliation on the basis, for example, that Roman chronology is used in John but not in Mark, but others have rejected these arguments. Several prominent scholars have argued that modern accuracy in marking the time should not be read back into the Gospel accounts, which were written at a time when no standardisation of clocks or accurate recording of hours and minutes was available, and time was often estimated to the nearest three-hour period.

**Question 0**

At what time did the crucifixion take place according to Mark?

**Question 1**

What time did Jesus die, according to Mark?

**Question 2**

Why do scholars say that the times are different depending on which gospel it is written in?

**Question 3**

What is another reason why times are so different?

**Question 4**

How accurately was time estimated in the Gospels?

**Question 5**

What time did Pilate hold court in the morning?

**Question 6**

What did Pilate require to make it easier to report the time?

**Question 7**

What time was Pilate visible?

**Question 8**

What did Pilate want with the Roman Empire?

**Question 9**

What did Rome reject when Pilate brought reconciliation to the table?

**Text number 12**

The Gospel of Luke also describes an interaction between Jesus and the women among the mourners who followed him, in which Jesus says: "Daughters of Jerusalem, weep not for me, but weep for yourselves and your children." This is Jesus' message. For behold, the days are coming when it will be said, 'Blessed are the barren, and the wombs that never gave birth, and the breasts that never suckled!' Then they will say to the mountains, 'Fall on us', and to the hills, 'Cover us'. For if they do this when the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?" [Luke 23:28-31].

**Question 0**

Who described the interaction between Jesus on the cross and the women?

**Question 1**

What did Jesus say to the women in the crowd?

**Question 2**

Where are the words found in the Gospel?

**Question 3**

What followed Jesus around?

**Question 4**

What was the country like when Jesus was crucified?

**Question 5**

What did women collect to keep warm?

**Question 6**

What colour clothes did some women in Jerusalem wear?

**Question 7**

What did Jesus do when he felt sad for Jerusalem?

**Question 8**

What height area is usually green when new grass is growing?

**Text number 13**

The English name Calvary comes from the Latin word calvaria, meaning skull, which is used in the Vulgate translation "place of the skull", which is the explanation given in all four Gospels for the Aramaic word Gûlgaltâ, the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. It is not clear from the text why it was so named, but several theories have been put forward. One of them is that the public place of execution on Golgotha may have been the skulls of abandoned victims (which would be contrary to Jewish burial customs, but not Roman). Another theory is that Golgotha was named after a nearby cemetery (which fits with both of the proposed modern sites). A third possibility is that the name is derived from a physical outline, which would be more consistent with the use of the word singular, i.e. "place of the skull". Although it is often referred to as "Mount Golgotha", it was more likely a small hill or rocky mound.

**Question 0**

Where was Jesus crucified?

**Question 1**

Where was the place of crucifixion detailed?

**Question 2**

What was one of the reasons for choosing Calvary?

**Question 3**

What is rumoured to be found at Golgotha?

**Question 4**

What is the reason for naming the place Golgotha?

**Question 5**

What language could most Romans speak?

**Question 6**

Where did the Romans usually speak Aramaic?

**Question 7**

What did the Romans do to Aramaea after they started speaking Latin?

**Question 8**

On which formation was the Roman Empire located?

**Question 9**

What kind of punishment do most people who were buried in a nearby cemetery suffer?

**Text number 14**

The Gospel of Matthew describes many women at the crucifixion, and some of them are mentioned by name in the Gospels. In addition to these women, the three synoptic gospels mention the presence of other women: 'Luke's gospel presents them as a repentant thief and an unrepentant thief, "soldiers", "the centurion and those who were with him and were watching Jesus", passers-by, "bystanders", "the crowd gathered to see this spectacle", and "his acquaintances".

**Question 0**

Matthew described who was present at the crucifixion?

**Question 1**

Which three gospels speak of the presence of which priests?

**Question 2**

How many people were crucified with Jesus?

**Question 3**

Who was watching over Jesus?

**Question 4**

Name one other group that was present at the crucifixion?

**Question 5**

According to his acquaintances, who were the women watching?

**Question 6**

How many acquaintances are mentioned in the Gospels?

**Question 7**

What had the scribes and elders gathered for, according to the women?

**Question 8**

Where were the elders standing when Jesus was crucified?

**Question 9**

How did the scribes deal with crucifixion?

**Text number 15**

Most Christians believe that Jesus' execution stake was a traditional two-legged cross, but Jehovah's Witnesses believe that a single upright stake was used. The Greek and Latin words used in the earliest Christian writings are ambiguous. The Greek terms used in the New Testament are stauros (σταυρός) and xylon (ξύλον). The latter means wood (living wood, timber or an object made of wood); in the earlier Greek languages the former term meant an upright post or pillar, but in koine it was also used of a cross. The Latin word crux was also used for objects other than a cross.

**Question 0**

What kind of cross is generally believed to have been used to crucify Jesus?

**Question 1**

According to Jehovah's Witnesses, on which cross was Jesus crucified?

**Question 2**

Why the different descriptions of the cross?

**Question 3**

What Latin word was used to describe the cross used?

**Question 4**

Why was the Latin word doubted?

**Question 5**

What terms did Jehovah's Witnesses use to describe the cross?

**Question 6**

What is the definition of koine?

**Question 7**

Which objects were also referred to as gibbet?

**Question 8**

What words do Jehovah's Witnesses use to describe a tree?

**Question 9**

In what language did Jehovah's Witnesses base their religious writings?

**Text number 16**

However, early Christian writers who speak of the shape of the gallows on which Jesus died invariably describe it as a crossbeam. For example, in the Epistle of Barnabas, which certainly predates 135 and may date from the 1st century AD, the time when the Gospel accounts of Jesus' death were written, it is compared to the letter T (the Greek letter tau, with a numerical value of 300) and the position of Moses in Exodus 17:11-12. Justin Martyr (100-165) explicitly states that the cross of Christ was a two-headed cross: 'The lamb which was commanded to be roasted in its entirety was a symbol of the suffering of the cross which Christ was to undergo. For the lamb to be roasted would be roasted and clothed in the form of a cross. For one spit is pierced from the bottom up to the top of the head, and the other across the back, to which the legs of the lamb are attached." Irenaeus, who died around the end of the 2nd century, speaks of a cross with "five extremities, two lengths, two widths and one in the middle, on [the last] of which rests a person fastened with nails".

**Question 0**

In which letter is the cross depicted?

**Question 1**

Who can say for sure that the cross was made of two logs?

**Question 2**

Why was such a cross important?

**Question 3**

How many heads did the cross supposedly have?

**Question 4**

How does a person become attached to the cross?

**Question 5**

What year was Barnabas born?

**Question 6**

What was the numerical value of the significance of the lamb?

**Question 7**

How long was the Greek alphabet used?

**Question 8**

What did Barnabas use to build the cross?

**Question 9**

How many times had Irenaeus seen a roast lamb?

**Text number 17**

The assumption of a two-bar cross does not determine the number of nails used for crucifixion, with some theories suggesting three nails and others four. Historically, however, higher numbers of nails have been assumed, sometimes as many as 14. These variations are also reflected in the artistic depictions of the crucifixion. In the Western church before the Renaissance, four nails were usually depicted with the feet side by side. After the Renaissance, most depictions used three nails, with one foot placed on top of the other. Nails are almost always depicted in art, although the Romans sometimes simply tied the victims crosswise. The tradition is also carried over to Christian symbols, for example the Jesuits use three nails under the IHS monogram and cross as a symbol of crucifixion.

**Question 0**

How many nails were proposed to be used in the crucifixion?

**Question 1**

According to some sources, what is the theory of the largest nail used?

**Question 2**

What adds to the confusion over the number of nails used?

**Question 3**

What do all the works of art have in common in relation to the crucifixion?

**Question 4**

The Jesuits claim, how many nails were used?

**Question 5**

How many paintings have been made of the crucifixion?

**Question 6**

Where did the Jesuits usually place their art before the Renaissance?

**Question 7**

What artistic medium did the Romans value?

**Question 8**

Before what period were there 14 western churches?

**Question 9**

Where are Romans usually filmed?

**Text number 18**

The placement of nails on the hands or wrists is also uncertain. Some theories suggest that the Greek word cheir (χειρ), meaning hand, also includes the wrist, and that the Romans were generally trained to insert nails through the destot (between the capitate and lunate bones) without breaking any bones. According to another theory, the Greek word for arm also includes the forearm and the nails were inserted near the radius and ulna of the forearm. In addition to the use of nails, ropes may also have been used to secure the arms.

**Question 0**

Where were the nails placed?

**Question 1**

Who says the hands were pierced?

**Question 2**

The Romans tried to fix by avoiding what?

**Question 3**

What else does Greece have to offer?

**Question 4**

What other ways are there to cross-fix?

**Question 5**

Do the theories say whether Destot's bones were broken?

**Question 6**

Between which bones are the radius and the ulna located?

**Question 7**

What did Destot use instead of nails to avoid breaking bones?

**Question 8**

What was Destot's nationality?

**Question 9**

What other place does Destot believe was used for the crucifixion?

**Text number 19**

Another problem has been the use of the hypopodium as a platform for the legs, because the arms may not have been able to bear the weight. In the 17th century, Rasmus Bartholin considered several analytical scenarios on this subject. In the 20th century, forensic pathologist Frederick Zugibe carried out several crucifixion experiments by hanging people with ropes at different angles and in different hand positions. His experiments support angular hanging and double-bar crosses, and perhaps some form of leg support, since in the straight stake Aufbinden hanging (used by the Nazis at Dachau concentration camp during World War II) death occurs quite quickly.

**Question 0**

What was said to be used as a crucifixion platform?

**Question 1**

Why was a platform used?

**Question 2**

Who was thinking about this topic in the 1700s?

**Question 3**

Who carried out crucifixion experiments in the 20th century to test theories?

**Question 4**

Who also used expulsion as a form of punishment?

**Question 5**

In which century did Rasmos Bartholin carry out crucifixion experiments?

**Question 6**

What was Rasmus Bartholin's profession?

**Question 7**

What was aufbinden used for to support the legs during crucifixion?

**Question 8**

Who did Bartholin hang in his crucifixion trials in the 20th century?

**Question 9**

What did Bartholin use to hang his subjects in crucifixion experiments?

**Text number 20**

The only words spoken by Jesus on the cross in Mark and Matthew are a quote from Psalm 22. Since other verses of the same psalm are quoted in the crucifixion narratives, it is often considered a literary and theological creation. However, Geza Vermes points out that the verse is quoted in Aramaic and not in the Hebrew in which it would normally have been recited, and suggests that by the time of Jesus this phrase had become a common proverb. Compared with the other Gospel accounts, which he describes as 'theologically correct and reassuring', he considers this phrase to be 'unexpected, unsettling and therefore more likely'. He describes it as 'like a genuine cry'. Raymond Brown also points out that he finds 'no convincing arguments against the literal sense of abandonment expressed in the psalm quotation being addressed to the Jesus of Mark and Matthew'.

**Question 0**

Which psalms contain the words of Jesus on the cross?

**Question 1**

What is the contradiction in this psalm?

**Question 2**

What was the psalm said to be in Jesus' time?

**Question 3**

How do the other Gospels describe Jesus' last words?

**Question 4**

What does the sentence look like to historians?

**Question 5**

What kind of writings did Geza Vermes produce in general?

**Question 6**

What language did Geza Vermes study at school?

**Question 7**

Which language did Geza Vermes learn as a child?

**Question 8**

How did Raymond Brown describe the impact of Jesus on society?

**Question 9**

Does Geza Vermes believe that there is a valid argument against the existence of Jesus?

**Text number 21**

Some Christian writers considered it possible that pagan commentators may have mentioned this event, mistaking it for a solar eclipse - even though this would have been impossible during the Easter festival, which occurs on a full moon. The Christian traveller and historian Sextus Julius Africanus and the Christian theologian Origen refer to the Greek historian Phlegon, who lived in the 2nd century AD and wrote of 'the eclipse under Tiberius Caesar, during whose reign Jesus was apparently crucified, and the great earthquakes which occurred at that time'.

**Question 0**

What event did some pagans mistakenly think was an event?

**Question 1**

Why was the solar eclipse impossible?

**Question 2**

Which Greek historian wrote about these natural phenomena?

**Question 3**

Who was ruling Rome at the time of Jesus' crucifixion?

**Question 4**

What other event happened that shocked people?

**Question 5**

What year was the first known solar eclipse?

**Question 6**

During which event was Phlegon born?

**Question 7**

Which Jewish holiday was first celebrated in the 2nd century AD?

**Question 8**

What did Origen think he was proving when he wrote about it in the 2nd century AD?

**Question 9**

During whose reign did Origen write about the eclipse?

**Text number 22**

Sextus Julius Africanus also refers to the writings of the historian Thallus: 'Thallus, in the third book of his history, calls this darkness, as seems to me inappropriate, an eclipse of the sun. For the Hebrews celebrate the Passover on the 14th day of the month, and the Passion of our Saviour falls on the day before the Passover; but the eclipse only occurs when the moon comes under the sun.' The Christian apologist Tertullian believed that the event was documented in the Roman archives.

**Question 0**

Which historian has been used to prepare the reports?

**Question 1**

Which event was Thallus filming?

**Question 2**

On what day did the Hebrews celebrate Passover?

**Question 3**

When does the passion of Jesus take place?

**Question 4**

Where are these events documented?

**Question 5**

How many years did the Romans keep archives?

**Question 6**

Where did Africanus believe that the Passover record was documented?

**Question 7**

What was Africanus' profession?

**Question 8**

His book History was Tertullian's what series of books written?

**Question 9**

When did the Romans begin to rule Jerusalem?

**Text number 23**

Colin Humphreys and W. G. Waddington of Oxford University are considering the possibility that it could have been a lunar rather than a solar eclipse. They concluded that such an eclipse would have been visible from Jerusalem for thirty minutes, and suggested that the Gospel's reference to a solar eclipse was the result of a scribe's mistaken alteration of the text. Historian David Henige rejects this explanation as "indefensible", while astronomer Bradley Schaefer points out that the eclipse would not have occurred during the day.

**Question 0**

What type of eclipse is considered to have occurred recently?

**Question 1**

How long would the lunar eclipse be visible?

**Question 2**

Which person possibly made a mistake when copying the text?

**Question 3**

Which historian says that this opinion cannot be defended?

**Question 4**

What inconsistency is there in this explanation?

**Question 5**

Which university does David Henige work at?

**Question 6**

Which event did David Henige believe could have happened instead of the solar eclipse?

**Question 7**

How many minutes did David Henige think the lunar eclipse would last?

**Question 8**

Which city was Henige originally from?

**Question 9**

On what does Colin Humphreys reject the explanation?

**Text number 24**

Modern biblical scholarship considers the synoptic gospel narrative to be a literary creation of the author of Mark, modified in the Luke and Matthew accounts, intended to emphasise the significance of an event considered theologically significant, and not intended to be taken literally. Ancient readers would have understood this image of darkness over the earth, which was a typical element in descriptions of the death of kings and other important figures in writers such as Philo, Dio Cassius, Virgil, Plutarch and Josephus. Géza Vermes describes the description of darkness as typical of 'Jewish eschatological imagery of the Day of the Lord' and says that those who interpret it as a dated eclipse are 'barking up the wrong tree'.

**Question 0**

Who created the accounts of Jesus?

**Question 1**

Who changed the account later?

**Question 2**

What causes darkness over the land in old literary works?

**Question 3**

To which ethnic group do these literary works most often belong?

**Question 4**

Who describes the idea of a solar eclipse as completely wrong?

**Question 5**

What does Philo think those who take the image of darkness literally will do?

**Question 6**

What made Philo become a writer?

**Question 7**

What did Philo not mean to happen after someone had read his writings?

**Question 8**

What nationality was Dio Cassius?

**Question 9**

Which group of readers would have read the works of Geza Vermes?

**Text number 25**

In his book The Crucifixion of Jesus, the doctor and forensic pathologist Frederick Zugibe examined in great detail the probable circumstances of Jesus' death. Zugibe conducted a series of experiments over a number of years to test his theories while he was a forensic pathologist. These included experiments in which volunteers of a certain weight were suspended at certain angles and the traction of each arm was measured, in cases where the legs were also attached or not. In these cases, the amount of traction and corresponding pain was found to be significant.

**Question 0**

Who wrote the crucifixion of Jesus?

**Question 1**

What did Frederick Zugibe research in detail for this book?

**Question 2**

How did Zugibe try to prove his theory?

**Question 3**

What kind of experiments did Zugibe do?

**Question 4**

What specific features were recorded in his experiments?

**Question 5**

Which book was written by volunteers?

**Question 6**

What did the volunteers study to write a book about the crucifixion of Jesus?

**Question 7**

How do volunteers investigate how Jesus died?

**Question 8**

How did the volunteers hang out with Zugibe during the experiments?

**Question 9**

What did the volunteers find in Zugibe increased depending on whether his leg was attached?

**Text number 26**

Christians believe that Jesus' death helped restore humanity's relationship with God. Christians believe that by believing in Jesus' substitutionary death and triumphant resurrection, people will be reunited with God and have renewed joy and strength in this life and eternal life in heaven after the death of the body. The crucifixion and resurrection of Jesus thus restores access to the living experience of God's presence, love and grace, and trust in eternal life.

**Question 0**

What do Christians believe about the death of Jesus?

**Question 1**

How do people relate to God?

**Question 2**

What concrete fact do Christians believe about death?

**Question 3**

The resurrection of Jesus fills the believer with what?

**Question 4**

What kind of feeling usually fills a believer about the resurrection?

**Question 5**

What is the one thing that people need to have in order to be employed?

**Question 6**

What kind of music do Christians often use in worship?

**Question 7**

Who do Christians believe created the universe?

**Question 8**

What is the one thing people are afraid of?

**Question 9**

What is the one thing you need to have in your house to see at night?

**Text number 27**

In John's "agent Christology", Jesus' submission to be crucified is a sacrifice made as God's agent or servant for the sake of ultimate victory. This is based on the salvation theme of John's Gospel, which begins in John 1:29 with the declaration of John the Baptist: 'the Lamb of God who takes away the sins of the world'. The idea is further reinforced in Revelation 21:14, where the "Lamb slain but standing" is the only one worthy to handle the scroll (or book) containing the names of those to be saved.

**Question 0**

Which book gives details of Jesus' submission to be crucified?

**Question 1**

Why Jesus accepted crucifixion.

**Question 2**

What is the central theme of the resurrection in the Gospel of John?

**Question 3**

How is the resurrection told in Revelation?

**Question 4**

What is the other name given to Jesus?

**Question 5**

Why did the Johns accept who would be saved?

**Question 6**

Which book did John the Baptist write?

**Question 7**

What sacrifice did John the Baptist make as an agent?

**Question 8**

What did John the Baptist want to take with him?

**Question 9**

What did John think he was not?

**Text number 28**

Paul's Christology focuses specifically on the death and resurrection of Jesus. For Paul, the crucifixion of Jesus is directly related to his resurrection, and the term "cross of Christ" in Galatians 6:12 can be seen as his shorthand for the gospel message. For Paul, the crucifixion of Jesus was not an isolated event in history, but a cosmic event with significant eschatological consequences, as stated in 1 Corinthians 2:8. In Paul's view, Jesus, obedient unto death (Philippians 2:8), died "in due time" (Romans 4:25) according to God's plan. For Paul, the "power of the cross" is inseparable from the resurrection of Jesus.

**Question 0**

Whose Christology focuses on death and resurrection?

**Question 1**

What does crucifixion have to do with the resurrection, according to Paul?

**Question 2**

What term does Paul use for the Gospels?

**Question 3**

Paul claims that the resurrection was needed for what reason?

**Question 4**

How does Paul view the resurrection of Jesus?

**Question 5**

At what time is Paul believed to have written 1 Corinthians?

**Question 6**

What was Paul's plan for writing some of the Gospels?

**Question 7**

When do cosmic events usually take place?

**Question 8**

How is the birth of Jesus seen in history?

**Question 9**

Why is it believed that Paul was born?

**Text number 29**

John Calvin espoused the Christology of the "agent of God" and argued that at his trial at Pilate's court, Jesus could have successfully defended his innocence, but instead he submitted to crucifixion in obedience to the Father. This Christological theme continued in the 20th century in both Eastern and Western churches. In the Eastern Church, Sergei Bulgakov argued that the crucifixion of Jesus was "pre-eternally" decided by the Father before the creation of the world in order to redeem humanity from the shame of Adam's fall. In the Western Church, Karl Rahner developed the analogy that the blood of the Lamb of God shed at the crucifixion (and the water that flowed from Jesus' side) had a cleansing nature, resembling the water of baptism.

**Question 0**

What did John Calvin claim that Jesus could have done?

**Question 1**

Why did Jesus agree to be crucified?

**Question 2**

What are the Eastern Church's beliefs about death and resurrection?

**Question 3**

What did the death of Jesus do to the Eastern Church?

**Question 4**

What is lamb's blood?

**Question 5**

What kind of Christology did Karl Rahner advocate?

**Question 6**

What did Karl Rahner think Jesus could have successfully argued?

**Question 7**

According to Rahner, how did Jesus submit at the trial?

**Question 8**

How did John Calvin believe that crucifixion was determined?

**Question 9**

What does the blood of Jesus remind us of, according to John Calvin?

**Text number 30**

The death and resurrection of Jesus are the basis for many different theological interpretations of how humanity is saved. These interpretations vary greatly according to the emphasis they place on Jesus' death as opposed to his words. In the substitutionary atonement view, the death of Jesus is central, and Jesus voluntarily sacrificed himself as a perfect act of obedience as a sacrifice of love pleasing to God. In contrast, the moral influence theory of atonement focuses much more on the moral content of Jesus' teaching and sees Jesus' death as a martyrdom. Since the Middle Ages, there has been a conflict between these two views in Western Christianity. Evangelical Protestants typically support the substitutionary view and especially the penal substitution theory. Liberal Protestants typically reject substitutionary atonement and subscribe to the moral agency theory of atonement. Both views are popular in the Roman Catholic Church, and the doctrine of satisfaction is incorporated into the idea of penance.

**Question 0**

What do the death and resurrection of Jesus support?

**Question 1**

How important is the death of Jesus in modern theology?

**Question 2**

Did Jesus sacrifice himself without fighting?

**Question 3**

Why did Jesus sacrifice himself?

**Question 4**

For which church is the victim important?

**Question 5**

According to moral influence theory, how important is the death of Jesus?

**Question 6**

What kind of moral influence theory of obedience do believers hold that Jesus went to his death?

**Question 7**

What do moral influence theorists believe God thought of Jesus' sacrifice?

**Question 8**

Since when has the Roman Catholic Church existed?

**Question 9**

What kind of compensation do moral influence theorists believe Jesus' death in particular was?

**Text number 31**

The presence of the Virgin Mary under the cross [John 19:26-27] has itself been the subject of Marian art and well-known Catholic symbolism, such as the miraculous medal and the coat of arms of Pope John Paul II with the Marian cross. And many Marian devotions also involve the presence of the Virgin Mary at Calvary, for example, Pope John Paul II stated that "Mary was united to Jesus on the cross". Famous works of Christian art by masters such as Raphael (e.g. the Crucifixion of the Moon) and Caravaggio (e.g. the Burial) depict the Virgin Mary as part of a crucifixion scene.

**Question 0**

Who was present under the cross?

**Question 1**

Which symbol is popular in Marian Art?

**Question 2**

Which Pope claims that Mary was present at the crucifixion of Jesus?

**Question 3**

Who painted the crucifixion of the Moon.

**Question 4**

Who was responsible for the art title "His Entombment"?

**Question 5**

What kind of medal did Raphael put on one of his paintings?

**Question 6**

Who was the pope Caravaggio painted a portrait of?

**Question 7**

What was Pope John Paul II wearing in his portrait?

**Question 8**

With whom did Caravaggio believe Mary was in contact on the cross?

**Question 9**

Which famous artist worked for Pope John Paul II?

**Document number 260**

**Text number 0**

However, not all supreme courts have been designated as such. There are generally no individual supreme courts in civil law countries. In addition, some countries do not have a Supreme Court designated as a "supreme court", for example the High Court of Australia, because in the past appeals from Supreme Court decisions could be made to the Privy Council. On the other hand, in some places the court designated as the "Supreme Court" is not in fact the Supreme Court; examples include the Supreme Court of New York, the highest courts of several Canadian provinces/territories, and the former Supreme Court of Judicature of England and Wales, all of which have been superseded by higher courts of appeal.

**Question 0**

What kind of governable states do not necessarily have a specific, individual supreme court?

**Question 1**

What is an example of the Supreme Court not being explicitly called the Supreme Court?

**Question 2**

To which body can an appeal be made against the decisions of this Supreme Court?

**Question 3**

Which Canadian courts are also not specifically the highest courts in that country?

**Question 4**

What is the highest court in each of these jurisdictions?

**Question 5**

What do civil law countries tend to be like?

**Question 6**

Which decisions of the Privy Council can be appealed?

**Question 7**

What will replace the Courts of Appeal in England?

**Text number 1**

Some countries have several "supreme courts" with jurisdiction over different geographical areas or limited to certain areas of law. In particular, countries with a federal system of government typically have both a federal supreme court (such as the US Supreme Court) and state supreme courts (such as the Nevada Supreme Court), the former having jurisdiction over the latter only to the extent that the federal constitution extends federal law over state law. Civil law jurisdictions often have a hierarchy of administrative courts separate from ordinary courts, headed by a supreme administrative court, as in the Netherlands. Several jurisdictions also have a separate constitutional court (first developed in the Czechoslovakian constitution of 1920), such as Austria, France, Germany, Luxembourg, Portugal, Spain and South Africa.

**Question 0**

Countries with more than one supreme court can divide their precedence on the basis of which factors?

**Question 1**

What is an example of a supreme court in the federal administrative system?

**Question 2**

Which countries have a separate Supreme Court to decide on constitutional matters?

**Question 3**

What kind of legal system has a court system with a hierarchy of different administrative courts?

**Question 4**

How are some "federal court" jurisdictions divided?

**Question 5**

What types of supreme courts exist in countries with civil systems of government?

**Question 6**

Which document was written in 1902?

**Question 7**

What is often the case in jurisdictions with a federal legal system?

**Text number 2**

In common law jurisdictions, the principle of stare decisis, whereby the principles applied by the Supreme Court in its decisions are binding on all lower courts, is applied to ensure uniform interpretation and enforcement of the law. In civil jurisdictions, the principle of stare decisis is not generally considered to apply, so that the decisions of the Supreme Court are not necessarily binding on it beyond the immediate case at hand; in practice, however, the decisions of the Supreme Court usually constitute a very strong precedent, or jurisprudence constante, both for itself and for all lower courts.

**Question 0**

Which term describes a system in which the decisions of the Supreme Court are binding on lower courts?

**Question 1**

Which jurisdictions are not covered by this scheme?

**Question 2**

In the civil justice system, Supreme Court decisions are binding only for what decisions?

**Question 3**

Even in civil law countries, the decisions of the highest courts confirm what?

**Question 4**

What is the legal term for a precedent set by several court decisions?

**Question 5**

What doctrine applies in jurisdictions with the highest legal system?

**Question 6**

What does stare decisis say about lower court decisions in the Supreme Court?

**Question 7**

What is a civil precedent?

**Question 8**

What are not necessarily binding in common law jurisdictions?

**Text number 3**

In Canada, the Supreme Court of Canada was established in 1875, but only became the highest court in the land in 1949, when the right of appeal to the Privy Council's Judicial Committee was abolished. The Court hears appeals from decisions of the provincial and territorial courts of appeal and appeals from decisions of the Federal Court of Appeal. The Court's decisions are final and binding on the federal courts and on all provincial and territorial courts. The term 'supreme' can be confusing because, for example, the Supreme Court of British Columbia does not have the final say and contested cases heard there are often appealed to higher courts - in fact, it is one of the lower courts in such a process.

**Question 0**

When was the Supreme Court of Canada established?

**Question 1**

When did the Supreme Court of Canada become the highest court in the land?

**Question 2**

If a provincial case is appealed, how is the Supreme Court's decision applied?

**Question 3**

Before 1949, decisions of the Supreme Court of Canada could be appealed to which body?

**Question 4**

What was founded in 1785?

**Question 5**

What was abolished in 1499?

**Question 6**

What does the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council deal with?

**Question 7**

Why can the title "Supreme Court" be confusing?

**Text number 4**

In Hong Kong, the Hong Kong High Court (now the Hong Kong Supreme Court) was the last court of appeal during the colonial period, which ended with the transfer of sovereignty in 1997. As in the other British colonies, final jurisdiction was vested in the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council (JCPC) in London, UK. Final jurisdiction is now vested in the Court of Final Appeal, established in 1997. Under the Constitution, the region remains a common law jurisdiction. Consequently, judges can be recruited from other common law jurisdictions (including England and Wales) and can continue to work in the judiciary under Article 92 of the Constitution. On the other hand, the power of interpretation of the Basic Law itself is vested in the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress in Beijing (without retroactive effect), and the courts have the right to interpret the Basic Law when dealing with cases under Article 158 of the Basic Law. This arrangement became controversial over the issue of the right of residence in 1999, raising concerns about the independence of the judiciary.

**Question 0**

When did the UK formally give up sovereignty over Hong Kong?

**Question 1**

When Hong Kong was a British colony, what was the highest court of appeal?

**Question 2**

Where is the JCPC located?

**Question 3**

When was the final court of appeal established?

**Question 4**

Which city is the seat of the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress?

**Question 5**

Which event took place in Hong Kong in 1979?

**Question 6**

Also known as CJPC?

**Question 7**

What was created in 1979?

**Question 8**

What does Article 29 of the Constitution say?

**Question 9**

What does Article 185 of the Constitution say?

**Text number 5**

In India, the Supreme Court of India was established on 28 January 1950 after the adoption of the Constitution. Article 141 of the Indian Constitution states that the law declared by the Supreme Court shall be binding on all courts within India. It is the highest court in India and has supreme jurisdiction to interpret the Constitution and to decide questions of national law (including local statutes). The Supreme Court also has appellate jurisdiction to ensure respect for the rule of law.

**Question 0**

On what date was the Supreme Court of India established?

**Question 1**

Under which article of the Indian Constitution do decisions of the Supreme Court bind lower courts?

**Question 2**

The Supreme Court of India has the supreme power to determine interpretations of what?

**Question 3**

When the Supreme Court ensures that lower courts have applied the law correctly, it is called why?

**Question 4**

In addition to national laws, the Supreme Court of India can also interpret which statutes?

**Question 5**

What was created on 29 January 1850?

**Question 6**

What was adopted after the establishment of the Supreme Court of India?

**Question 7**

What does Article 414 of the Indian Constitution say?

**Question 8**

Why does the Supreme Court have jurisdiction?

**Text number 6**

The Supreme Court is the highest court in Ireland. It has the power to interpret the Constitution and to overturn unconstitutional laws and state actions. It is also the highest authority on the interpretation of the law. The Constitution requires it to have the power to interpret the Constitution, but its appellate jurisdiction over the lower courts is defined by statute. The Irish Supreme Court is composed of its President, the Chief Justice, and seven other judges. The judges of the Supreme Court are appointed by the President in accordance with a binding opinion of the Government. The Supreme Court meets in the Four Courts in Dublin.

**Question 0**

What is the Irish Supreme Court?

**Question 1**

The Irish Supreme Court has the power to decide whether laws are permitted under which instrument?

**Question 2**

Who is the highest judge of the Irish Supreme Court?

**Question 3**

How many other judges sit on the Irish Supreme Court apart from the Chief Justice?

**Question 4**

Where is the Irish Supreme Court located?

**Question 5**

In the lower courts, there is a chief judge and how many other judges?

**Question 6**

Which organisation's advice does the Chief Justice follow when appointing Supreme Court judges?

**Question 7**

Where is the Court of Appeal in Dublin?

**Text number 7**

The Israeli Supreme Court is the head of the Israeli state court system. It is the highest court. The seat of the Supreme Court is in Jerusalem. Its jurisdiction covers the entire country. The Supreme Court's decision is binding on all courts except the Supreme Court itself. The Israeli Supreme Court is both a court of appeal and the highest court. As an appellate court, the Supreme Court hears appeals (both criminal and civil) against judgments and other decisions of district courts. It also hears appeals against various judicial and quasi-judicial decisions, such as cases concerning the legality of Knesset elections and disciplinary decisions of the Bar Association. As the Supreme Court (Hebrew: Beit Mishpat Gavoha Le'Zedek בית משפט גבוה לצדק; also known by its initials Bagatz בג "ץ), the Supreme Court is the first instance court to rule mainly on the legality of decisions by state authorities: Government decisions, decisions of local authorities and other bodies and persons performing public functions under the law, and direct challenges to the constitutionality of laws enacted by the Knesset. The Court has broad discretion to decide cases in which it deems it necessary to grant relief in the interests of justice and which do not fall within the jurisdiction of another court. For example, the Supreme Court grants relief through injunctions, mandamus and writs of habeas corpus, and declaratory judgments. The Supreme Court may also sit in further proceedings on its own judgment. In a case decided by the Supreme Court - either as an appellate court or as the highest court - by a panel of three or more judges, it may give its judgment in a further hearing with a larger number of judges. A further hearing may be held if the Supreme Court gives a decision which conflicts with a previous decision or if the Court considers that the importance, difficulty or novelty of the Court's decision justifies such a hearing. The Supreme Court also has the unique power to order a "trial de novo" (retrial).

**Question 0**

Where is the Israeli Supreme Court located?

**Question 1**

What are the two main tasks of the Israeli Supreme Court?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the Israeli legislature?

**Question 3**

What internal method does the Israeli Supreme Court use to review its own decisions?

**Question 4**

Reprocessing is also called what?

**Question 5**

Where does the Israeli Court of Appeal sit?

**Question 6**

What kind of cases does the Court of Appeal deal with?

**Question 7**

What does the Supreme Court award?

**Question 8**

What is a "de novo order"?

**Text number 8**

The new Supreme Court of New Zealand was officially established in early 2004, but it only became operational in July. Until 1980, the New Zealand Supreme Court was known as the Supreme Court. The Supreme Court has purely appellate jurisdiction and hears appeals from the New Zealand Court of Appeal. In some cases, an appeal may be referred directly to the Supreme Court from the High Court. In certain cases, particularly those brought in the District Court, a lower court (usually the High Court or Court of Appeal) may have final jurisdiction.

**Question 0**

When was the Supreme Court of New Zealand established?

**Question 1**

What is the role of the Supreme Court of New Zealand?

**Question 2**

Which court decisions can be appealed to the New Zealand Supreme Court?

**Question 3**

What is New Zealand's second most important court?

**Question 4**

Which local decisions made by which judicial body can be left to the jurisdiction of local courts?

**Question 5**

What was officially established in early 1980?

**Question 6**

What was the name of the Supreme Court until 2004?

**Question 7**

Where do appeals always go from the Supreme Court?

**Question 8**

What are the district court and the court of appeal like?

**Text number 9**

For the regions of Pakistan (i.e. FATA, Azad Kashmir, Northern Areas and Islamabad Capital Territory), the Supreme Court's jurisdiction is rather limited and varies from region to region; it can only hear constitutional appeals from FATA and the Northern Areas, while the ICT generally has the same jurisdiction as the provinces. Azad Kashmir has its own court system and is not covered by the Pakistani Constitution as such; Azad Kashmir's complaints concern its relationship with Pakistan.

**Question 0**

What are the regions of Pakistan?

**Question 1**

What types of cases can the Supreme Court of Pakistan hear in the FATA?

**Question 2**

Which of Pakistan's own courts retain supremacy?

**Question 3**

What is the relationship between the Constitution of Pakistan and Azad Kashmir?

**Question 4**

What is the capital of the Islamabad region?

**Question 5**

What are FATA, Azad Northern, Kashmir Regions and ICT?

**Question 6**

Which province has its own court system?

**Text number 10**

The Supreme Court of the United Kingdom is the highest court in criminal and civil matters in England, Wales and Northern Ireland and in civil matters in Scotland (in Scotland, the High Court of Justiciary is the highest court in criminal matters). The High Court was established by the Constitutional Reform Act 2005, which came into force on 1 October 2009, replacing and taking over the judicial functions of the House of Lords. The Constitutional Reform Act also transferred the devolution functions under the Scotland Act 1998, the Welsh Administration Act and the Northern Ireland Act to the new Supreme Court, which had previously been the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council.

**Question 0**

In which jurisdictions is the UK Supreme Court supreme?

**Question 1**

What is the highest court in Scotland with ultimate jurisdiction in criminal matters?

**Question 2**

What legislation established the supremacy of the UK Supreme Court?

**Question 3**

When did this law come into force?

**Question 4**

Which body used to have legal supremacy in the UK before this?

**Question 5**

What did the 2009 constitutional reform create?

**Question 6**

What came into force in 2005?

**Question 7**

What were the issues covered by the Scotland Act 1989?

**Question 8**

What was the UK's first judicial body?

**Question 9**

Where is the Supreme Court the highest court in criminal and procedural matters?

**Text number 11**

The names of state supreme courts vary, which can cause confusion in different jurisdictions, as one state may use a name for the supreme court that another uses for a lower court. In New York, Maryland and the District of Columbia, the name of the highest court is the Court of Appeals, which many states use for intermediate appellate courts. In addition, the New York courts of general jurisdiction are called the Supreme Court and the highest court of appeals is called the Supreme Court, Appellate Division. In West Virginia, the state's highest court is the Supreme Court of Appeals. In Maine and Massachusetts, the Supreme Court is called the Supreme Judicial Court, the latter being the oldest continuously operating appellate court in the Western Hemisphere.

**Question 0**

What can cause confusion in the US about state supreme courts?

**Question 1**

In which US states or territories is the Court of Appeals the highest court?

**Question 2**

What is the name of the West Virginia Supreme Court?

**Question 3**

Which state's Supreme Court is the oldest appellate court in the Western Hemisphere?

**Question 4**

What is the role of the New York Supreme Court?

**Question 5**

What is the highest court in Virginia?

**Question 6**

Which state has the oldest continuously operating court in the Western Hemisphere?

**Question 7**

What is the name of the intermediate court in New York?

**Text number 12**

In Austria, the 1920 Austrian Constitution (based on a draft by Hans Kelsen) introduced judicial review of the constitutionality of legal acts. This task is performed by the Constitutional Court (Verfassungsgerichtshof), which is also responsible for examining whether administrative acts violate the rights guaranteed by the Constitution. Administrative acts are otherwise subject to review by the Administrative Court (Verwaltungsgerichtshof). The Supreme Court (OGH) is at the top of the Austrian system of "ordinary courts" (ordentliche Gerichte) and acts as the court of last instance in civil and criminal matters.

**Question 0**

Which act in Austria provided for the judicial control of legislation?

**Question 1**

Which court is responsible for deciding on the constitutionality of Austrian laws?

**Question 2**

What is the German word for this constitutional supreme court?

**Question 3**

What is the jurisdiction of the Constitutional Court over the executive power of the Austrian government?

**Question 4**

What is the German name of the Austrian Supreme Court?

**Question 5**

What was drawn up in 1902?

**Question 6**

Who wrote the Austrian Constitution?

**Question 7**

What is the Austrian term for an administrative court?

**Question 8**

What is the Austrian term for a constitutional court?

**Question 9**

What is the Austrian term for "ordinary courts"?

**Text number 13**

In Brazil, the highest court is the Federal Supreme Court (Supremo Tribunal Federal). It is both the constitutional court and the final court of Brazilian law. It only hears cases that may be unconstitutional or, in criminal cases, final habeas corpus petitions. It also has original jurisdiction to try cases against members of Congress, senators, ministers of state, members of the highest courts and the President and Vice-President of the Republic. The Tribunal Superior de Justiça reviews the decisions of state and federal district courts in civil and criminal cases involving federal legislation or conflicting judgments. The Superior Labour Court (Tribunal Superior do Trabalho) deals with cases concerning labour law. The Superior Electoral Tribunal (Tribunal Superior Eleitoral) is the highest court dealing with electoral legislation and also supervises general elections. The Superior Military Tribunal (Tribunal Superior Militar) is the highest court for matters relating to federal military law.

**Question 0**

What is the Brazilian Supreme Court?

**Question 1**

What are the two areas in which this court is a higher court?

**Question 2**

Over which legislators does this court rule?

**Question 3**

What other government officials are affected by the Brazilian Supreme Court rulings?

**Question 4**

What is Brazil's highest labour court?

**Question 5**

What type of elections does the Higher Labour Court supervise?

**Question 6**

Which two types of cases are only dealt with by the Supreme Military Tribunal?

**Question 7**

What are the controversial results that the Upper Electoral Committee deals with?

**Question 8**

What is the Brazilian name of the Supreme Court?

**Text number 14**

The final interpretation and amendment of the German Constitution (Grundgesetz) is the responsibility of the Bundesverfassungsgericht (Federal Constitutional Court), which is de facto the highest court in Germany, as it can declare both federal and state legislation invalid and has the power to overturn the decisions of all other federal courts, although it is not a court of appeal in the German court system. It is also the only court with the power and authority to ban political parties if they are found to have repeatedly violated articles of the Constitution.

**Question 0**

What is the name of the German constitution?

**Question 1**

Which German Supreme Court is responsible for interpreting this document?

**Question 2**

What is the English translation of this court and its functions?

**Question 3**

What unique electoral powers does this German Supreme Court have?

**Question 4**

Under what circumstances can the court impose this responsibility?

**Question 5**

What is the German term for the German Constitutional Court?

**Question 6**

What is the German term for a federal constitution?

**Question 7**

What can happen to a political party if it has repeatedly violated the German court system?

**Question 8**

What can the German court say about the legislation?

**Text number 15**

In civil and criminal matters, the Bundesgerichtshof is at the top of the court hierarchy. The other branches of the German judiciary each have their own appeal system, with the highest court at the top: the Bundessozialgericht in social security matters, the Bundesarbeitsgericht in labour and employment matters, the Bundesfinanzhof in tax and finance matters and the Bundesverwaltungsgericht in administrative law. The so-called Gemeinsamer Senat der Obersten Gerichtshöfe (Joint Senate of the Supreme Courts) is not a supreme court as such, but an ad hoc body which is convened only when one supreme court intends to depart from the legal opinion of another supreme court or when a particular case exceeds the jurisdiction of one court. Since the courts have well-defined responsibilities, such situations are relatively rare, so the Joint Senate meets very rarely and only to deal with cases that are mostly final.

**Question 0**

In which two areas of law does the German Supreme Court have jurisdiction?

**Question 1**

Which court has jurisdiction in social security matters?

**Question 2**

Which court is the highest court in Germany for matters relating to labour and business law?

**Question 3**

What is the joint senate of the highest German courts known as?

**Question 4**

What else does the Bundesgerichtshof deal with besides taxation?

**Question 5**

What is at the top of the Bundessozialgericht?

**Question 6**

Which legislation does the Bundesarbeitsgericht apply?

**Question 7**

What is the German term for the Senate of the Supreme Courts?

**Question 8**

How often does the joint Supreme Court meet?

**Text number 16**

In the Netherlands, the highest court is the Supreme Court of the Netherlands. Its decisions, known as "arresten", are absolutely final. The Court is not allowed to review unconstitutional legislation in accordance with the principle of the sovereignty of the States; however, the Court may review legislation in violation of certain treaties. Nor do the ordinary courts of the Netherlands, including the Hoge Raad, hear administrative cases, which are heard by separate administrative courts, the highest of which is the Raad van State.

**Question 0**

What are the decisions of the Dutch Supreme Court called?

**Question 1**

What can't the Dutch Supreme Court interpret?

**Question 2**

What areas of interpretative control does the Supreme Court have?

**Question 3**

Which areas of law are not dealt with in the Dutch ordinary court system?

**Question 4**

What is the name of the Supreme Administrative Court?

**Question 5**

What is another term for the Dutch Supreme Court?

**Question 6**

What can the court not do under the rule of law?

**Question 7**

What is the name of the Council of State?

**Question 8**

What is the name of the administrative court?

**Text number 17**

Although the Philippines is generally considered a civil law country, its Supreme Court is largely modelled on the American Supreme Court. This is because the Philippines were colonies of both Spain and the United States, and the legal systems of both nations strongly influenced the development of Philippine law and jurisprudence. Although Philippine law is still mostly codified, the Philippine Civil Code explicitly recognises that Supreme Court decisions "form part of the law of the land" and belong to the same category as statutes. The 1987 Philippine Constitution also explicitly gives the Supreme Court the power to review laws and executive actions. The Supreme Court is composed of one Chief Justice and 14 Associate Justices. The court sits either en banc or in chambers, depending on the nature of the case.

**Question 0**

What is the official legal system in the Philippines?

**Question 1**

Which judicial body is the Philippine Supreme Court modelled on?

**Question 2**

Which document grants the Supreme Court of the Philippines the right of appeal?

**Question 3**

How many judges are there in the Philippine Supreme Court?

**Question 4**

When all the judges of a court hear a case at the same time, it is called?

**Question 5**

Which nation's court is the US Supreme Court modelled on?

**Question 6**

Which country was colonised by Spain besides the Philippines?

**Question 7**

What was written in 1897?

**Question 8**

What does the Philippine Constitution say about Supreme Court decisions?

**Text number 18**

The Spanish Supreme Court is the highest court in Spain, dealing with all Spanish cases (both private and public). Only human rights cases can be appealed to the Constitutional Court (which also rules on the laws that are in line with the Spanish Constitution  
)  
In Spain, the highest courts cannot create binding precedents, but lower courts generally follow the interpretations of the Supreme Court. In most civil cases, two Supreme Court judgments supporting the claim are needed to appeal to the Supreme Court.   
The Spanish Supreme Court is made up of five chambers:

**Question 0**

In which areas does the Spanish Supreme Court deal with all matters relating to the law?

**Question 1**

What can be appealed to the Spanish Constitutional Court?

**Question 2**

What is the second power of this latter court?

**Question 3**

What do the Spanish Supreme Courts not specify for lower court decisions?

**Question 4**

How do lower courts usually react to decisions of higher courts?

**Question 5**

Why do we need five Supreme Court rulings to support the claim?

**Question 6**

What do lower courts always follow?

**Question 7**

What actions does the Supreme Court only allow in human rights cases?

**Text number 19**

In Sweden, the Supreme Court and the Supreme Administrative Court are the highest courts in the country. The Supreme Administrative Court deals with disputes between individuals and administrative bodies, as well as disputes between administrative bodies, while the Supreme Court deals with all other cases. Judges are appointed by the government. In most cases, the Supreme Courts will only grant leave to appeal (prövningstillstånd) if there is a precedent in the interpretation of the law. The exception is cases where the Supreme Court is the court of first instance. Examples of such cases include an application for a retrial of a criminal case on the basis of new evidence and charges against a government minister for serious misconduct in the performance of his duties. If a lower court is faced with a case involving a question on which there is no established interpretation of the law, it may also refer the question to the relevant Supreme Court.

**Question 0**

What are the two highest courts in Sweden?

**Question 1**

What kind of cases are heard by the Supreme Administrative Court?

**Question 2**

What does the Supreme Court deal with?

**Question 3**

How are judges placed in the Swedish Supreme Courts?

**Question 4**

What is the possibility to appeal in the Swedish court system?

**Question 5**

What is the Swedish term for government?

**Question 6**

What other cases does the Supreme Court deal with, apart from disputes between individuals and administrative bodies?

**Question 7**

Which two courts are equally the highest courts in the country?

**Question 8**

To what position will the Supreme Court appoint you?

**Text number 20**

In Sri Lanka, the Supreme Court of Sri Lanka was established in 1972 after the adoption of the new Constitution. The Supreme Court is the highest and final higher court and has the power to exercise its jurisdiction in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution. Its decisions take precedence over all lower courts. Sri Lanka's legal system is a complex mix of both common law and civil law. In some cases, such as death penalty cases, a decision may be referred to the President of the Republic for a pardon. However, when there is a 2/3 majority in Parliament in favour of the President (as is the case today), the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court and its judges is nullified, as they can be removed from office by the Constitution if the President so wishes. Thus, in such situations, the powers of civil law are lost.

**Question 0**

When was the Supreme Court of Sri Lanka established?

**Question 1**

What do the Sri Lankan Supreme Court decisions overturn?

**Question 2**

Sri Lankan law mixes which two categories of jurisprudence?

**Question 3**

What majority is needed in the Sri Lankan Parliament to dismiss the President and the Court?

**Question 4**

What was created in 1927?

**Question 5**

What was adopted before 1972?

**Question 6**

What are capital and civil law together?

**Question 7**

In which cases can the President of a country play a role?

**Text number 21**

South Africa had a two-summit system from 1994 to 2013. The Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA) was established in 1994 and replaced the South African Supreme Court of Appeal as the highest court of appeal in non-constitutional matters. The SCA is subordinate to the Constitutional Court, which is the highest court in matters of constitutional interpretation and application. However, in August 2013, the Constitution was amended to make the Constitutional Court the only Supreme Court in the country, which is the highest court in all matters, both constitutional and non-constitutional.

**Question 0**

What system did South Africa use to determine its supreme courts until 2013?

**Question 1**

When was the Supreme Court of Appeal established?

**Question 2**

Which court in South Africa has jurisdiction over the SCA?

**Question 3**

When did the Constitutional Court become South Africa's highest court in all matters?

**Question 4**

What existed between 1993 and 2014?

**Question 5**

What was set up in 2013 to replace the South African Supreme Court's Appeals Chamber?

**Question 6**

What was changed in August 1994?

**Question 7**

To what is the Constitutional Court subordinate?

**Text number 22**

In most countries with a constitution modelled on the Soviet Union, the legislature was given the power to act as a court of last resort. In the People's Republic of China, the final power to interpret the law is vested in the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress. This power includes the power to interpret the Basic Laws of Hong Kong and Macao, which are the constitutional documents of the two SARs, which are common law and Portuguese-based jurisdictions. This power is a legislative power and not a judicial power, as the interpretation of the NPC does not affect cases already decided.

**Question 0**

In which country's model is the power of the Supreme Court given to the legislature?

**Question 1**

What is the name of the Chinese Supreme Court, which acts as a legislative committee?

**Question 2**

What is not affected by the current NCA decisions?

**Question 3**

What is the traditional basis of Hong Kong's legal system?

**Question 4**

What is the tradition behind Macao's legal system?

**Question 5**

What is the name of the NCPSC?

**Question 6**

Which country can interpret the laws of Macao and China?

**Question 7**

Which country is the Chinese legal system based on?

**Document number 261**

**Text number 0**

Textual criticism is a branch of textual studies, philology and literary criticism that deals with the identification of textual variants in either manuscripts or printed books. Ancient scribes made changes when copying manuscripts by hand. When a copy of a manuscript, or several or multiple copies, but not the original document, is available, the textual critic can attempt to reconstruct the original text (archetype or autograph) as accurately as possible. The same methods can be used to reconstruct intermediate versions or reprints of the transcription history of a document. The ultimate aim of the textual critic's work is to produce a "critical edition" containing a scientifically curated text.

**Question 0**

What kind of documents does a textual critic usually analyse?

**Question 1**

What is the right name for textual research?

**Question 2**

Why are there differences between ancient copies of the same text?

**Question 3**

Why do text critics call the text a revised edition?

**Question 4**

What kind of press does a text critic usually analyse?

**Question 5**

What is the author's aim?

**Question 6**

What is the correct name of the textual profession?

**Question 7**

Why do modern copies of the same text differ?

**Question 8**

What do text critics call a perfectly translated text print?

**Text number 1**

Hundreds of copies of many ancient works, such as the Bible and Greek tragedies, have survived, and the relationship of each copy to the original can be unclear. Textual scholars have argued for centuries about which sources are closest to the original, and thus which readings in those sources are correct.[citation needed] While biblical books that are letters, such as the Greek plays, are thought to have had a single original, it has been debated whether some biblical books, such as the Gospels, ever had only one original. Interest in the application of textual criticism to the Qur'an has also developed since the discovery in 1972 of manuscripts of the Sana'a, possibly dating from the 7th-8th centuries.

**Question 0**

Interested in an analysis of what texts were produced in the early 1970s?

**Question 1**

Why are scholars concerned about analysing the Gospels rather than the letters?

**Question 2**

Why is it important for textual critics to analyse the Gospels?

**Question 3**

Which manuscripts gave rise to the textual analysis of the Qur'an?

**Question 4**

When were the manuscripts of the Word probably written?

**Question 5**

Interested in an analysis of what text has emerged from the early 8th century?

**Question 6**

Why are researchers interested in analysing plays?

**Question 7**

Why is it important for text critics to analyse plays?

**Question 8**

Which books gave rise to the textual analysis of a modern work?

**Question 9**

Which script was written in 1972?

**Text number 2**

In the English language, Shakespeare's works have been particularly fertile ground for textual criticism - both because the texts, as edited, contain considerable variation, and because the effort and expense of producing better editions of the works has always been widely considered worthwhile. Although the principles of textual criticism were originally developed and refined for the ancient works of the Bible and Shakespeare, they have also been applied to many other works, ranging from the present day to the earliest known written documents in Mesopotamia and Egypt, i.e. around five millennia. However, the application of textual criticism to non-religious works does not date back to the invention of the printing press. Christianity has been relatively welcoming of textual criticism, but its application to the Jewish (Masoretic) Torah and Koran is taboo for believers.

**Question 0**

What is one reason why Shakespeare is a good place to focus on textual criticism?

**Question 1**

Besides Shakespeare, what is the other book that is the main target of textual criticism?

**Question 2**

Name the two oldest civilisations on which textual criticism has focused.

**Question 3**

Why is there opposition to textual criticism of Jewish and Muslim religious books?

**Question 4**

In what terms can textual criticism be applied to literary works?

**Question 5**

Why do critics hate to focus on Shakespeare?

**Question 6**

Which book did Shakespeare write?

**Question 7**

When were the most recent documents reviewed?

**Question 8**

Is it too taboo to criticise the Torah, the Koran and what other religion?

**Text number 3**

Maas also points out that "the author's revised dictation must be considered as a manuscript in the same way as a handwritten manuscript". The lack of autograph manuscripts applies to many cultures other than Greek and Roman. In such a situation, the key objective is to identify the first example before the tradition breaks down. This example is called an archetype. "If the text [of the archetype] can be identified, the constitutio (reconstruction of the original) will make considerable progress.

**Question 0**

What is your first goal when you try to analyse a new text?

**Question 1**

Why is finding the first example important in textual criticism?

**Question 2**

By the way, what is the name of the model?

**Question 3**

What is the final product of reconstruction?

**Question 4**

What is the second objective when trying to analyse a new text?

**Question 5**

Why is finding the last example important in textual criticism?

**Question 6**

What is called the first product of reconstruction?

**Question 7**

What is the average reconstruction product?

**Question 8**

What is the final product of reconstruction?

**Text number 4**

The ultimate aim of the textual critic is to produce a "critical edition", containing a text that the author has found to be closest to the original, accompanied by an apparatus criticus, or critical apparatus. The critical apparatus presents the author's work in three parts: first, a list or description of the evidence used by the editor (the names of the manuscripts or the abbreviations known as sigla); second, the editor's analysis of this evidence (sometimes a simple probabilistic classification);[citation needed] and third, a record of the rejected alternatives to the text (often in order of ranking)[citation needed].

**Question 0**

What is included in or associated with the "critical edition"?

**Question 1**

What is the purpose of a critical device?

**Question 2**

What is the aim of a textual critic?

**Question 3**

Which text is included in the critical edition?

**Question 4**

What does the first part of a critical device contain?

**Question 5**

What does the second part of the critical equipment contain?

**Question 6**

What is included in the rest of the critical equipment?

**Question 7**

What does the "ultimate edition" include?

**Question 8**

What is the purpose of an abandoned device?

**Question 9**

How many parts are there in a text device?

**Question 10**

What is the fourth part of a critical device?

**Text number 5**

Before machine printing, literature was copied by hand, and many variations were made by copyists. The age of the printing press made the profession of scribe virtually obsolete. Although printed editions are less susceptible to the variations that are likely to arise during manual transcription, they are not immune to the introduction of variations that differ from the author's handwriting. Instead of a scribe miscopying his source work, a compositor or printer may read or write the work in a way that differs from the typescript. Since each scribe or printer makes different mistakes, reconstructing a lost original is often aided by a reading taken from several different sources. An edited text from several sources is called eclectic. In contrast to this approach, some textual critics prefer to identify a single best surviving text rather than to combine readings from several sources.

**Question 0**

Why are there several variations of the texts before the advent of the printing press?

**Question 1**

Are printed editions immune to variation?

**Question 2**

How do differences between works arise when using letterpress?

**Question 3**

What is an edited text compiled from many sources?

**Question 4**

How was literature copied before it was done by hand?

**Question 5**

How was literature copied after mechanical printing?

**Question 6**

How do printing presses produce identical copies?

**Question 7**

Why do text critics prefer to use multiple sources?

**Text number 6**

When comparing different documents or "witnesses" to one original text, the differences found are called reading variants, or simply variations or ways of reading. It is not always clear which single variant represents the author's original work. Textual criticism seeks to explain how each variant may have ended up in the text, either accidentally (duplication or omission) or deliberately (harmonisation or censorship), when scribes or editors transmitted the original author's text by copying it. The task of the textual critic is therefore to sort through the variants and eliminate those that are unlikely to be original, and to produce a "critical text" or critical edition, intended to approximate as closely as possible to the original. At the same time, the critical text should document the variant readings so that the relationship of the existing evidence to the reconstructed original is made clear to the reader of the critical edition. In preparing a critical text, the textual critic takes into account both the 'external' evidence (the age, origin and affiliation of each witness) and the 'internal' or 'physical' evidence (what the author and scribes or printers are likely to have done).

**Question 0**

What are different documents that represent the same original text?

**Question 1**

What are called variations in the text of witnesses?

**Question 2**

How or why do variations feed the witness text?

**Question 3**

What does a critical text have to do, apart from representing the original text?

**Question 4**

Why is it important to document variations in witness texts when drafting a critical text?

**Question 5**

What are similar documents that represent a different text?

**Question 6**

What similarities are there between the texts of the witnesses?

**Question 7**

When do the variants feed the witness text?

**Question 8**

What is the fourth way a textual critic looks at evidence?

**Question 9**

What is the fifth way a textual critic looks at evidence?

**Text number 7**

A compilation of all known variants of a text is called a variorum, or text-critical work, in which all variants and revisions are placed side by side so that the reader can follow how decisions about the text were made in preparation for publication. The Bible and the works of William Shakespeare have often been the subject of variorum editions, but the same technique has rarely been applied to many other works, such as Walt Whitman's Leaves of Grass and Edward Fitzgerald's prose writings.

**Question 0**

What is a variorum?

**Question 1**

What is the purpose of a variorum?

**Question 2**

Name one author who is less often the subject of a vice-orum.

**Question 3**

Name two works that are often the subject of a variorum.

**Question 4**

What is the term for the collection of all unknown variants of a text?

**Question 5**

What is it called when the variants are read separately?

**Question 6**

Which book was not a product of variorum?

**Question 7**

Which author was not part of the variorum?

**Question 8**

What process did Leaves of Grass not go through?

**Text number 8**

Eclectic readings also tend to give an impression of the number of witnesses for each available reading. Although the reading supported by the most witnesses is often preferred, this does not automatically follow. For example, the second edition of a Shakespeare play may contain an addition that refers to an event that is known to have occurred between the two editions. Although almost all later manuscripts may have included an appendix, textual critics may reconstruct the original text without the appendix.

**Question 0**

What is often involved in eclectic reading?

**Question 1**

Why would anyone prefer the second edition to the first edition?

**Question 2**

Do textual critics always take into account the additions found in the majority of later versions of the work?

**Question 3**

What does eclectic reading not do?

**Question 4**

Why do people prefer the first edition of Shakespeare's play?

**Question 5**

Which edition did not contain an addendum referring to the event?

**Question 6**

Text critics can reconstruct the last edition of a work without what?

**Text number 9**

External evidence is evidence about each physical witness, its date, source and relationship to other known witnesses. Critics often prefer the reading methods supported by the oldest witnesses. Because errors tend to accumulate, older manuscripts should have fewer errors. Also, readings supported by the majority of witnesses are generally preferred because they are less likely to reflect accidents or individual biases. For similar reasons, more geographically diverse witnesses are preferred. Some manuscripts show evidence of particular care taken in their preparation, for example by the inclusion of alternative readings in the margins, indicating that more than one earlier copy (exemplar) was consulted in preparing the current manuscript. Other things being equal, these are the best witnesses. The role of the textual critic is necessary when these basic criteria are in conflict. For example, there are usually fewer early passages and more later ones. The textual critic tries to balance these criteria to determine the original text.

**Question 0**

What is external evidence?

**Question 1**

Why are older scripts preferred?

**Question 2**

Which feature of the evidence collection is most useful for the textual critic?

**Question 3**

Which feature of the individual witness is most useful for the textual critic?

**Question 4**

External evidence is evidence about each physical witness, its date, source, relationship to other known witnesses, and what else?

**Question 5**

Why do critics favour the newest witnesses?

**Question 6**

Why do critics prefer a minority of witnesses?

**Question 7**

Why do critics prefer geographically similar witnesses?

**Question 8**

Are there more early copies than what kind of copies?

**Text number 10**

The two general reflections have the Latin names lectio brevior (shorter reading) and lectio difficilior (more difficult reading). The first is the general observation that scribes added words for clarification or out of habit more often than they deleted them. The second, lectio difficilior potior (more difficult reading is stronger), identifies a tendency to harmonise - to resolve apparent inconsistencies in the text. The application of this principle leads to the more difficult (non-harmonised) reading being considered more likely to be original. Such cases include scribes who simplify and smooth out texts that they did not fully understand.

**Question 0**

Define "lectio brevior"

**Question 1**

Define "lectio difficilior"

**Question 2**

What is the main principle of lectio brevior?

**Question 3**

What is the main principle of lectio difficilior?

**Question 4**

Is the lectio brevrio or lectio difficilior approach closer to the original text?

**Question 5**

What is the term "longer reading"?

**Question 6**

What is the term "easier reading"?

**Question 7**

What is the term for reducing words for clarification?

**Question 8**

What is the term for when there are consistencies in a text?

**Text number 11**

Brooke Foss Westcott (1825-1901) and Fenton J. A. Hort (1828-1892) published the Greek edition of the New Testament in 1881. They proposed nine critical rules, including a version of Bengel's rule: "The original is less likely to be the reading which shows a tendency to smooth out difficulties." "They also argued that "reading methods are accepted or rejected on the basis of the quality of their supporting evidence, not the quantity" and that "the reading method that best explains the existence of other reading methods should be preferred". "

**Question 0**

How many rules were proposed in the Greek New Testament published in 1881?

**Question 1**

What is Bengel's rule?

**Question 2**

Does readability correlate with accuracy in relation to the original text?

**Question 3**

Which is more important for a text critic: quality or quantity?

**Question 4**

What criteria are needed to include or exclude textual criticism?

**Question 5**

When did Westcott and Hort meet?

**Question 6**

When did Westcott and Hort go into business together?

**Question 7**

When did they propose the Bengel rule?

**Question 8**

The number of corroborating witnesses explains why the numbers are what?

**Question 9**

Which reading method is less popular?

**Text number 12**

Since the canons of criticism are very open to interpretation and sometimes even contradictory, they can be used to justify a result that fits the textual critic's aesthetic or theological agenda. From the 19th century onwards, scholars sought more rigorous methods to guide editorial criticism. Editing the best texts (a complete rejection of eclecticism) was one extreme. Stemmatics and copy-text editing - while both eclectic in that they allow the editor to select readings from multiple sources - sought to reduce subjectivity by identifying one or a few witnesses, supposedly favoured on the basis of 'objective' criteria. The citation of sources used and alternative reading methods, as well as the use of original text and images, helps readers and other critics to determine to some extent the depth of the critic's research and to independently verify his or her work.

**Question 0**

Is textual criticism immune to the bias of the critic?

**Question 1**

When did researchers start to look for more specific guidelines for textual criticism?

**Question 2**

What inclusion helps readers and critics understand the translator's motivation?

**Question 3**

What else is the point of including sources, texts and original images in your critique?

**Question 4**

Which canons are not open to interpretation?

**Question 5**

Which canons are not contradictory?

**Question 6**

When did researchers stop looking for more rigorous methods?

**Question 7**

The journalist sought to increase subjectivity by what?

**Question 8**

Who could only choose one reading?

**Text number 13**

Stemmatics, stemmology or stemmatology is a rigorous approach to textual criticism. Karl Lachmann (1793-1851), although not the inventor of this method, had a major influence on its popularisation. The method takes its name from the word stemma. The ancient Greek word stemmata and its loanword in classical Latin stemmata can refer to 'family tree'. This specific meaning indicates the family relationship of the living witnesses (the first known example of such a stemmata, albeit with a name, dates from 1827). The family tree is also referred to as a cladogram. This method works on the principle that 'the community of error implies the community of origin'. In other words, if two witnesses have several errors in common, it can be assumed that they originate from a common intermediate source, called a hyparchetype. The relationships between the lost intermediates are determined by the same process, whereby all existing manuscripts are placed in a family tree descended from a single archetype, the stemma codicum. The process of constructing the stemma is called recension, from the Latin recensio.

**Question 0**

What is stemmatics?

**Question 1**

What is a cladogram?

**Question 2**

What is meant when two witnesses have several errors in common?

**Question 3**

What is a hyparchetype?

**Question 4**

What is a recension?

**Question 5**

What is called a loose approach to textual criticism?

**Question 6**

When did Karl Lachmann contribute to the popularisation of canta science?

**Question 7**

How did Lachmann make the population survey famous?

**Question 8**

What is the last stage of a stem cell called?

**Question 9**

Recension and Latin recensio is Latin for what?

**Text number 14**

The Selectio process is similar to eclectic textual criticism, but applied to a limited set of hypothetical hyparches. The stages of examination and emendation are similar to text editing. The other techniques can in fact be seen as special cases of genealogical research in which the strict genealogy of the text cannot be determined but only approximated. If it appears that one manuscript is by far the best text, copy-editing is appropriate, and if it appears that a group of manuscripts is good, eclecticism would be appropriate for this group.

**Question 0**

Which steps are most similar to copy-editing?

**Question 1**

What is the best process to use when only one script is feasible?

**Question 2**

What is the best process to use when there are several usable scripts available?

**Question 3**

What type of criticism does the selectio process not resemble?

**Question 4**

What type of process is not similar to eclectic critique?

**Question 5**

Which steps do not resemble copy-editing?

**Question 6**

What procedure is not used when there are several usable scripts available?

**Question 7**

When the scripts are bad, what process is used?

**Text number 15**

The critic Joseph Bédier (1864-1938) launched a particularly scathing attack on stemmatics in 1928. He examined editions of medieval French texts produced by the stemmatic method and found that textual critics overwhelmingly tended to produce trees that split into only two branches. He concluded that this result was unlikely to be due to chance and that the method thus tended to produce bipartite stems, regardless of the actual history of the witnesses. He suspected that editors tended to favour trees with two branches, as this maximised the chances of editorial discretion (since there would be no third branch to "break the tie" whenever witnesses disagreed). He also pointed out that for many works, more than one reasonable type of stem could be proposed, suggesting that the method was not as rigorous or scientific as its proponents had claimed.

**Question 0**

What was Joseph Bédier's main criticism of the stemmatic method?

**Question 1**

Why is a metos that produces only two branches considered inferior?

**Question 2**

What did Joseph Bédier attribute to the rise of the position method?

**Question 3**

Why would journalists want only two alternative branches of text analysis?

**Question 4**

What was the final result of Joseph Bédier's analysis of the stemmatic method?

**Question 5**

Why did Joseph Bédier favour semantics?

**Question 6**

Why is a method that produces only two branches considered the best?

**Question 7**

Do bifurcated trees minimise the chances of that?

**Question 8**

When the witnesses agree, what did the third branch do?

**Question 9**

Which method was more rigorous than originally claimed?

**Text number 16**

The final step in the carrying method is emendation, sometimes called "default emendation". In fact, however, the critic uses guesswork at every stage of the process. Some of the rules of the method, designed to reduce the use of editorial judgment, may not lead to the right result. For example, if there are more than two witnesses at the same level of the tree, the critic will usually choose the dominant reading. However, it may just be a coincidence that more witnesses have survived who present a particular reading. However, the less frequently occurring credible reading may be the correct one.

**Question 0**

What is the final step of the range method?

**Question 1**

At what point can a critic using stemmatism reduce critical analysis?

**Question 2**

Why can the dominant reading be a weaker reading?

**Question 3**

What is the first step of the range method?

**Question 4**

Which judgment will produce the right result?

**Question 5**

Which reading does a critic choose when there are only two witnesses in the same tree?

**Question 6**

The figure that often appears to the left is always considered to be what?

**Text number 17**

Bibliografi Ronald B. McKerrow introduced the term copy-text in his 1904 edition of Thomas Nashe's works, defining it as 'the text which in each particular case was used as the basis for my text'. McKerrow was aware of the limitations of the cover method and felt that it made more sense to select one particular text that was considered particularly reliable and then correct it only when the text was obviously incorrect. The French critic Joseph Bédier was also disappointed with the stemmatic method and concluded that the editor should select the best available text and change it as little as possible.

**Question 0**

When was the term copy-text introduced?

**Question 1**

What was the original definition of copy-text?

**Question 2**

Explain the process used by McKerrow as an alternative to the range method.

**Question 3**

When did Ronald B. McKerrow was born?

**Question 4**

In what year did Thomas Nashe introduce the term copy-text?

**Question 5**

Thomas Nash is a bibliographer who published the works of whom?

**Question 6**

Which limitations of the method was Nashe aware of?

**Question 7**

Ronald B. McKerror was a French critic who liked what method?

**Text number 18**

By 1939, McKerrow had changed his mind about this approach in his Oxford edition of Shakespeare's Prolegomena, fearing that a later edition - even if it included corrections by the author - would "depart more widely than the earliest edition from the author's original manuscript". He therefore concluded that the correct procedure would be "to produce by using the earliest 'good' edition as a copy-text and adding to it from the first edition, which contains them, such corrections as appear to us to have been made by the author". However, fearing an arbitrary exercise of editorial discretion, McKerrow stated that, having found that the later edition contained substantial corrections by the author, "we must accept all changes in that edition except those which appear to be obvious errors or typographical errors".

**Question 0**

Why did McKerrow change his previous method of criticism?

**Question 1**

How did McKerrow change his approach to copy-text analysis?

**Question 2**

What did McKerrow admit about his new copy-text method?

**Question 3**

In which work did McKerrow first use his new method?

**Question 4**

Which book did Shakespeare publish in 1939?

**Question 5**

On which opinion did McKerrow stand firm?

**Question 6**

How many revisions were made to the early editions?

**Question 7**

McKerrow thinks we should only accept one amendment for what reason?

**Text number 19**

While Greg argued that a journalist should be free to exercise discretion in choosing between competing substantive reading methods, he suggested that a journalist should favour copy when "the claims of the two reading methods ... appear to be exactly balanced". ... While there may be no logical reason to favour copy-text in such a case, in practice, if there is no reason to change the way the text is read, it is obvious to let it stand. " "Exactly balanced" variants are said to be indifferent.

**Question 0**

Are there situations where the supplier's judgment should be deferred?

**Question 1**

What should you do when two readings are contradictory but in balance?

**Question 2**

Why do journalists call variations that are exactly in balance?

**Question 3**

Who has argued that journalists should not be free to use their own discretion?

**Question 4**

Why do journalists call variants that are not in balance?

**Question 5**

What is the term for transformations that are more or less in equilibrium?

**Question 6**

The reporter should not ignore what, when the variants are in balance?

**Text number 20**

After limiting his illustrative examples to English Renaissance drama, where his expertise lay, Bowers argued that justification was "the most workable editorial principle for producing a critical text that is authoritative in as many details as possible, whether the author be Shakespeare, Dryden, Fielding, Nathaniel Hawthorne or Stephen Crane". The principle is sound whatever the literary period. "In the case of works for which an author's manuscript survives - a case Greg had not considered - Bowers concluded that the manuscript should generally be regarded as a copy-text. He cited the example of Nathaniel Hawthorne and stated:

**Question 0**

Is Greg's idea limited to a certain period of time?

**Question 1**

What does the editor do if the author's work has not been erased?

**Question 2**

What are the limitations of Greg's analyses?

**Question 3**

What is the main criticism of Greg's work?

**Question 4**

Who limited his example to the French Renaissance drama?

**Question 5**

Which season of drama was Greg a novice in?

**Question 6**

According to Bowers, the script should not work for what?

**Question 7**

In what respect does the copy-text principle make sense?

**Text number 21**

McKerrow had expressed the aim of textual criticism as "the ideal of a fair copy of the author's work in its final form". Bowers argued that editions based on Greg's method "would represent in every respect the nearest possible approximation to the author's final intentions". Similarly, Bowers stated that it was the publisher's task "to approximate as closely as possible the author's fair copy of the final product". Tanselle states that 'textual criticism ... has generally been practised with a view to reconstructing as accurately as possible the text that the author ultimately intended'.

**Question 0**

What are journalists ultimately trying to achieve?

**Question 1**

If a publisher cannot produce an exact copy of an author's work, what should be the aim?

**Question 2**

What did Bower's say about Greg's method?

**Question 3**

What did Tanselle say about textual criticism?

**Question 4**

What are the editors ultimately trying to prevent?

**Question 5**

What happens when a publisher makes an exact copy of an author's work?

**Question 6**

What did Tanselle say about modern writers?

**Question 7**

Bowers argued that editions based on Greg's method do not represent what?

**Text number 22**

Bowers and Tanselle argue for the rejection of textual variants that the author has added at the suggestion of others. Bowers said that his edition of Stephen Crane's first novel Maggie presented "the author's final and uninfluenced artistic intentions". In his writings, Tanselle refers to "the unqualified authorial intention" or "the unaffected intentions of the author". This marks a difference from Greg, who had only suggested that the editor inquire whether the later reading was "one that the author could reasonably be expected to have substituted for the earlier one", and did not imply any further investigation into why the author had made the change.

**Question 0**

Who has objected to works in which the author listens to the opinions of others?

**Question 1**

Who wanted to find out why the author made changes to the work?

**Question 2**

Does Greg believe that a later work can be replaced by an earlier one?

**Question 3**

What idea was Tanselle advocating?

**Question 4**

Who advocated works where the author listens to the input of others?

**Question 5**

Who wouldn't want to find out why the author made changes to the work?

**Question 6**

Who believes that an earlier work can be replaced by a later one?

**Question 7**

Whose idea was the limited author's intention?

**Text number 23**

Bowers faced a similar problem in his edition of Maggie's. Crane originally had the novel privately printed in 1893. To ensure commercial publication in 1896, Crane agreed to remove the swear words, but he also made stylistic revisions. Bowers' approach was to retain the stylistic and literary changes of 1896, but to return to the 1893 readings, in which he believed Crane was fulfilling the publisher's intentions rather than his own. There were, however, intermediate cases that could reasonably have been attributed to either intention, and some of Bowers' choices came under attack - both in terms of his judgment and whether it was reasonable to combine the readings of Maggie's two different versions.

**Question 0**

What changes did Crane make to ensure commercial publication?

**Question 1**

What was Bower's first step in transforming several works into a single product?

**Question 2**

What was Bower's second stage in the process of transforming several works into a single product?

**Question 3**

What was one of the criticisms Bowers faced after editing Maggie?

**Question 4**

What year was Maggie printed for commercial use?

**Question 5**

What was the first step Bowers took when editing one work of which there are two versions?

**Question 6**

What was Bowers' second step when he edited one work in two versions?

**Question 7**

What changes were made for the commercial release of Maggie?

**Question 8**

When was Maggie first published?

**Question 9**

What changes did Maggie make to ensure commercial publication?

**Question 10**

When did Maggie publish the Bowers edition?

**Question 11**

What was Bower's final step in editing one work into several versions?

**Question 12**

When was the third version of Maggie's released?

**Question 13**

When was the fifth and final version of Maggie's published?

**Text number 24**

Some critics argue that the clear text edition gives too much weight to the edited text, relegates textual variants to hard-to-use appendices and gives the established text a greater sense of certainty than it deserves. As Shillingsburg notes, 'English scholarly editions have tended to use notes at the bottom of the text page, implicitly showing greater modesty towards the "established" text and drawing attention more strongly to at least some alternative forms of the text'.

**Question 0**

Are the annexes easy to use for the average reader?

**Question 1**

Can the reader be sure of the accuracy of the information in the plain language edition?

**Question 2**

How do most journalists get around the citation problems of clear text editing?

**Question 3**

Where can the reader find more information on text options after noticing the footnote?

**Question 4**

Who believes that plain text does not give enough visibility?

**Question 5**

Which are generally easy to use?

**Question 6**

Shillingsburg says, which editions do not use notes at the bottom of the page?

**Question 7**

What does not draw attention to alternative text formats?

**Text number 25**

Cladistics is a technique borrowed from biology, where Willi Hennig originally called it phylogenetic systematics. In biology, the technique is used to determine the evolutionary relationships between different species. In the application of textual criticism, the texts of several different manuscripts are fed into a computer, which records all the differences between them. The manuscripts are then grouped according to their common features. Cladistics differs from more traditional forms of statistical analysis in that, rather than simply arranging the manuscripts into rough groups based on their general similarity, cladistics assumes that they are part of a branching family tree, and uses this assumption to infer relationships between them. This makes it more of an automated approach to phylogeny. However, the computer does not attempt to decide which reading method is closer to the original text, and therefore does not tell which branch of the tree is the "root", i.e. which manuscript tradition is closest to the original text. Other types of evidence must be used for this purpose.

**Question 0**

What is the biological basis of cladistics?

**Question 1**

How does evolution apply to textual criticism?

**Question 2**

How does cladistics resemble the carrying method?

**Question 3**

What is the main difference between cladistics and canthematics?

**Question 4**

What is a technique borrowed from physics?

**Question 5**

What was phylogenetic systematics originally called?

**Question 6**

How is cladistics the opposite of the strain method?

**Question 7**

What is the mathematical basis of cladistics?

**Text number 26**

Although some earlier unpublished studies had been done, it was not until the early 1970s that real textual criticism was applied to the Book of Mormon. At that time, the LDS Church asked BYU professor Ellis Rasmussen and his colleagues to begin work on a new edition of the Holy Scriptures. One part of this work involved digitizing the text and creating appropriate footnotes; another part required determining the most reliable text. For the latter purpose, Stanley R. Larson (a graduate student of Rasmussen) undertook a thesis on the application of modern text-critical standards to the manuscripts and early editions of the Book of Mormon, which he completed in 1974. To do this, Larson carefully examined the Original Manuscript (dictated to his scribes by Joseph Smith) and the Printer's Manuscript (a copy prepared for the printer by Oliver Cowdery between 1829 and 1830) and compared them with the first, second and third editions of the Book of Mormon to determine what changes had occurred over time and to make judgments about which reading styles were most original. Larson went on to publish a useful series of well-argued articles on the phenomena he observed. Many of his findings were incorporated as improvements in the 1981 LDS edition of the Book of Mormon.

**Question 0**

When was textual criticism applied to the Book of Mormon?

**Question 1**

What was one part of the preparation of the new edition of the Holy Scriptures?

**Question 2**

How was the most reliable version of the scriptures determined?

**Question 3**

When did Larson finish his project?

**Question 4**

Whose findings were included in the 1981 publication of the Book of Mormon?

**Question 5**

In what year was real textual criticism no longer applied?

**Question 6**

Which school did Ellis Rasmussen not teach at?

**Question 7**

Which church did not want a new edition of the Holy Scriptures?

**Question 8**

What class did Larson teach at Rasmussen?

**Question 9**

When did Larson start his thesis project?

**Text number 27**

In 1979, when the Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies (FARMS) was established as a non-profit research institute in California, efforts were made under the leadership of Robert F. Smith to take Larson's work into account and publish a critical text of the Book of Mormon. Thus was born the FARMS Critical Text Project, which published the first volume of the Book of Mormon Critical Text in 1984. The third volume of that first edition was published in 1987, but it was about to be replaced by a second, revised edition of the entire work, greatly aided by the advice and assistance of then Yale doctoral student Grant Hardy, Dr. Gordon C. Thomasson, Professor John W. Welch (Director of FARMS), Professor Royal Skousen, and others too numerous to mention here. However, these were only preliminary steps in a much more ambitious and comprehensive project.

**Question 0**

What is FARMS?

**Question 1**

Who led the Book of Mormon Critical Text project?

**Question 2**

How many years did it take to publish all three volumes of the critical text of the Book of Mormon?

**Question 3**

Was the third volume of the first edition sufficient?

**Question 4**

Who is the Director of FARMS?

**Question 5**

When did FARMS cease to exist?

**Question 6**

When was the fifth volume of the Critical Text Project published?

**Question 7**

Which book was published by Grant Hardy in 1987?

**Question 8**

Larson to launch research for what project?

**Question 9**

Who funded FARMS?

**Text number 28**

In 1988, after this initial phase of the project was completed, Professor Skousen took over as editor and director of the FARMS Book of Mormon Critical Text Project and began collecting the still scattered fragments of the original Book of Mormon manuscript and using advanced photographic techniques to obtain fine readings from otherwise illegible pages and fragments. He also closely examined the printed manuscript (owned by the Community of Christ-RLDS Church in Independence, Missouri) for ink or pencil differences to determine when and by whom they were made. He also compiled the various editions of the Book of Mormon up to the present day to see what changes have been made to them over time.

**Question 0**

When was the first phase completed?

**Question 1**

Who took over after the initial phase?

**Question 2**

Why did Professor Skousen collect the fragments and analyse them?

**Question 3**

What process was used to examine the fragments collected?

**Question 4**

Where does Skousen analyse ink and pencil residues from?

**Question 5**

In what year was the final phase of the project completed?

**Question 6**

Professor Skousen left which post in 1988?

**Question 7**

Who sold out the community of Christ's church?

**Question 8**

Where did Skousen remove the ink and pencil residue?

**Text number 29**

Shemaryahu Talmon, who summarized the amount of consensus and the genetic relationship to the original text of the Hebrew Bible, concluded that major discrepancies that substantially affect meaning are extremely rare. For the Hebrew Bible, as referenced in the Old Testament, almost all textual variations are quite insignificant and hardly affect any doctrine. Professor Douglas Stuart says: "It is reasonable to say that the verses, chapters and books of the Bible would read much the same and leave the reader with the same impression, even if virtually all possible alternative readings were adopted to those that now serve as the basis for modern English translations."

**Question 0**

How common are textual variations that change the meaning of the original text of the Hebrew Bible?

**Question 1**

To what extent do Old Testament variations change the meaning?

**Question 2**

Who claims that the Old Testament is essentially the same in all its variants?

**Question 3**

How many Old Testament versions offer the same meaning?

**Question 4**

Which book did Douglas Stuart summarise?

**Question 5**

How many text variants are significant?

**Question 6**

How many variations significantly change the doctrine?

**Question 7**

Stuart thought the Bible was largely different because of what?

**Text number 30**

Although textual criticism developed as a discipline of in-depth analysis of the Bible - both the Hebrew Bible and the New Testament - it is also used by scholars to determine the original content of classical texts such as Plato's Republic. There is much less evidence for classical texts than for the Bible, so scholars can use stemmatics and, in some cases, copying of texts. However, unlike the New Testament, where the earliest witnesses are within about 200 years of the original, the earliest existing manuscripts of most classical texts were written about a millennium after they were composed. Textual scholars expect that the greater the time gap between the original and the manuscript, the more changes have been made to the text.

**Question 0**

Does the Bible or Plato's Republic have more witnesses?

**Question 1**

What is the difference between the original Christian texts and later editions of the same works?

**Question 2**

What is the difference between the original classical texts and later editions of the same works?

**Question 3**

How does the length of time correlate with the authenticity of the original and later versions of the texts?

**Question 4**

Plato's Republic has more witnesses than where?

**Question 5**

Which works have fewer witnesses in the Bible?

**Question 6**

When were the last witnesses to the New Testament?

**Question 7**

Text researchers expect a smaller time gap between the original and what?

**Question 8**

There are fewer changes in the text when there is a larger what?

**Text number 31**

Scientific and critical editions can be protected by copyright as works if they are sufficiently creative/original. Merely adding a word or replacing a term with another term that is considered more correct is usually not sufficient to reach the level of originality/creativity. Any notes that set out the analysis and why and how the changes were made constitute a distinct work that is independently copyrightable if the other requirements are met. In the European Union, critical and scientific editions may also be protected by the relevant neighbouring right protecting critical and scientific publications of public domain works, as allowed by Art. 5. Not all EU Member States have transposed Article 5 into national law.

**Question 0**

What are the criteria for copyright?

**Question 1**

What minor things can be included in a copyright without invalidating the copyright?

**Question 2**

Are footnotes included in the copyright of the original work?

**Question 3**

What rights do scientific publications have in the EU?

**Question 4**

What does not matter in order to be protected by copyright?

**Question 5**

What small things can be included and fixed in copyright?

**Question 6**

What can be done to protect non-scientific editions?

**Question 7**

What is not protected by copyright?

**Question 8**

What have all EU countries transposed into national law?

**Document number 262**

**Text number 0**

A gramophone record (American English phonograph record) or vinyl record, commonly known as a "record", is an analogue sound recording medium that is a flat polyvinyl chloride (formerly cellulose) record with a modulated helical track. The groove usually starts near the edge of the record and ends near the centre of the record. The discs are usually described by their diameter in inches (12", 10", 7"), the rotational speed in revolutions per minute at which they are played (16 2⁄3, 33 1⁄3, 45, 78), and their time capacity, resulting from the combination of these parameters (LP - long-playing 33 1⁄3 rpm, SP - 78 rpm single phonograph record, EP - 12-inch single phonograph record or extended phonograph record, 33 or 45 rpm phonograph record); their playback quality or degree of reproduction accuracy (high-fidelity sound, orthophonic record, full-voice record, etc.).)); and the number of audio channels (mono, stereo, quad, etc.).

**Question 0**

What does LP mean in terms of time capacity?

**Question 1**

What are the common diameters of records?

**Question 2**

What is a gramophone or vinyl record?

**Question 3**

Where does a vinyl career usually start?

**Question 4**

Which method is used to measure the rotation speed?

**Text number 1**

The phonograph record was the primary medium for music reproduction until the late 20th century, and in the late 1920s it replaced the phonograph cylinder, with which it had coexisted from the late 1880s until the 1920s. By the late 1980s, the digital medium, the CD, had gained a larger market share, and the vinyl record went out of the mainstream in 1991. From the 1990s to the 2010s, vinyl records were produced and sold on a much smaller scale, used mainly by DJs, released by artists in some genres and listened to by a small number of audiophiles. The early 2000s have seen a resurgence of audio albums - 9.2 million albums were sold in the US in 2014, up 260% from 2009. Similarly, in the UK, sales have increased fivefold between 2009 and 2014.

**Question 0**

What was the primary purpose of the record?

**Question 1**

In what year did vinyl records disappear from the main steam media market?

**Question 2**

Who was the main consumer of vinyl records from the 1990s to the 2010s?

**Question 3**

How many records were sold in 2014?

**Question 4**

What is the niche market for record enthusiasts?

**Text number 2**

The phonautograph, patented by Léon Scott in 1857, used a vibrating film and pen to record sound waves as a graphic on a sheet of paper for visual analysis only, and not for reproduction. Sound engineers first scanned these traces in the 2000s and digitally converted them into audible sound. The vocal and speech recordings made by Scott in 1860 were first reproduced as audio in 2008. Along with the sound of a tuning fork and unintelligible snippets recorded as early as 1857, these are the earliest known audio recordings.

**Question 0**

What was the original purpose of the phonautograph?

**Question 1**

In what years were phonautograms converted into audible sound?

**Question 2**

What year were the earliest known sound recordings?

**Question 3**

Who patented phonautograms?

**Question 4**

In what year were phonautograms patented?

**Text number 3**

In 1877, Thomas Edison invented the phonograph. Unlike the phonautograph, it could both record and play back sound. Despite the similarity of the names, there are no documents to show that Edison's phonograph was based on Scott's phonautograph. Edison first experimented with recording sound on waxed paper tape, and his idea was to create a 'phonograph' similar to the telegraph machine he was working on. Although the visible results convinced him that sound could be physically recorded and played back, his notes show that he did not actually play back the sound until his first experiment, in which he used foil as a recording medium several months later. The foil was wrapped around a grooved metal cylinder, and a sound-vibrating nail pressed against the foil as the cylinder was rotated. The recording could be played back instantly. An article in Scientific American introducing the foliophonograph to the public cited Marey, Rosapelly and Barlow and Scott as the developers of devices that recorded sound but did not play it back. Edison also invented variations of the phonograph using tape and disc formats. Numerous applications were envisaged for the phonograph, but although it was in vogue for a while as a striking novelty for public performances, the foliophonograph proved too crude to be used in practice. A decade later, Edison developed a much improved phonograph using a hollow wax cylinder instead of a foil plate. This proved to be both better sounding and a much more useful and durable device. The wax phonograph cylinder created the sound recording market in the late 1880s and dominated it in the early years of the 20th century.

**Question 0**

In what year did Thomas Edison invent the phonograph?

**Question 1**

How did a phonograph differ from a phonautograph?

**Question 2**

What was unique about Einstein's invention?

**Question 3**

When was the voice market introduced?

**Text number 4**

Emile Berliner developed laterally cut recordings in the United States and named his system the "gramophone" to distinguish it from Edison's wax cylinder "phonograph" and Columbia's wax cylinder "graphophone". The earliest Berliner records, first marketed in 1889 but only in Europe, were 13 cm (5 inches) in diameter and played on a small hand-operated machine. Both the discs and the machine were only suitable as toys or curiosities because the sound quality was poor. In 1894, Berliner began marketing records with a somewhat more substantial entertainment value in the United States under the Berliner Gramophone brand, as well as somewhat more substantial gramophones to play them. The sound quality of Berliner's records was poor compared to wax cylinders, but his production partner Eldridge R. Johnson eventually improved the sound quality. In 1901, the separate companies of Johnson and Berliner abandoned the Berliner "Gramophone" trademark for legal reasons and re-formed the Victor Talking Machine Company, whose products dominated the market for many years. Emile Berliner moved his company to Montreal in 1900. The factory that became RCA Victor still exists. There is a museum dedicated to Berliner in Montreal.

**Question 0**

What is the name of the side cut panels?

**Question 1**

What was the problem that was found in the Berlin records in the first place?

**Question 2**

Where were side cut panels developed?

**Question 3**

What is Victor Talking Machine known as today?

**Question 4**

Where is the museum dedicated to Berliner?

**Text number 5**

In 1901, 10-inch discs were introduced, and in 1903, 12-inch discs. These discs had a playing time of more than three and four minutes, while modern cylinders only lasted about two minutes. Edison tried to counter the record's lead and in 1909 introduced the Amberol cylinder, which had a maximum playing time of 4½ minutes (160 revolutions per minute). Instead, Blue Amberol Records were introduced, with a playing surface made of celluloid, a plastic material that was much less brittle. Despite these improvements, records won this early format war decisively in the 1910s, although Edison continued to produce new Blue Amberol record cylinders for a dwindling customer base until the end of 1929. By 1919, the basic patents for the manufacture of side-cut discs had expired, opening up the possibility for countless companies to manufacture discs. Analogue discs dominated the home entertainment market until they were superseded by the digital CD in the late 1980s (and replaced by digital audio recordings distributed through online music stores and Internet file sharing).

**Question 0**

What was the name of the record Edison presented in 1909?

**Question 1**

What year did the patent on side-cut plates expire?

**Question 2**

Which format dominated the market in the late 1980s?

**Question 3**

Which record format was the least fragile before 1919?

**Question 4**

What was the playing surface of the blue amerbol cylinder discs made of?

**Text number 6**

Early recordings were made entirely acoustically, the sound being collected on a horn and conducted to a membrane that vibrated the cutting blade. The sensitivity and frequency range were poor, and the frequency response was very irregular, giving the acoustic recordings an immediately recognisable tonal quality. The singer practically had to press his face into the recording horn. Orchestral instruments such as cellos and double basses were often doubled (or replaced) by louder wind instruments such as tuba. Ordinary violins in orchestral ensembles were commonly replaced by Stroh violins, which became popular in recording studios.

**Question 0**

What were the two drawbacks of the early recordings?

**Question 1**

How could you make early recordings?

**Question 2**

What kind of violins are best suited to early recordings?

**Question 3**

Which instruments were not recorded well?

**Question 4**

What was the frequency response in early recordings?

**Text number 7**

Contrary to popular belief, drums could be used and heard effectively even in the earliest recordings of jazz and military brass bands, provided they were correctly placed and prepared for. The loudest instruments, such as drums and trumpets, were placed furthest away from the chorus. Lillian Hardin Armstrong, a member of King Oliver's Creole Jazz Band, which recorded for Gennett Records in 1923, recalled that at first Oliver and his young second trumpet player Louis Armstrong stood side by side and Oliver's horn could not be heard. "They put Louis about 50 feet away in the corner and he looked sad. " To fade instrumental parts in and out during the recording, some performers were placed on a movable platform to pull the performer(s) closer or further away as needed[citation needed].[citation needed].

**Question 0**

What tool was used to improve sound quality in early recordings for special effects?

**Question 1**

Where were the loud instruments best placed to achieve good sound quality?

**Question 2**

How far away has the trumpeter been known to stand?

**Question 3**

Were drums heard in early jazz recordings?

**Question 4**

What was the name of the object used to record the sounds?

**Text number 8**

In the first half of the 1920s, engineers at Western Electric and independent inventors like Orlando Marsh developed a technology that allowed sound to be recorded by a microphone, amplified by vacuum tubes and the amplified signal used to control an electromagnetic recording head. Western Electric's innovations led to a much wider and smoother frequency response, creating a much fuller, clearer and more natural sounding recording. It was now possible to record distant or less powerful sounds that were not possible with the old methods. The volume was now limited only by the groove spacing of the disc and the limitations of the playback equipment used. Victor and Columbia licensed the new electronic system from Western Electric and began releasing electronically recorded discs in 1925. The first classical music recordings were Chopin's Impromptus and Schubert's Litany, recorded for Victor by Alfred Cortot.

**Question 0**

What was the early device used for sound amplification?

**Question 1**

Which company was vital in the development of high-quality sound recordings?

**Question 2**

How early did electronically recorded discs start to be sold?

**Question 3**

What was new about the way Western Electrics recorded sound?

**Question 4**

How could the sounds produced by Western Electric be described?

**Text number 9**

Electronic storage preceded electronic home production due to the high initial costs of the new system. In 1925, the Victor company introduced the Victor Orthophonic Victrola, an acoustic turntable designed specifically for playing electrically recorded discs, as part of a range that also included Electrolas, which played electrically recorded discs. Prices for the acoustic Orthophones ranged from $95 to $300, depending on the cabinet; for comparison, the cheapest Electrola cost $650, the price of a new Ford car at a time when an office worker's salary was about $20 a week.

**Question 0**

What was the drawback of early home recording systems?

**Question 1**

What was the original price range of the earliest recording devices?

**Question 2**

What year was Victor Orthophonic Victrola released?

**Question 3**

What was the typical weekly wage of a worker in 1925?

**Question 4**

Which options affected the price of Victor Orthophonic Victorla?

**Text number 10**

The earliest boards (1889-1894) were made of different materials, such as hard rubber. Around 1895, a cellulose-based mixture was introduced and became the standard. The exact formulas of this mixture varied from manufacturer to manufacturer and over time, but it generally consisted of about one-third cellulose and about two-thirds mineral filler, which meant finely ground stone, usually slate and limestone, to which were added cotton fibres to increase tensile strength, carbon black to give the colour (without this it was usually a 'dirty' grey or brown, which most record companies found objectionable) and a very small amount of lubricant to ease the mould's release during manufacture. Some manufacturers, notably Columbia Records, used a laminating structure with a core sheet of coarser material or fibre. The production of celluloid records continued until the end of the 78 rpm format (i.e. the late 1950s in most developed countries, but well into the 1960s in some others), but in its declining years increasingly less abrasive compositions were used, and very late, truly mint condition records can have noise levels as low as vinyl.

**Question 0**

What materials were used to make the plates between 1889 and 1894?

**Question 1**

What was the standard material for records around 1895?

**Question 2**

Which company was known for building laminate panels?

**Question 3**

What material gives vinyl records their famous black colour?

**Question 4**

What material is used to remove vinyl records from the mould?

**Text number 11**

At various times during the 78 rpm era, several manufacturers introduced flexible or so-called "unbreakable" discs made of unusual materials. In the United Kingdom, Nicole discs, made of celluloid or similar material coated on a cardboard core, were produced for a few years from 1904, but suffered from exceptionally high surface noise. In the United States, Columbia Records introduced flexible, fibre-coated "Marconi Velvet Tone Record" in 1907, but the advantages of their relatively soundless surface and their longevity depended on the conscientious use of special gold-plated Marconi needles, and the product was not a success. Thin, flexible plastic sheets, such as the German Phonycord and the British Filmophone and Goodson records, appeared around 1930, but these too did not last long. Equally short-lived were the French Pathé Cellodiscs, which were made of a very thin black plastic that bears a striking resemblance to the 'phonograph record' leaflets of vinyl records of the 1965-1985 era. In the US, the Hit of the Week records, made of a patented translucent plastic called Durium, coated with a heavy brown paper base, were introduced in the early 1930s. A new issue appeared every week, and they were sold on newsstands like weeklies. Although initially inexpensive and commercially successful, they soon fell victim to the Great Depression and production in the US ceased in 1932. Similar Durium records were produced some time later in the UK and elsewhere, and as late as 1950 in Italy, where the name "Durium" remained the trademark for ordinary vinyl records well into the LP era. Despite all these attempts at innovation, cellulose compounds continued to be used in the vast majority of commercial 78 rpm records throughout the life of the format.

**Question 0**

What was the major downfall of Durium Records' success?

**Question 1**

In what year were Durium records no longer released in the US?

**Question 2**

What are most 78 rpm discs made of?

**Question 3**

What was a common problem with early flexible recordings?

**Question 4**

What was the name of the thin translucent plastic that was most successfully used to make records?

**Text number 12**

In 1931, RCA Victor introduced its vinyl-based Victrolac compound as a material for some unusual and specialty records. By the late 1930s, vinyl's lightness, relative unbreakability and low surface noise made it the preferred material for pre-recorded radio programs and other critical applications. For conventional 78 rpm records, the much higher cost of the raw material and its vulnerability to heavy mufflers and coarse mass-produced steel needles, still commonly used in home recorders, made the general substitution of vinyl for cellulose impractical at the time. During World War II, the US armed forces manufactured thousands of 12-inch vinyl 78 rpm V-records for use by troops overseas. After the war, the wider use of vinyl became more practical as new turntables with relatively lightweight crystal mufflers and precision-ground pens made of sapphire or an exotic osmium alloy became common. In late 1945, RCA Victor began offering De Luxe special editions of some classic 78 vinyl records in transparent red vinyl at de luxe prices. Later, Decca Records introduced vinyl Deccalite 78s, and other record companies developed vinyl alloys such as Metrolite, Merco Plastic and Sav-o-flex, but these were mainly used to make "unbreakable" children's records and thin vinyl DJ pressings for radio stations.

**Question 0**

What material did RCA Victor use for the special discs?

**Question 1**

What were Metrolite and Sav-o-flex materials primarily used for?

**Question 2**

What year was Victrolac compound released?

**Question 3**

What were the advantages of vinyl in the 1930s?

**Question 4**

What was the downfall of ordinary 78 rpm vinyls in a household?

**Text number 13**

In the 1890s, the earliest (toy) discs were mainly 12.5 cm (nominally 5 inches) in diameter; by the mid-1890s, discs were usually 7 inches (nominally 17.5 cm) in diameter. By 1910, the 10-inch (25.4 cm) disc was by far the most popular standard, holding about three minutes of music or other entertainment on one side. From 1903 onwards, 12-inch (30.5 cm) discs were also sold commercially, mostly containing classical music or opera performances, with between four and five minutes of music per side. Victor, Brunswick and Columbia also released 12-inch popular music discs, usually featuring the score of a Broadway show. However, other sizes were also released. Eight-inch discs, with a 51 mm (2-inch) diameter disc, were popular in Britain for about a decade, but cannot be played in their entirety on most modern turntables because the sound arm cannot play far enough to the centre without modifying the equipment.

**Question 0**

What was the most popular record size by 1910?

**Question 1**

How long could a record be on a 10-inch disc in 1903?

**Question 2**

How small were the first released albums?

**Question 3**

What was one of the problems with the demand for popular records in the UK?

**Question 4**

Which disk could hold about three minutes of recording on each side?

**Text number 14**

The playing time of a record depended on the speed of the turntable and the groove pitch. In the early 1900s, the first records played for two minutes, which was the same as the first cylinder records. The 12-inch record introduced by Victor in 1903 extended the playing time to three and a half minutes. Since a 10-inch 78 rpm record could hold about three minutes of sound per side, and since 10 inches was the standard size for popular music, almost all popular music recordings were limited to about three minutes. For example, when King Oliver's Creole Jazz Band, which Louis Armstrong was part of for his first recordings, recorded 13 sides at the Gennett Records label in Richmond, Indiana in 1923, one side was 2:09 and four sides were 2:52-2:59.

**Question 0**

What factors affect the playing time of a turntable?

**Question 1**

What was the general playing time in the early 1900s?

**Question 2**

How many recordings did Kind Oliver's Creole Jazz band need?

**Question 3**

What was the standard size record for popular music?

**Question 4**

What was the available recording time for a 12-inch disc?

**Text number 15**

In January 1938, Milt Gabler began recording for his new record company, Commodore Records, and to allow for longer continuous performances, he recorded some 12-inch discs. Eddie Condon explained: "Gabler realised that the jam session needed space to develop." The first two 12-inch recordings did not take advantage of the extra length: 'Carnegie Drag' was 3:15; 'Carnegie Jump', 2:41. But at the second session on April 30, both 12-inch recordings were longer: "Embraceable You" was 4:05; "Serenade to a Shylock," 4:32. Another way around the time limit was to release a selection on both sides of one disc. Vaudeville stars Gallagher and Shean recorded "Mr. Gallagher and Mr. Shean," written by Irving and Jack Kaufman, for Cameo in 1922 on two sides of a 10-inch 78. The obvious solution for longer recordings was to release a series of discs. An early multi-disc release was in 1903, when HMV in England made the first recording of a complete opera, Verdi's Ernan, on 40 single-sided discs. In 1940, Commodore released a recording by Eddie Condon and his band, A Good Man Is Hard to Find, in four parts, released on both sides of two 12-inch 78s. This restriction on the duration of recordings continued from 1910 until the invention of the LP in 1948. In popular music, this time limit of about 3:30 minutes on a 10-inch 78 rpm record meant that singers did not usually release long songs on disc. One exception is Frank Sinatra's recording on 28 May 1946 of Rodgers and Hammerstein's "Soliloquy", Carousel. Since the song was 7:57 in duration, longer than both sides of a standard 78 rpm 10-inch disc, it was released on Columbia's Masterwork label (classical music department) as two sides of a 12-inch disc. The same was true of John Raitt's performance of the song on Carousel's original acting disc, released on the American Decca 78 rpm disc set in 1945.

**Question 0**

On which label did Frank Sinatra release his Soliloquy album?

**Question 1**

What was the typical recording time of a song in 1948?

**Question 2**

What was the way the musicians got the sounds in such short recording times?

**Question 3**

How many sides of the disc are there in general?

**Text number 16**

The German record company Odeon is often said to have pioneered the album in 1909, when it released Tchaikovsky's Nutcracker series on four double-sided discs in specially designed packaging (the size of the discs is not stated.) However, the previous year Deutsche Grammophon had produced an album of the complete recording of the opera Carmen. Other record companies do not appear to have adopted the practice of releasing albums widely for many years; however, HMV did provide an album with a pictorial cover for a recording of The Mikado (Gilbert & Sullivan), made in 1917.

**Question 0**

What was unique about Odeon's 1909 Nutcracker Suite?

**Question 1**

What was one of the first publications to have a photograph on its cover?

**Question 2**

When were albums said to be groundbreaking?

**Question 3**

What was one of the first albums you released?

**Text number 17**

By about 1910,[note 1] photo album-like bound collections of empty sleeves with cardboard or leather covers were being sold for customers to use to store their records (some covers had the term "record album" printed on them). These albums were available in both 10" and 12" sizes. The covers of these bound books were wider and higher than the discs inside them, which allowed the album to be placed on the shelf vertically like a book, leaving the delicate discs above the shelf and protected.

**Question 0**

When were record covers first found?

**Question 1**

What were the early record covers made of?

**Question 2**

What sizes of disc trays were available?

**Question 3**

How were the album covers to be preserved?

**Question 4**

What was the purpose of the album covers?

**Text number 18**

In the 1930s, record companies began to release 78 rpm collections of records by a single artist or of a single genre of music as specially assembled albums, usually with illustrations on the front cover and notes on the back or inside cover. Most albums contained three or four discs, each with two sides, i.e. six or eight tracks per album. When the era of 12-inch vinyl LPs began in 1949, a single disc often had the same or similar number of tracks as a typical 78-disc album, and was still often called an "album".

**Question 0**

When were albums widely released as we know them today?

**Question 1**

What is typically on the front cover of an album?

**Question 2**

How many discs were usually on an album?

**Question 3**

When did the era of vinyl LPs begin?

**Question 4**

How many songs did most albums contain?

**Text number 19**

A small number of 78 rpm records have been released since the major labels ceased production, either for collectors or nostalgia purposes, or because of the 78 rpm speed and the higher quality sound reproduction offered by newer vinyl records and their lightweight stylus pickups. One of the first attempts was in the 1950s, when inventor Ewing Dunbar Nunn founded Audiophile Records, a record company that, in addition to the standard 33 1/3 rpm LPs, released 78 rpm mastered records that were micro-formed and pressed onto vinyl (as opposed to traditional 78 rpm records, which had a cellulose composition and wider grooves of 3 mm). The record company did this mainly to take advantage of the wider audio frequency response range that faster speeds like 78 rpm could offer vinyl records, hence the record company's name (apparently for audiophiles of the "hi-fi era" of the 1950s, when stereo equipment could offer a much wider audio range than before). Bell Records also released some inexpensive 7" microdiscs at 78 rpm in the late 1950s.

**Question 0**

What are the reasons for the recent releases of 78 rpm vinyls?

**Question 1**

What is the point of the newer releases of 78 rpm speed vinyls?

**Question 2**

Who released 7" microdiscs in the 1950s?

**Question 3**

What benefits have been observed from vinyl in the 1950s?

**Question 4**

Who founded Audiophile Records?

**Text number 20**

In 1968, Reprise planned to release a series of 78 rpm singles from their then artists under the name Reprise Speed Series. Only one record was released, Randy Newman's I Think It's Going to Rain Today, a track from his debut album of the same name (the flip side of which was The Beehive State). Reprise did not continue the series because the single did not sell enough and because the concept did not appeal to the general public. Guitarist and singer Leon Redbone released a promotional album in 1978 which included two songs (Alabama Jubilee and Please Don't Talk About Me When I'm Gone) from his Champagne Charlie album. In 1980, Stiff Records in the UK released Joe "King" Carrasco's 78-drum album, which included the songs Buena (Spanish for "good", the label alternatively spells it "Bueno") and Tuff Enuff. Underground cartoonist and 78 rpm record collector Robert Crumb released three albums with his band Cheap Suit Serenaders in the 1980s.

**Question 0**

In what year was Reprise planning to release a series of 78 rpm singles?

**Question 1**

Which record was released by Reprise in 78 rpm format?

**Question 2**

Which two songs were included on Leon Redbone's 1978 78 rpm release?

**Question 3**

Which record company released the "Buena" and "Tuff Enuff" albums in 1980?

**Question 4**

Why did Reprise only release one 78 rpm vinyl?

**Text number 21**

In the 1990s, Rhino Records released a series of boxed 78 rpm reissues of early rock and roll hits aimed at owners of old jukeboxes. This was a disaster because Rhino failed to warn customers that their records were vinyl and that 78 rpm jukeboxes were designed with heavy-duty tone stems and steel needles to play the hard-hitting cello records of their day. This failure to warn customers gave the Rhino 78s a bad name, as they were destroyed by the old jukeboxes and old turntables, but played very well on the newer 78 turntables with modern lightweight tonearms and jeweled nails.

**Question 0**

When did Rhino Records release a 78 rpm disc for jukebox owners?

**Question 1**

What was the result of using this 78 reel vinyl release when it was used in vintage jukeboxes?

**Question 2**

What was needed to play the newer 79 rpm vinyl?

**Question 3**

Who was the 78 rpm disc released in 1990 intended for?

**Question 4**

How did the release of 78 rpm in 1990 affect Rhino Records?

**Text number 22**

In 1931, RCA Victor introduced the first commercially available vinyl long-playing disc, marketed as a program record. These revolutionary records were designed to play at 33 1⁄3 rpm, were pressed on a 30 cm diameter flexible plastic disc, and had a playing time of about ten minutes per side. The early introduction of RCA Victor long-playing records failed commercially for a number of reasons, including the lack of affordable and reliable consumer playback equipment and consumer caution during the Great Depression. Due to the financial difficulties facing the recording industry at the time (and RCA's own meagre revenues), Victor's long-playing record production was discontinued by early 1933.

**Question 0**

What was the playing time of the programme transcription discs?

**Question 1**

How successful were RCA Victor's programme discs?

**Question 2**

When did RCA Victor release long-playing records?

**Question 3**

Who released the first commercial long play records?

**Question 4**

By when did they stop playing long-playing records?

**Text number 23**

Vinyl's lower surface finish than cellulose was not forgotten, nor was its durability. In the late 1930s, radio advertisements and pre-recorded radio programmes sent on recorders began to be stamped on vinyl to prevent them from breaking in the post. For the same reason, in the mid-1940s, special DJ copies of records began to be made on vinyl. These were all 78 rpm records. During and after World War II, when cellulose was in very short supply, some 78 rpm records were printed on vinyl instead of cellulose, notably the six-minute 12-inch (30 cm) 78 rpm records made by V-Disc and distributed to US troops in World War II. In the 1940s, transcripts of radio broadcasts, usually on 16-inch discs but sometimes on 12-inch discs, were always made on vinyl but cut at 33 1⁄3 rpm. Shorter transcripts were often cut at 78 rpm.

**Question 0**

What was the benefit of using vinyl instead of shellac?

**Question 1**

What material were records made of by the mid-1940s?

**Question 2**

What influenced the availability of pulp?

**Question 3**

Which material was more durable, shellac or vinyl?

**Question 4**

What material was used to make most of the recordings posted?

**Text number 24**

Starting in 1939, Dr. Peter Goldmark and his staff at Columbia Records and CBS Laboratories set out to solve the problems of narrow-track recording and playback and to develop an affordable and reliable consumer playback system. The research lasted about eight years, except when it was interrupted by World War II. Finally, at a press conference in New York on June 18, 1948, the Columbia Record Company introduced the 12-inch (30 cm) Long Play (LP) 33 1⁄3 rpm microwave record.

**Question 0**

What caused the delay in the production of high-quality records?

**Question 1**

Who released the 12-inch LP?

**Question 2**

On what day was the 12-inch LP released?

**Question 3**

In which city was the 12 in LP released?

**Question 4**

How long did it take Columbia to produce a consumer-friendly long-playing record?

**Text number 25**

Unwilling to accept and license the Columbia system, RCA Victor, in collaboration with its parent company Radio Corporation of America, released the first 45 rpm single in February 1949, which was 7 inches in diameter with a large centre hole. The 45 rpm player had a changer mechanism that allowed multiple discs to be stacked in the same way that a traditional changer handled 78s. The short playing time of a single 45 rpm meant that long works such as symphonies had to be released on multiple 45s instead of a single LP, but RCA claimed that the new high-speed changer made the side breaks so short that they were inaudible or insignificant. Early 45 rpm records were made of either vinyl or polystyrene. They had a playing time of eight minutes.

**Question 0**

What did RCA release to complement the Columbia LP?

**Question 1**

What materials were the 45 rpm discs made of?

**Question 2**

What was the playing time of 45 rpm?

**Question 3**

What was the size of the RCA Victor 45 rpm disc?

**Text number 26**

Mention should be made of one early attempt to extend playing time. At least one manufacturer in the early 1920s, World Records, produced records with a constant playing speed, controlled by an additional control device patented by Noel Pemberton Billing. As the records were played from the outside in, their rotation speed increased as playback progressed. This operation is similar (though in reverse) to that of the modern CD and its predecessor, the CLV version of the Philips laser disc.

**Question 0**

Who had tried to publish a recording of a long playing time in the 1920s?

**Question 1**

What caused the constant speed?

**Question 2**

What was unique about the world records?

**Question 3**

What was the CLV of the World Records CLV of the item currently in use?

**Text number 27**

In 1925, 78.26 revolutions per minute was chosen as the standard because of the introduction of the electrically driven synchronous turntable motor. The engine speed was 3,600 rpm, so the 46:1 gear ratio produced 78.26 rpm. In parts of the world where 50 Hz power was used, the standard was 77.92 rpm (3 000 rpm at 77:2), which was also the speed at which a strobe disk with 77 lines "stopped" in 50 Hz light (92 lines in 60 Hz light). After the Second World War, these discs were retrospectively known as 78 to distinguish them from other newer disc formats. Previously, they were simply called records, or when they wanted to distinguish them from cylinders, discs.

**Question 0**

What gear ratio gives 78.26 rpm?

**Question 1**

What year was 78.26 rpm chosen as the standard?

**Question 2**

How many revolutions per minute did the electrically driven synchronous turanable motor run?

**Question 3**

Why are these discs called 78s?

**Text number 28**

The older 78 format continued to be mass-produced alongside newer formats using new materials until around 1960 in the US and in some countries, such as India (where some Beatles recordings were released in 78 format), until the 1960s. For example, Columbia Records' last reissue of Frank Sinatra songs on 78 rpm was the album Young at Heart, released on 1 November 1954. As late as the 1970s, some children's albums were still being released at 78 rpm. In the UK, 78 rpm singles lasted longer than in the US, and the popularity of 45 rpm records lasted longer. 78 rpm overtook 45 rpm in popularity in the late 1950s as teenagers became increasingly affluent.

**Question 0**

When did 45 rpm gain popularity over 78 rpm?

**Question 1**

Among which audience did 45 laps per minute gain popularity?

**Question 2**

When did 79 rpm stop being mass-produced?

**Question 3**

On what day did Columbia release its last 78 albums?

**Question 4**

Which was the last country to abandon the 78 rpm record?

**Text number 29**

Some of Elvis Presley's early singles on Sun Records may have sold more as 78s than 45s. This is because most sales in 1954-55 were in the "hillbilly" market of the South and Southwestern United States, where replacing the family 78 rpm player with a new 45 rpm player was a luxury few could afford at the time. In late 1957, RCA Victor announced that 78 rpm records accounted for less than 10% of Presley's single sales, effectively spelling the death of the 78 rpm format. Presley's last 78-rpm single in the US was RCA Victor 20-7410, I Got Stung/One Night (1958), and his last 78-rpm single in the UK was RCA 1194, A Mess Of Blues/Girl Of My Best Friend (1960).

**Question 0**

What percentage of Elvis Presley's single sales were 78s?

**Question 1**

What was the last 78 released by RCA in the UK?

**Question 2**

Why did Elvis 78s sell so well in the South?

**Question 3**

On which label did Elvis release his early singles?

**Question 4**

What was the last Elvis Presley single to be released on 78?

**Text number 30**

After World War II, two new competing formats came onto the market, gradually replacing the 78: 33 1⁄3 rpm (often just 33 rpm) and 45 rpm (see above). Columbia Records developed the 33 1⁄3 rpm LP (long-playing) format and launched it in June 1948. RCA Victor developed the 45 rpm format and launched it in March 1949, both conducting their own research and development in secret. Both new types of discs used narrower grooves intended to be played with a smaller stylus - typically 0.001 inch (25 µm) wide, compared to 0.003 inch (76 µm) wide on 78s - so the new discs were sometimes called Microgroove. In the mid-1950s, all the record companies agreed on a common recording standard, called RIAA. Before the standard was created, each company used its own preferred standard, which required discerning listeners to use preamplifiers with several selectable equalisation curves.

**Question 0**

Which two formats replaced 78?

**Question 1**

Who developed the 33 1/3 rpm LP?

**Question 2**

When did the 33 1/3 rpm come on the market?

**Question 3**

When did RCA release the 45 rpm format?

**Question 4**

When were the RIAA standards adopted?

**Text number 31**

Some recordings, such as books for the blind, were printed at 16 2⁄3 rpm. Prestige Records released jazz records in this format in the late 1950s; for example, two of their Miles Davis records were paired in this format. Peter Goldmark, who developed the 33 1⁄3 rpm disc, developed the Highway Hi-Fi 16 2⁄3 rpm disc for playback in Chrysler cars, but the poor performance of the system and poor implementation by Chrysler and Columbia led to the demise of the 16 2⁄3 rpm disc. Later, 16 2⁄3 rpm was used in annotated publications for the blind and visually impaired and was never widely commercially available, although it was common for new turntables with a 16 rpm speed setting to be manufactured as late as the 1970s.

**Question 0**

What was the 16 2/3 rpm used for?

**Question 1**

Who developed the 33 1/3 rpm record?

**Question 2**

Which storage format was created for Chrysler cars?

**Question 3**

Why did Chrysler stop using the Hifi 16 2/3 rpm disc?

**Question 4**

Until the end of what era was the 16 rpm setting found on turntables?

**Text number 32**

Commercial competition between RCA Victor and Columbia Records led to RCA Victor introducing a competing vinyl format, the 7-inch (175 mm) 45 rpm record. For two years between 1948 and 1950, record companies and consumers were unsure which of the two formats would eventually win the so-called "speed war" (see also format war.) In 1949, Capitol and Decca introduced a new LP format, and RCA gave in and released its first LP in January 1950. The 45 rpm format was also growing in popularity, and Columbia released its first 45 rpm records in February 1951. By 1954, 200 million 45s had been sold.

**Question 0**

Which two companies were involved in the "war of speeds"?

**Question 1**

How many years did the "war of speeds" last?

**Question 2**

Which company lost the "speed war"?

**Question 3**

Which speed finally won the speed war?

**Question 4**

What were the total sales of .45 calibres by 1945?

**Text number 33**

Eventually the 12-inch (300 mm) 33 1⁄3 rpm LP became the dominant format for music albums, and 10-inch LPs were no longer released. The last Columbia Records reissue of Frank Sinatra's songs on 10-inch LP was an album called Hall of Fame, CL 2600, released on 26 October 1956, which contained six songs, one each by Tony Bennett, Rosemary Clooney, Johnnie Ray, Frank Sinatra, Doris Day and Frankie Lainee. However, the ten-track LP lived longer in the UK, where important early British rock and roll albums such as Lonnie Donegan's Lonnie Donegan Showcase and Billy Fury's The Sound of Fury were released in this format. The 7-inch (175 mm) 45 rpm record or "single" created a significant niche for shorter-running records, which usually contained one track on each side. 45 rpm records typically matched the playing time of the 78 rpm records of the past, while 12-inch LPs eventually offered up to half an hour of recorded material per side.

**Question 0**

Which LP format was discontinued?

**Question 1**

What was the significance of 26 October 1956?

**Question 2**

In which country has LP-card 10 been in use the longest?

**Question 3**

Which format offered up to 1/2 hour of recordings per side?

**Question 4**

Did a 45 rpm or 12" disc offer longer playing time?

**Text number 34**

45 rpm records were also available in an extended play (EP) version, which achieved up to 10-15 minutes of playing time at the expense of sound attenuation (and possibly compression) to reduce the width of the track. EPs were cheaper to produce and were used in cases where unit sales were likely to be lower, or to re-release LP albums in a smaller format for people who only had 45 rpm players. LPs could be purchased one EP at a time, four copies per EP, or in a box of three EPs or 12 copies. The large centre hole of 45 rpm records facilitated the handling of jukebox mechanisms. EPs were generally discontinued in the late 1950s in the United States when three- and four-speed turntables replaced the single 45. One indication of the decline of 45 rpm EPs is that Columbia Records' last reissue of Frank Sinatra's songs on 45 rpm EPs, entitled Frank Sinatra (Columbia B-2641), was released on 7 December 1959. The EP lasted much longer in Europe and was a popular format in the 1960s for recordings by artists such as Serge Gainsbourg and the Beatles.

**Question 0**

What do the initials EP stand for?

**Question 1**

Why were 45s more popular in jukeboxes?

**Question 2**

Which format was phased out by the end of the 1950s?

**Question 3**

What was the advantage of EPs over LPs?

**Text number 35**

From the mid-1950s to the 1960s in the United States. The standard home record player or "stereo" (after the introduction of stereo recording) typically had the following features: a three- or four-speed player (78, 45, 33 1⁄3 and sometimes 16 2⁄3 rpm); a changer, a tall spindle that held several discs and automatically dropped a new disc on top of the previous one when it finished playing, a combination cassette with both 78 and microwave discs and a way to switch between the two, and some sort of adapter for playing 45s with a larger center hole. The adaptor could be a small fixed circle that fitted on the bottom of the spindle (allowing only one 45 to be played at a time), or a larger adaptor that fitted over the whole spindle and allowed 45s to be played.

**Question 0**

Which three speeds were the sound of most home stereos in the mid-1950s?

**Question 1**

What feature of the 45s required an adapter in most home registers?

**Question 2**

Which feature was found in more home directories that allowed continuous playback between discs?

**Question 3**

Which format was less common, but could sometimes be found in home directories?

**Text number 36**

RCA 45s were also fitted to the LP player's smaller spindle using a plastic built-in insert called a "spider". These inserts, commissioned by RCA president David Sarnoff and invented by Thomas Hutchison, were common from the 1960s onwards and sold tens of millions of units a year during the 45's heyday. In countries outside the US, 45s often had smaller disc-sized holes, for example in Australia and New Zealand, or, as in the UK, especially before the 1970s, the disc had a small hole in the circular centre section, held in place by just three or four pins so that it could be easily punched if desired (usually for use in jukeboxes).

**Question 0**

Wy did boards outside the US often have small holes in the middle that can be punched?

**Question 1**

What was the name given to the plastic inserts used to fit 45s onto the smaller spindle of an LP player?

**Question 2**

Which invention was introduced by Thomas Hutchinson?

**Question 3**

Who commissioned the manufacture of inserts to fit 45 LPs?

**Question 4**

How many spiders were sold in the heyday of the 45 rpm record?

**Text number 37**

In the 1920s, some manufacturers of radio receivers and phonographs coined the term "high fidelity" to distinguish their better-sounding products, which they claimed offered "perfect" sound reproduction. The term began to be used by some sound engineers and consumers in the 1930s and 1940s. After 1949, various improvements in recording and playback technologies, particularly stereo recording, which became widely available in 1958, led to an increased classification of "hi-fi" products, resulting in the sale of individual components for home use, such as amplifiers, speakers, turntables and tape players. High Fidelity and Audio were the two magazines from which hi-fi consumers and engineers obtained reviews of reproduction equipment and recording equipment.

**Question 0**

What term was invented in the 1920s to distinguish between better sounding products?

**Question 1**

Which magazines gave reviews of sound equipment?

**Question 2**

What happened in 1958 that changed domestic music?

**Question 3**

In what years did the term HiFi first appear in the engineering community?

**Question 4**

What term would be used to describe the fact that they produce perfect sound quality?

**Text number 38**

Stereophonic audio recording, which aims to provide a more natural listening experience by reproducing the spatial positions of audio sources in a horizontal plane, was a natural extension of monophonic audio recording and attracted a variety of alternative technical attempts. Eventually, the prevailing "45/45" stereophonic sound system was invented by Alan Blumlein of EMI in 1931 and patented the same year. EMI cut the first stereo test discs using the system in 1933 (see Bell Labs Stereo Experiments of 1933), although the system was not commercially exploited until much later.

**Question 0**

What was the Alan Blumlein event?

**Question 1**

When did EMI make the first stereo records?

**Question 2**

What was the point of the 45/45 stereo sound?

**Question 3**

In what year was stereo sound patented?

**Question 4**

What was the commercial success of stereo sound in the 1930s?

**Text number 39**

The development of quadraphonic records was announced in 1971. They recorded four separate audio signals. This was achieved with two stereo channels by electronic matrixing, where additional channels were combined with the main signal. When the discs were played, the amplifiers' phase detection circuits were able to decode the signals into four separate channels. Two different systems, confusingly named SQ (CBS) and QS (Sansui), were used to produce the main matrix quadraphonic records. They proved to be commercially unsuccessful, but were an important precursor to the later surround sound systems used today in SACDs and home theatres.

**Question 0**

What did quadraphonic recording involve?

**Question 1**

What was the latest breakthrough in home audio systems in 1971?

**Question 2**

How is the commercial success of quadraphonic records defined?

**Question 3**

What inspired the development of quadraphonic recordings?

**Text number 40**

RCA's different format, CD-4 (not to be confused with CD), encoded the front-to-back separation into an ultrasonic carrier medium, which required a special wideband cassette with carefully calibrated receiving arm and turntable combinations to record. CD-4 was even less successful than these two matrix formats. (Another problem was the lack of a cutting head available to handle the HF data. This was corrected by cutting half as fast. Later, special half-speed clipper and equalization techniques were used to obtain a wider frequency response in stereo with less distortion and more space).

**Question 0**

What was the biggest problem with CD-4 technology?

**Question 1**

How successful was the CD-4 format?

**Question 2**

Which format was less successful than quadraphonic?

**Question 3**

What were the potential benefits of the CD-4 format?

**Question 4**

Who created the CD-4 format?

**Text number 41**

Mercury Records, under the direction of recording engineer C. Robert Fine, began the minimalist single-microphone monaural recording technique in 1951. The first recording, a Chicago Symphony Orchestra performance of Pictures at an Exhibition conducted by Rafael Kubelik, was described by The New York Times music critic as "the living presence of an orchestra". The album series was then called Mercury Living Presence. In 1955, Mercury began three-channel stereo recordings, still based on the single-microphone principle. The central microphone (one microphone) was of primary importance, and two side microphones added depth and spaciousness. The disc masters were cut directly from the three-track and two-track mixer consoles, and all editing of the master tapes was done on the original three-track. In 1961, Mercury improved on this technique with three-mic stereo recordings using 35 mm magnetic tape instead of half-inch tape. The greater thickness and width of the 35 mm magnetic diaphragm prevented tape-layer bleed-through and pre-echo effects, and allowed for an extended frequency range and transient response. Mercury's Living Presence recordings were mastered on CD in the 1990s by original producer Wilma Cozart Fine using the same method of mixing 3 to 2 recordings directly onto a master tape recorder.

**Question 0**

Which company did C. Robert Fine work for?

**Question 1**

What are the advantages of using 35 mm magnetic film?

**Question 2**

Who developed the 3-2 mix to create vivid recordings?

**Question 3**

Which microphone plays the biggest role in 3 microphone recording?

**Question 4**

What year did Mercury start 3-channel stereo recording?

**Text number 42**

In the 1960s, 1970s and 1980s, various methods were used to improve the dynamic range of mass-produced records using highly sophisticated record cutting equipment. These techniques, marketed under names such as CBS DisComputer and Teldec Direct Metal Mastering, were used to reduce internal groove distortion. RCA Victor introduced another system to reduce dynamic range and achieve a groove with less surface noise, commercially called Dynagroove. It combined two main elements: a second disc material with less surface noise in the groove, and dynamic compression to mask background noise. This was sometimes called 'foiling' the source material, and was not favoured by some music lovers because of its unnatural side effects. Both elements were reflected in the Dynagroove brand, described in more detail elsewhere. It also used an earlier, more advanced method of controlling the pitch of the groove in terms of volume and position of the record. At lower recorded volumes, tighter spacing was used; at higher volumes, wider spacing was used, especially at lower frequencies. The higher track density at lower volumes also allowed the recordings to end up further away from the centre of the disc than usual, which helped to further reduce track distortion.

**Question 0**

What techniques were used to reduce internal groove distortions?

**Question 1**

Who developed the Dynagroove format?

**Question 2**

Why did some music lovers disapprove of the use of films?

**Question 3**

What did the tighter groove spacing cause?

**Question 4**

What would be found at higher recorded volumes?

**Text number 43**

Also in the late 1970s, "direct to disc" discs were produced, aimed at audiophiles. These bypassed the use of magnetic tape altogether and switched to "compressive" transcription directly onto a lacquer master disc. Half-speed mastered and "original master" discs were also released during this period, using expensive state-of-the-art technology. Another late 1970s development was the Disco Eye-Cued system, used mainly on Motown's 12-inch singles released between 1978 and 1980. The song introduction, drum breaks or choruses were indicated by grooves far apart, giving a visual cue to the DJs mixing the records. In appearance, these discs resemble LPs, but with only one track on each side.

**Question 0**

How did the Disco Eye-Cued system benefit the DJ?

**Question 1**

How did Disco Eye-Cued systems differ from LPs?

**Question 2**

When was the Disco Eye-Cued System developed?

**Question 3**

What was expected from direct-to-disc recordings?

**Question 4**

When were the "semi-fast" and "digitally remastered" recordings released?

**Text number 44**

In the mid-1970s, dbx-encoded discs came onto the market, again aimed at the niche audiophile market. These discs were completely incompatible with conventional disc preamps and were based on the dbx compandor encoding and decoding system, which allowed a significant increase in dynamic range (dbx encoded discs were recorded by compressing the dynamic range by two dB):low sounds were to be reproduced at low gain and high sounds at high gain using the automatic gain control of the playback equipment; this reduced the effect of surface noise on the low frequencies). In a similar and very short-lived system, the 'CX' noise reduction coding and decoding system developed by CBS was used.

**Question 0**

What was required for high-quality playback of DBX recordings?

**Question 1**

When were DBX recordings released?

**Question 2**

How compatible were DBX-encoded recordings with previous technologies?

**Question 3**

What was the purpose of the DBX-encoded recordings?

**Question 4**

What has CBS developed to reduce external noise?

**Text number 45**

The Japanese company ELPJ sells a laser disc player that uses a laser to optically read vinyl records without physical contact. The laser record player eliminates record wear and accidental scratches that degrade the sound, but its cost limits its use to digital archiving of analogue records, and the laser does not reproduce colour vinyl or picture discs. Various other laser-based turntables were tried in the 1990s, but although the laser reads the groove very accurately because it does not touch the record, the dust attracted to the vinyl by the static electric charge is not mechanically pushed out of the groove, which degrades the sound quality in occasional use compared to traditional pencil playback.

**Question 0**

Which Japanese company offered laser turntables that optically read vinyl records?

**Question 1**

What was the benedit of the laser discs?

**Question 2**

What was the downside of laser discs?

**Question 3**

What was the primary use of laser discs?

**Question 4**

What was the biggest problem with laser discs?

**Text number 46**

Similar in some ways to the laser disc player is the IRENE disc scanner, which uses two-dimensional microphotography and was invented by a group of physicists at Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory. IRENE retrieves information from a laterally modulated monaural grooved sound source without touching the medium itself, but cannot read vertically modulated information. This does not apply to grooved recordings, such as cylinders and some radio recordings using a bumpy recording format, nor to stereophonic or quadraphonic grooved recordings using a combination of the two, plus supersonic encoding of the quadraphonic recording.

**Question 0**

Who is Irene?

**Question 1**

Where was IRENE developed?

**Question 2**

What is the primary purpose of IRENE?

**Question 3**

Can IRENE read vertically modulated data?

**Question 4**

Does IRENE require the ability to touch the media?

**Text number 47**

The terms "long-play" (LP) and "extended-play" (EP) describe multi-track records that play for much longer than one-track-per-side records, which usually last no more than four minutes per side. An LP can last up to 30 minutes per side, but most records last about 22 minutes per side, so the total playing time of a typical LP is about 45 minutes. However, many LPs released before 1952 lasted about 15 minutes per side. The seven-inch 45 rpm format usually contains one track per side, but seven-inch EPs could achieve a recording time of 10-15 minutes, but sound attenuation and compression was necessary to reduce the width of the track. EPs were generally used to make tracks that were not available on singles, including LP album tracks, available in a smaller and more affordable format for those who only had 45 rpm players. The large centre hole of 7-inch 45 rpm discs facilitated the handling of jukebox mechanisms. The term "album", originally used to refer to a "book" containing several 78 rpm discs, each with its own "page" or sleeve, no longer has any relation to the physical format: the single LP or, more typically today, the CD.

**Question 0**

What terms are used when recording on more than one track?

**Question 1**

What is the typical maximum playing time of an LP?

**Question 2**

Which format is cheaper, LP or EP?

**Question 3**

In what format were the 10-15 minute recordings recorded?

**Question 4**

What was the normal playing time per side for LPs?

**Text number 48**

In March 1949, when RCA released the 45, Columbia released several hundred 7-inch 33 1/3 rpm singles with a small spindle opening. This format was soon abandoned when it became clear that RCA's 45 single was the preferred single and Columbia's 12-inch LP album would be the preferred "album". The first 45 release had seven colours: black 47-xxxx popular series, yellow 47-xxxx youth series, green (teal) 48-xxxx country series, deep red 49-xxxx classic series, bright red (cerise) 50-xxxx blues/spiritual series, light blue 51-xxxx international series, dark blue 52-xxxx light classic. All colours were soon abandoned in favour of black due to production problems. However, yellow and dark red continued until about 1952. The first 45 rpm record produced for sale was "PeeWee the Piccolo" RCA 47-0147, pressed on yellow translucent vinyl at the Sherman Avenue factory in Indianapolis on December 7, 1948, by factory manager R.O. Price.

**Question 0**

What colours of 45 were still available in 1952 before they were phased out?

**Question 1**

PeeWee the Piccolo was what?

**Question 2**

What is the significance of 7 December 1948?

**Question 3**

How many colours of 45s were available when they were first released?

**Question 4**

When did RCA release the 45?

**Text number 49**

A standard commercial record is engraved with two sound-bearing concentric spiral grooves, one on each side, running from the outer edge towards the centre. The last part of the spiral meets the earlier part to form a circle. The sound is encoded by subtle variations in the edges of the groove, which cause a pen (needle) inserted into it to vibrate at acoustic frequencies when the disc is rotated at the correct speed. In general, there is no intended sound in the outer and inner parts of the groove (with the exception of Split Enz's Mental Notes).

**Question 0**

Which way is the career of the ordinary record going?

**Question 1**

How is the sound encoded on a commercial disc?

**Question 2**

Does it matter at what speed the disc is spun?

**Question 3**

Are all careers full of data?

**Text number 50**

In the middle, at the end of the track, there is another wide part, known as the lead-out. At the very end of this section, the groove joins into a complete circle called the locking groove; when the pencil shaft reaches this point, it rotates it repeatedly until it comes off the plate. On some recordings (for example, the Beatles' Sgt. Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band, Abba's Super Trouper and Pink Floyd's Atom Heart Mother) the sound continues on the lock track, giving a strange repetitive effect. Automatic turntables rely on the position or angular velocity of the arm when it reaches the wider spacing of the groove, triggering a mechanism that lifts the arm off the record. It is because of this mechanism that most automatic turntables cannot reproduce any sound in the locking groove, because they lift the arm before it reaches that groove.

**Question 0**

What is a "lead out"?

**Question 1**

What is the centre where the data are combined at the end of the circle?

**Question 2**

Do turntables play music with a locking track?

**Question 3**

What do most automatic turntables do when they hit a locking track?

**Question 4**

Where can you find out about senior management?

**Text number 51**

When automatically interchangeable turntables were common, boards were typically pressed with a raised (or brushed) outer edge and a raised label area, allowing the boards to be stacked on top of each other without contacting the sensitive grooves, thus reducing the risk of damage. Automatic turntables included a mechanism that supported a stack of multiple discs above the turntable and dropped them one by one onto the active turntable so that they could be played in sequence. Many longer sound recordings, such as complete operas, were interleaved on several 10 or 12 inch discs to be used with automatic changeover mechanisms, so that the first disc of a three-disc recording would have pages 1 and 6 of the programme, the second disc would have pages 2 and 5, and the third disc would have pages 3 and 4, with pages 1, 2 and 3 being played automatically, then the whole stack would be turned over to play pages 4, 5 and 6. The whole stack was then flipped to play pages 4, 5 and 6, after which the discs were played automatically.

**Question 0**

Where were plates made with raised label areas?

**Question 1**

Are longer recordings, such as in operas, intended to be used in automatically changing systems?

**Question 2**

Do the grooves of the plates touch when stacked together?

**Question 3**

Do the discs touch each other when they are in automatic transmission?

**Text number 52**

New or "virgin" heavy/heavy (180-220 g) vinyl is commonly used in modern audiophile vinyl releases in all genres. Many collectors prefer heavyweight vinyl records, which have been found to sound better than regular vinyl because they are more resistant to the deformation caused by normal playing. 180 gram vinyl is more expensive to produce simply because it uses more vinyl. The manufacturing processes are the same regardless of weight. In fact, more care is required to press lightweight records. The exception is the tendency for 200 gram pressings to be slightly more prone to underfilling when the vinyl biscuit does not fill a sufficiently deep groove when pressed (percussion or song amplitude changes are common places where these artefacts occur). This error causes grinding or scratching at the non-use point.

**Question 0**

What material is most used in modern audiophile vinyl publications?

**Question 1**

What materials do collectors prefer?

**Question 2**

How does the manufacturing process differ between regular vinyl and heavy vinyl?

**Question 3**

Would an unfilled area on the vinyl record cause a problem when listening to the record?

**Question 4**

Which vinyl pressing requires more attention to detail, the light or heavy weight?

**Text number 53**

The "orange peel" effect of vinyl records is caused by worn moulds. Instead of having a mirror-like surface, the vinyl has a texture that resembles an orange peel. This causes noise on the record, especially in the lower frequency range. In Direct Metal Mastering (DMM), the master disc is cut onto a copper-coated disc, which can also cause a slight 'orange peel' effect on the disc itself. Since this "orange peel" is from the master disc and not from the pressing process, it has no detrimental effect because the groove is not physically distorted.

**Question 0**

What are the effects of using worn moulds when casting plates?

**Question 1**

What is the expected finish for a vinyl record?

**Question 2**

What is the effect on the copy if the master is orange peel-influenced?

**Question 3**

At which frequencies is the orange peel effect most noticeable?

**Question 4**

What material is in a direct metal mastering plate?

**Text number 54**

The original master discs are created by turning: a lathe is used to cut a modulated groove in a blank disc. The cutting engineer prepared the cut-outs as required, using a 'metallic soap' described by Robert K. Morrison, which included lead nitrate, ozokerite, barium sulphate, montan wax, stearin and paraffin. The cut 'wax' sheets were placed in a vacuum chamber and gold dusted to make them electrically conductive and could be used as shafts in an electroforming bath to make pressable stamper parts. Later, the French company Pyral invented a finished blank sheet with a thin nitrocellulose lacquer coating (about 7 mm thick on both sides) applied to an aluminium substrate. The result of the lacquer cuts was an immediately playable or processable master disc. If vinyl recordings are desired, the unplayed record is used as a spindle for electroformed nickel plates used in the manufacture of stamping presses. Electroformed nickel plates are mechanically detached from their own axle. This is relatively easy, because the electroplating process known as electroforming does not involve any actual 'plating', unlike electroplating, where the attachment of a new metal phase is chemical and relatively permanent. A one-molecule thick silver coating (sprayed onto a treated lacquer sheet to make its surface electrically conductive) is coated onto the surface of a nickel sheet. This negative re-surfacing (with ridges instead of grooves) is called a nickel master, "matrix" or "master". The "father" is then used as an axis to electroform the positive plate, called the "mother". Several mother plates can be grown on a single "father" before the ridges deteriorate to the point where they can no longer be used effectively. The "mothers" are then used as axes to electroform more negative plates, called "sons". For each "mother", several "sons" can be produced before they deteriorate. "The 'sons' are then converted into 'stamps' by punching a hole in the centre of the spindle (which disappeared from the varnished sound plate during the initial electroforming of the 'father') and shaping the extrusion profile. This allows them to be placed in the mould of the target press (make and model) and facilitates the attachment of the label by roughening the centre surface, so that the label attaches to the vinyl press without glue. In this way, several million vinyl records can be produced from a single lacquered record. When only a few hundred records are needed, instead of electroforming the "son" (on each side), the "father" is removed from the silver and turned into a stamper. The latter method, known as the "two-step process" (because it does not produce "sons" but produces "mothers", which are used for test playing and kept as "backups" for electroforming future "sons"), is limited to a few hundred vinyl editions. This number can be increased if the stamper holds out and the quality of the vinyl is high. The "sons" made during "three-stage" electroforming are better stamps because they do not require silver removal (which reduces the high fidelity somewhat because etching removes some of the smallest groove modulations) and because their metal structure is stronger than that of the "fathers".

**Question 0**

What is a two-step process?

**Question 1**

What is the limitation of a two-step process?

**Question 2**

Which is better, a two-step or a three-step process?

**Question 3**

Whose structures are stronger, the father's or the son's mould?

**Question 4**

What can increase the effectiveness of a stamping mould?

**Text number 55**

Breakage was very common in the pulp era. In John O'Hara's 1934 novel Appointment in Samarra, the protagonist "broke one of his favourites, Whiteman's Lady of the Evening ...". He wanted to cry but couldn't." In J.D. Salinger's 1951 novel The Catcher in the Rye, there is a touching moment when the teenage protagonist buys a record for his younger sister, but drops it and "it breaks into pieces ...". I almost cried, it made me feel so awful." The scene in which a group of rebellious students smash a teacher's 78-turn jazz record collection is a pivotal moment in Blackboard Jungle.

**Question 0**

What was the known problem with using cellulose to make plates?

**Question 1**

In which novel is the record for "Whiteman's Nightingale" broken?

**Question 2**

The Blackboard Jungle book mentions, what record is mentioned?

**Text number 56**

Vinyl sheets do not break easily, but the soft material is easily scratched. Vinyl easily builds up a static charge that attracts dust, which is difficult to remove completely. Dust and scratches cause the sound to crackle and pop. In extreme cases, they can cause the needle to jump over the groove set or, even worse, the needle to jump backwards, creating a "locked groove" that repeats over and over again. Hence the phrase "like a broken record" or "like a scratched record", often used to describe a person or thing that keeps repeating itself. Blocked grooves are not uncommon, and were even heard on radio broadcasts from time to time.

**Question 0**

What causes clicks and pops in vinyl records?

**Question 1**

What are the reasons for the locking grooves on vinyl records?

**Question 2**

Where does the phrase "like a broken record" come from?

**Question 3**

How easily do vinyl records break?

**Question 4**

What is common damage to vinyl records?

**Text number 57**

Vinyl sheets can warp due to heat, improper storage, exposure to sunlight or manufacturing defects such as a plastic shrink wrap on the sheet cover that is too tight. Minor warping was common, and accounting for it was part of the art of turntable and soundbar design. "Wow" (a once-per-turn change in pitch) could be due to warpage or a spindle hole that was not precisely centered. The standard practice for LPs was to place the LP in a paper or plastic inner sleeve. Placing this inside the outer cardboard sleeve so that the opening was completely inside the outer sleeve was said to reduce the amount of dust that could reach the surface of the record. With few exceptions, singles had simple paper covers with no inner cover.

**Question 0**

What causes vinyl records to warp?

**Question 1**

What is the reason for the once-per-round variation in altitude?

**Question 2**

What method was used to protect the vinyl record?

**Question 3**

Which were often those with a paper outer cover and no inner cover?

**Question 4**

What happens if there is a slight warp in the vinyl?

**Text number 58**

Another limitation of the gramophone record is that sound accuracy steadily decreases as playback progresses; more vinyl per second is available for fine high-frequency reproduction at the high diameter end of the groove near the beginning than at the smaller diameter near the end. At the beginning of the LP groove, vinyl passes the stylus at 510 millimetres per second, while at the end of the groove, vinyl passes at 200-210 millimetres per second - less than half the linear resolution. As the disc wears, distortions towards the end of the half are likely to become more pronounced\*.

**Question 0**

When is distortion most common in a gramophone record?

**Question 1**

What happens when the disc wears out?

**Question 2**

What is the downside of using gramophones?

**Question 3**

How much vinyl can you find on the beginning of an LP?

**Question 4**

Where can I find only 200-210mm vinyl?

**Text number 59**

The pen's slip forces and other disturbances are also reflected in the pen. This is a form of frequency ambiguity, since the control signal (the feedback force) used to hold the pen in the groove is transmitted through the same mechanism as the sound itself. The sound frequencies below 20 Hz in the sound signal are dominated by reverberation effects, a form of unwanted rumble ("reverberant noise"), which merges with the audible frequencies in the deep bass range up to about 100 Hz. High-precision sound reproduction equipment can reproduce reverberation and hum. During silent pass-through, the cones of bass speakers can sometimes be seen vibrating with the subsonic reverberation of a pencil at frequencies as low as just above 0.5 Hz (the frequency at which a 33 1⁄3 rpm record spins on a turntable; 5⁄9 Hz on an exactly ideal turntable). Another reason for very low-frequency material may be a warped record: its waviness produces frequencies of only a few hertz, and today's amplifiers have large power bandwidths. For this reason, many stereo receivers included a switchable subwoofer filter. Some of the subwoofer content is directly out of phase with each channel. If played back with a mono subwoofer system, the noise is cancelled out, greatly reducing the amount of noise that can be reproduced.

**Question 0**

What would be the reason for listening to low-frequency sounds?

**Question 1**

What is a feature that many stereos include to combat unwanted sounds?

**Question 2**

What is the sound that is commonly heard when listening to vinyl and is unintentional.

**Question 3**

At what frequencies are you most likely to hear a tonearm slipping?

**Question 4**

When listening to the album, are there any visual signs of imitation?

**Text number 60**

Due to the limitations of recording mastering and manufacturing, both high and low frequencies were removed from the first recorded signals using different patterns. At low frequencies, the stylus has to swing far from side to side, resulting in a wide groove, which takes up more space and limits the playing time of the record. At high frequencies, hisses, pops and ticks are significant. These problems can be reduced by using equalisation to an agreed standard. During recording, the amplitude of the low frequencies is reduced, reducing the required groove width, and the amplitude of the high frequencies is increased. The playback equipment amplifies bass and reduces treble to restore the tonal balance of the original signal; this also reduces high-frequency noise. This allows more music to fit on the disc and reduces noise.

**Question 0**

What is the limitation on low-frequency recordings?

**Question 1**

What kind of unwanted sounds are often heard at high frequencies?

**Question 2**

What is done during recordings to reduce unwanted sounds?

**Question 3**

What are the benefits of using balancing equipment?

**Question 4**

What is being done about high-frequency sounds to reduce noise problems?

**Text number 61**

In 1926 Joseph P. Maxwell and Henry C. Harrison of Bell Telephone Laboratories revealed that the recording pattern of Western Electric's "rubber line" magnetic disk recorder had a constant speed feature. This meant that as the frequency increased in the treble, the amplitude of the recording decreased. Conversely, in the bass, as the frequency decreased, the recording amplitude increased. It was therefore necessary to attenuate bass frequencies below 250 Hz, i.e. below the bass crossover point, in the amplified microphone signal fed to the recording head. Otherwise, the bass modulation became excessive and over-cutting occurred in the next recording track. When the sound was reproduced electrically with a magnetic transducer with a flat response in the bass region, the amplitude had to be amplified additionally at the bass changeover point. G. H. Miller reported in 1934 that when radio broadcasts of recordings used supplementary amplification at the bass inflection point, the reproduction was more realistic and many instruments stood out in their true form.

**Question 0**

Who has found that they can make their instruments sound more natural with amplifier gain at the point of turnover?

**Question 1**

What is observed when complementary amplification is used at the bass inflection point?

**Question 2**

As the frequency in the treble increases, what happens to the recording amplitude?

**Question 3**

What happens when the frequency drops in the bass?

**Text number 62**

West in 1930 and later P. G. A. H. Voigt (1940) showed that early Wente-style condenser microphones contributed 4-6 dB of midrange clarity or pre-recordability to the recording chain. This meant that the electronic recording features used by Western Electric licensees such as Columbia Records and the Victor Talking Machine Company in the 1925 era had higher amplitude in the midrange. Such brilliance compensated for the dullness of many early magnetic recorders because of their lackluster midrange and treble tones. As a result, this practice was the empirical beginning of the use of preemphasis above 1 000 Hz in 78 rpm and 33 1⁄3 rpm records.

**Question 0**

Who thought Wente-style condenser microphones were helpful?

**Question 1**

How were the Wente-Style condenser microphones useful?

**Question 2**

When was pre-weighting most useful?

**Question 3**

What types of recordings were most commonly used in the 1920s?

**Question 4**

In which ERA was this finding most significant?

**Text number 63**

Over the years, different plate levelling practices have emerged and there has been no standard in the industry. In Europe, for example, for many years recordings were required to be played back with a bass variation of 250-300 Hz and a treble roll-off at 10 000 Hz of 0-5 dB or more. In the United States, practices varied more, with generally higher bass roll-off frequencies, such as 500 Hz, as well as treble roll-offs, such as -8.5 dB, and even generally higher modulation levels on the record.

**Question 0**

What was the industry standard in Europe for plate levelling?

**Question 1**

In which country was the depreciation of the discount rate higher?

**Question 2**

Which country prefers a bass response range of 250-300 Hz?

**Question 3**

What was the industry standard for equalisation practices?

**Question 4**

Which country used the most diverse equalisation practices?

**Text number 64**

The early technical literature on electronic recording suggests that it was not until 1942-1949 that serious efforts were made to standardise recording features in the field. Until then, electronic recording technology was considered a separate art from one company to another until the method licensed by Western Electric in 1925 and used by Columbia and Victor. The Brunswick-Balke-Collender (Brunswick Corporation), for example, departed from Victor's practices.

**Question 0**

How far back did sound recordings demonstrate the art of sound recording?

**Question 1**

What was standardisation like before 1942?

**Question 2**

Around what time was there an attempt to standardise recordings?

**Text number 65**

Broadcasters had to adapt on a daily basis to the different recording characteristics of the many different sources: the different manufacturers of "home recordings" available to the public, European recordings, transcripts cut laterally and vertically. In 1942, standardisation efforts began in the National Association of Broadcasters (NAB), later known as the National Association of Radio and Television Broadcasters (NARTB). In 1949, the NAB issued, among other things, recording standards for laterally and vertically cut recordings, mainly transcripts. Several 78 rpm record producers and early LP record producers cut their records to the NAB/NARTB lateral standard.

**Question 0**

Who made the move to standardise recordings?

**Question 1**

When were the recording standards officially published?

**Question 2**

Which storage types were affected by industry standards?

**Question 3**

What was one problem related to the lack of standards in the sector?

**Question 4**

What is NAB?

**Text number 66**

NAB's laterally clipped curve was remarkably similar to NBC's orthacoustic curve, which had evolved from National Broadcasting Company practices since the mid-1930s. Empirically, not by any formula, it was learned that the bass end of the sound spectrum below 100 Hz could be increased somewhat to cancel out the hum of the system and the rumble of the turntable. Similarly, in the treble range starting at 1 000 Hz, if the sound frequencies were increased by 16 dB at 10 000 Hz, the sensitive sibilant sounds of speech and the high harmonics of musical instruments could overcome the noise levels of cellulose acetate, lacquer/aluminium and vinyl records. When the record was played using a complementary inversion curve, the signal-to-noise ratio improved and the programming sounded more lively.

**Question 0**

What was the benefit for broadcasters of storing standards?

**Question 1**

How was the NBC Othacoustic curve related to the NAB curve?

**Question 2**

What bass settings were needed to eliminate the hum?

**Question 3**

What helped create the most life-like sound?

**Text number 67**

Finally, the new orthophone curve was announced in 1953 by R.C. Moyer of RCA Victor. He traced the characteristics of the RCA Victor from the Western Electric 'rubber line' recorder of 1925 to the early 1950s, making arguments about long-standing recording practices and the reasons for the significant changes that occurred in the intervening years. The RCA Victor New Orthophonic curve was within the tolerances of the NAB/NARTB, Columbia LP and AES curves. It eventually became the technical precursor to the RIAA curve.

**Question 0**

How far back could these recording practices be traced?

**Question 1**

What were the recording standards based on?

**Question 2**

What was the predecessor of the RIAA curve?

**Question 3**

Who developed the new orthophone curve?

**Question 4**

Who wrote the paper outlining the new orthophonic curve?

**Text number 68**

Delicate sounds and fine upper notes were mostly lost, because a lot of sound energy was needed to vibrate the diaphragm and the shearing mechanism of the voice box. The mechanical resonances of both the recording and playback systems caused acoustic limitations. Some pictures of acoustic recording sessions show tape-wrapped horns to help dampen these resonances. Even with modern equipment, an acoustic recording played electronically sounds as if it were recorded through a horn, although modern playback has reduced distortion. There were many fine examples of horn recordings in the late acoustic era.

**Question 0**

What was the quality of sound recordings made with horns at the end of the acoustic era?

**Question 1**

What were the problems with the mechanics of playback and recording?

**Question 2**

Why do the photos show horns being taken?

**Question 3**

What would a horn-recorded album sound like when played on modern equipment?

**Question 4**

What was the reason for the loss of the delicate and subtle sound?

**Text number 69**

Electronic recording, which was developed at the same time as radio became widespread (1925), benefited from the microphones and amplifiers used in radio studios. Early electronic recordings were similar in sound to acoustic recordings, but with more bass and treble, subtle tones and overtones. This was despite the use of some carbon microphones, whose resonances coloured the recorded sound. A double-button carbon microphone with a stretched diaphragm was a significant improvement. Alternatively, the Wente-style condenser microphone used in the Western Electric licensed recording method had excellent midrange and was prone to overloading from speech interference, but generally gave more accurate reproduction than the carbon microphones.

**Question 0**

Which technique provided realistic sounds during playback?

**Question 1**

At what time was radio gaining popularity?

**Question 2**

Which types of microphones lost popularity in the 1920s?

**Question 3**

What was the benefit of using a Wente-style condenser microphone?

**Question 4**

What were the benefits of early radio recordings?

**Text number 70**

It was not unusual for electronic recordings to be played on acoustic turntables. The Victor Orthophonic phonograph was a prime example where such reproduction was expected. In the Orthophonic, which made use of telephone research, the mechanical pickup was redesigned with a lower resonance than the traditional mica type. In addition, an exponentially tapered refractive horn was built inside the enclosure to better match the impedance to the air. As a result, the orthophonic record sounded as if it had come from a radio.

**Question 0**

What is an example of an acoustic turntable that would be used to listen to electronic recordings?

**Question 1**

What allowed for better sound inside the cabinet of an orthophonic turntable?

**Question 2**

What changes were made to the orthophone to accommodate electronic recordings?

**Question 3**

Was it common to hear electronic recordings on turntables?

**Question 4**

How similar was the sound of an orthodox record to that of a radio?

**Text number 71**

When electronic playback of electronic sound recordings became common in the 1930s and 1940s, the sound of the audience was very much like listening to the radio of that era. Magnetic buttons became more common and were better designed over time, allowing better attenuation of interference resonances. Crystal microphones were also introduced as a cheaper alternative. The dynamic or moving coil microphone was introduced around 1930 and the speed or ribbon microphone in 1932. Both of these high-quality microphones became common in film, radio, recording and public address applications.

**Question 0**

What are two examples of high-quality microphones?

**Question 1**

What was used to dampen the resonances of the recordings?

**Question 2**

When would you have found a moving coil microphone?

**Question 3**

What was a cheaper option than magnetic pickups?

**Question 4**

In which year will electronic recordings be played electronically?

**Text number 72**

Over time, sound accuracy, dynamics and noise levels improved to the point where it became increasingly difficult to tell the difference between a live performance in the studio and the recorded version. This was particularly true after General Electric invented the variable reluctance magnetic cassette in the 1940s, when high-quality cuts were played back on well-designed sound systems. The Capehart radio and phonograph loudspeakers of the era, with their large diameter electrodynamic speakers, although not ideal, demonstrated this quite well when 'home recordings' were readily available in music shops for public purchase.

**Question 0**

What were the benefits of using a magnetic cassette?

**Question 1**

In what era were good quality recordings and musical instruments found in your home?

**Question 2**

What was the unique feature of the Capeart walkie-talkies?

**Question 3**

How similar were the live and recorded versions?

**Text number 73**

In the early 1930s, Bell Telephone Laboratories and Western Electric announced a complete overhaul of recordings: the Western Electric Wide Range System, "The New Voice of Action". Western Electric's new system was designed to improve the overall quality of record recording and playback. The recording speed was 33 1⁄3 rpm, which was originally used in the Western Electric and ERPI film sound disc system introduced in Warner Brothers' 1927 Vitaphone 'talkies'.

**Question 0**

When was the Western Electric System introduced?

**Question 1**

Which two companies worked together to develop the Western Electric System?

**Question 2**

What system did Warner Brothers use?

**Question 3**

What speed was used in the Western Electric System?

**Question 4**

What was the Western Electric System thought to be doing?

**Text number 74**

The newly invented Western Electric moving coil or dynamic microphone was part of the Wide Range System. It had a flatter sound response than the old-style Wente condenser microphone and did not require any electronics mounted in the microphone housing. The signals fed to the cutting head were pre-corrected at the treble end to bypass noise during playback. Vertical groove cuts were used instead of conventional side cuts. The main advantage was claimed to be that there were more grooves per inch that could be sealed together, thus extending the playback time. In addition, the vertical cutting system avoided the problem of intra-groove distortion that plagued lateral cuts. The wax masters were made by running heated wax over a hot metal disc, thus avoiding the microscopic irregularities of the cast wax blocks and the need for planing and polishing.

**Question 0**

What were the benefits of vertical groove cuts?

**Question 1**

What could be avoided by using vertical groove cuts?

**Question 2**

How was the mobile reel microphone unique to the Wente type?

**Question 3**

How was the sound improved with a moving coil microphone?

**Question 4**

How was wax used to improve the recordings?

**Text number 75**

Vinyl prints were made with stamps from master sections, which were vacuum galvanized by gold plating. The sound response was reported as 8 000 Hz, later 13 000 Hz, using lightweight counterparts with jewelled pins. Amplifiers and clippers, both using negative feedback, were used, which improved the range of frequencies cut and reduced distortion levels. Radio producers such as the World Broadcasting System and Associated Music Publishers (AMP) were the dominant licensees of Western Electric's broadcaster system, and by the late 1930s accounted for two-thirds of the total radio publishing business. These recordings use a bass response of 300 Hz and a roll-off of -8.5 dB at 10 000 Hz.

**Question 0**

What was used to make the vinyl prints?

**Question 1**

Who were the main licensees of the Western Electric system in the 1930s?

**Question 2**

Who was responsible for 2/3 of all recordings in the 1930s?

**Question 3**

How was gold panning used to create vinyl?

**Text number 76**

The full technical release of the Columbia LP by Peter C. Goldmark, Rene' Snepvangers and William S. Bachman in 1949 allowed many record companies to make long-playing records. Business grew rapidly, and interest in high quality audio equipment and the do-it-yourself market for sound absorbers, turntables, amplifier kits, speaker cabinet designs and AM/FM radio tuners spread rapidly. LPs for longer works, 45 rpm for pop music and FM radio became sought-after sources of high sound quality. Radio listeners heard the recordings that were broadcast, and this in turn boosted record sales. The industry boomed.

**Question 0**

When did the do it yourself audio fanatic business boom?

**Question 1**

What kind of recordings work best for pop music?

**Question 2**

What was used in the longer recordings?

**Question 3**

What opened the door to long recordings?

**Question 4**

What helped record sales in the 1950s?

**Text number 77**

There is a theory that vinyl records can play higher frequencies than CDs. According to Red Book specifications, the frequency response of a CD is from 20 Hz to 22 050 Hz, and most CD players measure a flat frequency at a fraction of a decibel from at least 20 Hz to 20 kHz at full power. Turntable rumble masks the low end of vinyl, but the top end can be reasonably flat on some cassettes by a few decibels up to 30 kHz with a gentle roll-off. At 30 kHz, the carrier wave signals of the Quad LPs popular in the 1970s were outside the range of human hearing. The average human auditory system is sensitive to frequencies from 20 Hz up to about 20 000 Hz. The upper and lower frequency limits of human hearing vary from person to person.

**Question 0**

What is usually the lowest sound a person can hear?

**Question 1**

Which is believed to offer better higher frequency sounds, CDs or records?

**Question 2**

What is the upper limit of typical human hearing?

**Question 3**

Does the human hearing range vary?

**Text number 78**

In the first decades of record making, sound was recorded directly onto a "master disc" in a recording studio. From around 1950 onwards (earlier for some major labels, later for some smaller ones), the performance was usually first recorded on audio tape, which could be processed and/or edited and then dubbed onto a master disc. A turntable carved the tracks on the master disc. The early versions of these master discs were soft wax, and later ones used a harder varnish. The mastering process was originally something of a skill, as the operator had to manually account for the changes in sound that affected how wide the groove space had to be on each lap.

**Question 0**

Who would engrave the master disc of a vinyl record?

**Question 1**

What was used for the first recordings of vinyl records?

**Question 2**

What was used in the final recordings of vinyl records?

**Question 3**

What was the typical recording process like after the 1950s?

**Question 4**

Where were the audio recordings originally made?

**Text number 79**

Since playing gramophone records causes gradual deterioration of the recording, they are best preserved by transferring them to another medium and playing them as infrequently as possible. They should be kept on the edge and are best preserved in environmental conditions that most people find comfortable. The recording medium should be kept clean, but alcohol should only be used on PVC or optical media, not on 78 discs. Only small quantities of reproducers of certain formats (e.g. 16 and 78 rpm) are produced, making it even more difficult to find suitable equipment for reproducing recordings.

**Question 0**

Should alcohol be used to clean gramophone recordings?

**Question 1**

Is gramophone equipment readily available?

**Question 2**

What is the recommendation for preserving the integrity of gramophone recordings?

**Question 3**

What is the downside of using a gramophone?

**Question 4**

What is the best way to store gramophones?

**Text number 80**

Where old recordings are considered to be of artistic or historical interest and pre-date the introduction of tape, or where a tape master does not exist, archivists will play the recording on appropriate equipment and record the result, usually in a digital format that can be copied and processed to remove analogue errors without further damage to the source recording. For example, Nimbus Records uses a purpose-built horn disc player to transfer 78 discs. Anyone can do this using a standard turntable with a suitable sound amplifier, a phono preamplifier (preamplifier) and a standard computer. However, for accurate transfer, professional archivists carefully select the correct stylus shape and diameter, tracking weight, equalisation curve and other playback parameters, and use high-quality analogue-to-digital converters.

**Question 0**

Is it difficult to transfer recordings from historical interest to newer technology?

**Question 1**

Which would offer the highest quality of historically interesting transfers?

**Question 2**

What does an enthusiast need to transfer historical recordings to digital format?

**Question 3**

Will the original be destroyed when it is transferred to digital format?

**Question 4**

What is the benefit of migrating from an older format to a newer format?

**Text number 81**

Groove recordings, first designed in the last quarter of the 19th century, held the dominant position for almost a century - despite competition from reel-to-reel tape, 8-track cassettes and compact cassettes. In 1988, the CD overtook the gramophone record in terms of unit sales. The popularity of vinyl records fell sharply between 1988 and 1991 as major record company distributors limited the return policies that retailers had relied on to maintain and replace stocks of relatively unpopular records. First, distributors began charging retailers more for new products if they returned unsold vinyl, and then they stopped giving refunds for returns at all. Retailers, fearing they would have to stock up on everything they ordered, ordered only tried and tested, popular titles that they knew would sell, and devoted more shelf space to CDs and cassettes. Record companies also removed many vinyl labels from production and distribution, further reducing the availability of the format and leading to the closure of printing plants. The rapid decline in the availability of vinyl records accelerated the decline in popularity of the record, which some see as a deliberate means of persuading consumers to switch to CDs, which were more profitable for record companies.

**Question 0**

What was a major reason for the decline in vinyl sales?

**Question 1**

Which makes more profit, vinyl or CD?

**Question 2**

When did vinyl record sales fall?

**Question 3**

When did the popularity of CDs start?

**Question 4**

When were groove recordings developed?

**Text number 82**

Despite their shortcomings, such as their lack of portability, they still have an enthusiastic following. Vinyl records continue to be produced and sold, especially by independent rock bands and record labels, although record sales are still seen as a niche market of audiophiles, collectors and DJs. Old albums and out-of-print recordings in particular are popular with collectors worldwide (see Record collecting.) Many popular new albums are released on vinyl, and older albums are also reissued, sometimes on audiophile-quality vinyl.

**Question 0**

Are records usually sold out?

**Question 1**

Will albums ever be duplicated?

**Question 2**

Which types of vinyl are the most popular?

**Question 3**

Will the vinyl record retain its popularity?

**Text number 83**

Many electronic dance music and hip hop releases are still preferably vinyl, but digital copies are still widely available. This is because record producers ("DJs") have the advantage of vinyl over CDs: direct manipulation of the medium. DJ techniques such as slip-cueing, beatmatching and scratching are derived from turntables. CDs or CD cassettes usually have only indirect manipulation possibilities, such as play, stop and pause buttons. On discs, the stylus can be set a few grooves deeper or further away, accelerate or decelerate the turntable or even reverse its direction, if the design of the stylus, the turntable and the disc can withstand it. However, many CDJ and DJ systems today, such as DJ software and time-coded vinyl, have these and other features.

**Question 0**

What is the reason why DJs prefer vinyl to CDs?

**Question 1**

Which techniques would a DJ need a vinyl record for?

**Question 2**

Can all turntables handle vinyl records?

**Question 3**

Which is more commonly preferred by DJs, vinyl or CD?

**Question 4**

Had vinyl technology stopped developing?

**Text number 84**

In 2014, Jack White sold 40 000 copies of his second solo release Lazaretto on vinyl. Sales of the album hit the highest sales in a single week on vinyl since 1991. The record was previously held by Pearl Jam's Vitalogy, which sold 34 000 copies in a single week in 1994. In 2014, vinyl sales were the only physical music medium to show a year-on-year increase in sales. Sales of other media, such as single digital tracks, digital albums and CDs, have declined, with the latter showing the largest drop in sales.

**Question 0**

Who set the last record for vinyl record sales since 1991?

**Question 1**

Which instrument has seen the biggest drop in sales recently?

**Question 2**

What was unique about vinyl sales in 2014?

**Question 3**

Who sold 34 000 vinyl records in 1994?

**Question 4**

When was the last time before 2014 that a lot of vinyl records were sold?